



CORNELL  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY



Cornell University Library

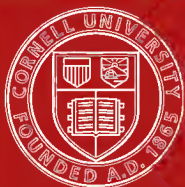
arV16176

A school German grammar ...



3 1924 031 292 638

olin,anx



## Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.

A SCHOOL

GERMAN GRAMMAR.



A  
SCHOOL  
GERMAN GRAMMAR.

BY

H. W. EVE, M.A.,

*Head Master of University College School, London; Late Fellow of  
Trinity College, Cambridge.*

---

Uniform with the Wellington College French Grammar.

---

LONDON:  
DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

—  
1880.

LONDON :  
WEETHEIMER, LEA AND CO., PRINTERS,  
CIRCUS PLACE, LONDON WALL.



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present work originated with a German Syntax written by the author twelve or thirteen years ago, which was far from complete, and not always accurate. It is hoped that the book in its present form may be less liable to criticism on these grounds. The Syntax has been practically re-written, and an Accidence, which has been privately printed, and for a short time in use, is incorporated with it. The materials have been drawn freely from standard grammars and books of reference, especially from Weigand's and Grimm's German dictionaries, from Dr. Sanders' "Deutsche Sprachbriefe" and "Hauptschwierigkeiten der deutschen Sprache," and from Becker. But Becker's arrangement and terminology, however excellent for their purpose, seemed hardly suited for English schoolboys, and have been entirely deserted. Unfortunately I have not been able to meet with any book by a non-German which does for German what Hölder, Plötz, Bernhard Schmitz, &c., do for French. The nearest approach is Sicherer's Grammar in Dutch, a book I have consulted with much advantage. My best thanks are due to my colleagues, Mr. Levander, Mr. Goldschild, Dr. Dann, and Mr. de Baudiss, for help in the revision of the proof-sheets, and for many valuable suggestions.

I have said nothing of the older German dialects, except in a few incidental references. The systematic study of Gothic and Old and Middle High German forms and inflexions seems out of place in English schools, but I much wish my knowledge were sufficient to enrich the study of modern German with some of those illustrations from the earlier forms of the language which readily fix themselves in a boy's memory.

A good deal of attention has been paid to the prefixes of verbs, which form such an interesting chapter in German. I found many valuable hints on this subject in the "Essays" of the late Professor Key, to which I have given references. In the declensions I have kept to the rational division of strong and weak, with further subdivisions for the sake of convenience. To the rhymed lists some teachers will no doubt take exception, but it is very difficult to find any other plan of getting a boy to remember with certainty what the plural of a given noun is. My own method of teaching declensions is as follows :—First, a few paradigms are learnt, and boys are expected to decline a noun if told it is like *Dorf* or *Sohn*. Next, the large print is studied, all the paradigms learnt, and practice given in classifying simple nouns and referring them to their models. At this stage a boy may fairly be asked to classify and decline nouns like *Eintritt*, *Wirthschaft*, *Pathe*, the English being given. The third stage is to learn the lists of exceptions, &c., as *vocabularies*, and when this is done, a boy ought to be able, *with the help of his book*, to make out the genitive singular and

nominative plural of *any* noun. Practice in doing so is in many ways a useful exercise. Last of all, the lists are learnt by heart. Of course, this is a long process; but to get inflexions into one's head by observation and reading is a still longer one, and possible only to those who have already been trained to habits of extreme accuracy.

I should like to add one or two remarks on the subject of German etymology. First, a teacher cannot begin too soon to point out the changes of letters in passing from English to German, and *vice versa*; in fact, to keep Grimm's law, and other simple rules, always before his pupils. Many valuable suggestions on this subject may be got from Mr. Sonnenschein's "German for the English," a book which no teacher can read without pleasure and profit. Next, I would urge that advanced pupils should be made to write down etymologies in a full and systematic way. It is very common for a boy, when asked for the derivation of a word, to give merely the components, without showing how the meaning of the compound is deduced from that of its constituent parts, a process which requires far more thought. I would suggest something of the following form:—

“ *Vermeffenheit*, *presumption*, from (1) *ſich vermeffen*, *to measure oneself amiss*, and hence *to presume beyond one's powers or rights*; (2) *heit*, a termination equivalent to *head* or *hood*, forming an abstract noun.

“ *Beeinflussen*, *to influence*, from (1) *Einfluß* (*ein*, *in*; *fluß*, one form root of *fließen*, *to flow*), *a flowing-in*. The notion is

“ that the heavenly bodies, the eyes of certain persons, &c.,  
 “ sent forth subtle emanations which literally flowed into those  
 “ affected by them, whence *influence* in its modern sense.  
 “ (2) *Be*, a prefix, which forms verbs from nouns, meaning  
 “ to *supply with*. Thus *beeinflussen* is to *supply with influence*, to  
 “ *influence*.”

“ *Unvereinbar*, *incompatible*, from (1) *un*, *un*, *not*; (2) *ver-*  
 “ *ein*, from *ver*, and *ein*, *one*, to *make one*, to *unite*; (3) *bar*, a  
 “ suffix, used to form verbal adjectives with a passive sense.  
 “ Hence *that which cannot be made one with a thing, incompatible*.”  
 A great deal of instruction may thus be got out of etymologies  
 apparently obvious. For less obvious etymologies Whitney's  
 Dictionary is very handy.

I have to apologise for an omission. The sections on  
 the suffixes and the article in the Addenda should, of course,  
 have been in the body of the work; but were accidentally  
 misplaced.

H. W. EVE.

CROWTHORNE,

*August 23rd, 1880.*

# CONTENTS.

## ACCIDENCE.

	Page.		Page.
<b>CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTORY.</b>		<b>19. Declension of some Latin words . . . . .</b>	
1. Alphabet . . . . .	1	20. English and French words . . . . .	14
2. Modified vowels . . . . .	2	21. Proper names . . . . .	14
3. Other combinations of vowels . . . . .	2	22. Nouns with two plurals . . . . .	15
4. Combinations of consonants . . . . .	2	23. No plural of measures . . . . .	16
5. Notes on the characters . . . . .	2	24. Borrowed plurals . . . . .	16
6. Capitals . . . . .	3	25. Compounds of Mann . . . . .	16
7. Accent . . . . .	3	26. Gender and sex . . . . .	17
<b>CHAPTER II.—ARTICLES.</b>		27. Names of animals . . . . .	17
8. Answer to English articles . . . . .	3	28. Trees, plants, &c. . . . .	17
9. Declension . . . . .	4	29. Collective nouns . . . . .	18
<b>CHAPTER III.—DECLENSION AND GENDER OF NOUNS.</b>		30. Infinitives, &c. . . . .	18
10. General remarks . . . . .	4	31. Geographical names . . . . .	18
11. Strong and weak declensions . . . . .	4	32. Roots of verbs . . . . .	18
12. General rules . . . . .	5	33. Roots of verbs with t added . . . . .	19
13. Weak declension—masculine . . . . .	5	34. Masculine endings . . . . .	19
14. Weak declension—feminine . . . . .	6	35. Feminine endings . . . . .	19
15. Strong declension—plural in er . . . . .	7	36. Neuter endings . . . . .	19
16. Strong declension—plural in e . . . . .	8	37. Nouns ending in e . . . . .	20
17. Strong declension—plural unchanged . . . . .	11	38. Terminations et, en, er . . . . .	20
18. Mixed declension . . . . .	13	40. Nouns with double gender . . . . .	22
		41. Compound nouns . . . . .	23
		<b>CHAPTER IV.—ADJECTIVES.</b>	
		42. Various forms of declension . . . . .	24
		43. Strong declension . . . . .	24
		44. Weak declension . . . . .	25
		45. Mixed declension . . . . .	26
		46. Notes on some adjectives . . . . .	27
		47. Adjectives used as nouns . . . . .	27

	Page.
48. Comparison—ordinary formation .....	28
49. Modifications .....	28
50. Irregular comparisons ..	28
51. Declension of comparatives and superlatives ..	29
<b>CHAPTER V.—PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.</b>	
52. Personal pronouns .....	29
53. Pronouns of addressa ....	30
54. Reflexive pronouns.....	30
55. Use of <i>selbst</i> .....	30
56. Possessive adjectives ....	31
57. Declension of possessive adjectives .....	31
58. Correspondence of pronouns.....	31
59. Possessive pronouns ....	32
60. Demonstrative pronouns..	33
61. <i>Dieser</i> and <i>jener</i> .....	33
62. Neutera <i>dieses</i> and <i>das</i> ....	34
63. Other demonstratives....	34
64. Relative pronouna .....	35
65. <i>Whoever, whatever</i> .....	35
66. Interrogative pronouns ..	35
67. Interrogative adjectives..	36
68. Indefinite pronouns and adjectives .....	36
69. <i>Ein</i> and <i>kein</i> .....	36
70. <i>Man, one, people</i> .....	36
71. <i>Etwas, nichts, something, nothing</i> .....	37
72. <i>Jemand, niemand, some one, no one</i> .....	37
73. <i>Some, any</i> .....	37
74. Distributive pronouns and adjectives .....	37
<b>CHAPTER VI.—NUMERALS.</b>	
75. List of numerals .....	38
76. Declension of cardinal numerals .....	39
77. Forma in <i>er</i> .....	39
78. Use of <i>beide</i> .....	40
79. Fractions .....	40
80. Time of day, days of month .....	40
81. Miscellaneous numeral forms .....	41

	Page.
<b>CHAPTER VII.—VERBS, INTRODUCTORY AND AUXILIARIES.</b>	
82. Moods .....	41
83. Tenses .....	41
84. Conditional mood .....	42
85. Use of auxiliaries .....	42
86. Strong and weak conjugations .....	43
87. Conjugation of <i>haben</i> ....	43
88. Conjugation of <i>sein</i> .....	44
89. Conjugation of <i>werden</i> ....	45
<b>CHAPTER VIII.—VERBS CONTINUED—SPECIMENS OF CONJUGATION.</b>	
90. Conjugation of a weak verb (with <i>haben</i> ) .....	46
91. Conjugation of a strong verb .....	47
92. Conjugation of a verb with <i>sein</i> .....	48
93. Conjugation of passive voice .....	50
94. Notes on the Passive ....	51
95. Reflexive verbs .....	51
96. Compound verbs.....	52
97. Impersonal verbs .....	52
98. Persons with impersonals	53
<b>CHAPTER IX.—VERBS CONTINUED. FORMATION OF TENSES, PREFIXES, &amp;c.</b>	
99. General Principles .....	54
100. Present of strong verbs ..	55
101. Participles .....	56
102. Subjunctive.....	57
103. Imperative .....	57
104. Classification of strong verbs .....	57
105. First group— <i>brechen</i> ....	57
106. Second— <i>messen</i> .....	58
107. Third— <i>scheinen</i> .....	58
108. Fourth— <i>fliegen</i> .....	58
109. Fifth— <i>schlagen</i> .....	59
110. Sixth— <i>singen</i> .....	59
111. Seventh—reduplicating..	59
112. Peculiarities of weak conjugation.....	59
113. Irregular verbs .....	60
114. Verbs of mood.....	60

	Page.		Page.
115. Inseparables prefixes . . . . .	62	151. <i>Before and after</i> . . . . .	81
116. Doubtful prefixes . . . . .	62	152. <i>Since</i> . . . . .	81
117. <i>Mit</i> and <i>woll</i> . . . . .	62	CHAPTER XII.—PREFIXES TO VERBS.	
118. Separable prefixes . . . . .	62	153. General . . . . .	82
119. Miscellaneous components . . . . .	62	<i>A.—Inseparable Prefixes.</i>	
120. Factitive verbs . . . . .	63	154. <i>Be</i> . . . . .	82
CHAPTER X.—IRREGULAR VERBS.		155. <i>Ent</i> . . . . .	84
121. List of irregular verbs . . . . .	65	156. <i>Er</i> . . . . .	85
122. Strong participles from weak verbs . . . . .	71	157. <i>Ge</i> . . . . .	86
CHAPTER XI.—ADVERBS, PREPOSI- TIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.		158. <i>Sinter</i> . . . . .	87
123. Adjectives as adverbs . . . . .	72	159. <i>Ser</i> . . . . .	87
124. Adverbs formed by ter- minations . . . . .	72	160. <i>Wider</i> . . . . .	89
125. Compound adverbs . . . . .	72	161. <i>Ser</i> . . . . .	89
126. Other adverbs . . . . .	73	<i>B.—Separable Prefixes.</i>	
127. Comparison of adverbs . . . . .	73	162. <i>Ab</i> . . . . .	90
128. Form of superlative adverb . . . . .	73	163. <i>An</i> . . . . .	91
129. <i>Erst</i> . . . . .	74	164. <i>Auf</i> . . . . .	92
130. <i>Es</i> . . . . .	74	165. <i>Aus</i> . . . . .	93
131. <i>Now</i> . . . . .	74	166. <i>Bei</i> . . . . .	93
132. <i>Doch</i> , elliptical . . . . .	74	167. <i>Dar</i> . . . . .	93
133. Concessive adverbs . . . . .	74	168. <i>Ein</i> . . . . .	94
134. <i>Therefore</i> . . . . .	74	169. <i>Empor</i> . . . . .	94
135. <i>Nach</i> . . . . .	75	170. <i>Fort</i> . . . . .	94
136. <i>Nach</i> and <i>body</i> . . . . .	75	171. <i>Ser</i> and <i>hin</i> . . . . .	94
137. <i>Then</i> . . . . .	75	172. <i>Los</i> . . . . .	95
138. <i>When</i> . . . . .	75	173. <i>Mit</i> . . . . .	95
139. <i>So</i> . . . . .	75	174. <i>Nach</i> . . . . .	95
140. Prepositions with accu- sative . . . . .	76	175. <i>Nieder</i> . . . . .	96
141. Prepositions with dative . . . . .	76	176. <i>Ob</i> . . . . .	96
142. Prepositions with dative and accusative . . . . .	77	177. <i>Über</i> . . . . .	96
143. So-called prepositions with genitive . . . . .	77	178. <i>Zu</i> . . . . .	96
144. Place of prepositions . . . . .	78	179. Compound prefixes . . . . .	97
145. Classification of conjunc- tions . . . . .	78	<i>C.—Doubtful Prefixes.</i>	
146. <i>And, or, nor</i> . . . . .	78	180. General principles . . . . .	97
147. <i>But</i> . . . . .	79	181. Transitive compounds of intransitives . . . . .	97
148. Equivalents of <i>aber, sondern</i> . . . . .	80	182. Change of accusative . . . . .	98
149. <i>The—the</i> . . . . .	80	183. Other compounds of tran- sitive verbs . . . . .	98
150. <i>As</i> . . . . .	81	184. <i>Durch</i> . . . . .	98
		185. <i>Ueber</i> . . . . .	99
		186. <i>Um</i> . . . . .	100
		187. <i>Unter</i> . . . . .	101

## SYNTAX.

## PART I.

## SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCES.

	Page.		Page.
<b>CHAPTER I.—PRELIMINARY RE-MARKS.</b>		<b>CHAPTER IV.—ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.</b>	
1. Simple sentence . . . . .	102	24. Second concord . . . . .	112
2. Subject and attribute . . . . .	102	25. Adjectives with dependent words . . . . .	112
3. Finite verb . . . . .	102	26. Adjectives not epithets . . . . .	112
4. Copulative verbs . . . . .	103	27. Secondary predicates . . . . .	113
5. Extension of predicate, &c. . . . .	103	28. Adjectives never used as epithets . . . . .	113
6. Imperative and interrogative sentences . . . . .	104	29. Epithets only . . . . .	114
7. Complex sentences . . . . .	104	30. The superlative . . . . .	115
<b>CHAPTER II.—CONCORD OF VERB AND SUBJECT.</b>		31. Comparative . . . . .	115
8. First concord . . . . .	104	32. Neuter adjective as noun . . . . .	116
9. Two or more nouns . . . . .	104	33. Strong and weak form . . . . .	116
10. Different persons . . . . .	105	34. Inflexion after <i>einige</i> , &c. . . . .	116
11. Collective nouns and nouns of multitude . . . . .	106	35. <i>Manch</i> . . . . .	116
12. Agreement with logical subject . . . . .	107	36. <i>All</i> . . . . .	116
13. <i>Sein</i> agreeing with complement . . . . .	107	37. <i>Biel</i> , <i>wenig</i> . . . . .	117
14. Impersonal use of verbs . . . . .	107	38. <i>Solch</i> . . . . .	118
15. Titles with plural verbs . . . . .	107	39. Adjective after personal pronouns . . . . .	118
<b>CHAPTER III.—APPOSITION—THE APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT.</b>		40. Indeclinables in <i>er</i> . . . . .	118
15a. Apposition — Agreement in case . . . . .	108	41. Inflexion dropt in poetry, &c. . . . .	119
16. Agreement of gender . . . . .	108	<b>CHAPTER V.—ACCUSATIVE CASE.</b>	
17. Names of towns, &c. . . . .	109	42. Meaning of accusative . . . . .	119
18. Noun in apposition to sentence . . . . .	109	43. Space and time . . . . .	119
19. Complement after copulative verbs . . . . .	109	44. Time when . . . . .	120
20. Other constructions after copulative verbs . . . . .	110	45. Extent, weight, measure, &c. . . . .	120
21. Verbs of naming, making . . . . .	110	46. Nearer object . . . . .	121
22. Construction after such verbs . . . . .	111	47. German and English transitives . . . . .	121
23. <i>Als</i> inserted . . . . .	111	48. Compounds of <i>be</i> . . . . .	121
		49. Cognate accusative . . . . .	122
		50. Accusative analogous to cognate . . . . .	122
		51. Double accusative . . . . .	122
		52. Reflexive verbs . . . . .	123
		53. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	123



	Page.
54. Es giebt.....	124
55. Construction of lassen, &c.	124
56. Adjectives with accusative	124
57. Accusative absolute ....	125

## CHAPTER V.—DATIVE CASE.

58. Classified uses of dative..	125
59. Rest after prepositions ..	125
60. Nearness, comparison.....	125
61. Remoter object .....	126
62. To belong, to be due ....	127
63. Relation.—Verbs of pleas- ing, &c.....	127
64. Folgen, begegnen.....	128
65. Dative of relation .....	128
66. Dative of personal pro- nouns.....	129
67. Ethic dative.....	129
68. Sein, &c., impersonal....	130
69. Other impersonals .....	130
70. Compound verbs.....	130
71. Adjectives .....	131
72. Compounds denoting sepa- ration.....	131
73. Taking away .....	132
74. Passive of verbs with da- tive .....	132
75. Verbs of motion .....	132
76. Compounds with be.....	133

## CHAPTER VI.—GENITIVE CASE.

77. Meaning of the genitive..	133
78. Subjective and objective.	134
79. Subjective and possessive genitive.....	134
80. Objective genitive .....	135
81. Genitive or von .....	135
82. Partitive genitive .....	136
83. After nouns.....	136
84. After cardinals .....	137
85. After ordinals, &c.....	137
86. After pronouns .....	137
87. After adverbs of quantity	138
88. Elliptical after verb ....	138
89. Genitive of material or quality .....	138
90. Genitive with verbs and adjectives .....	139
91. Participation .....	139
92. Fulness, emptiness.....	140

	Page.
93. Removal, separation ....	140
94. Verbs, &c., of feeling....	141
95. Remembering, desiring ..	142
96. Accusing, reminding ....	143
97. Adjectives with genitive.	143
98. Adverbial expressions ..	143
99. Nouns as prepositions ..	144
100. Bistand, &c. ....	144

## CHAPTER VII.—THE CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

101. Original meaning .....	145
102. Metaphorical .....	146
103. Place of preposition and case in sentence .....	146

## CHAPTER VIII.—PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

104. General .....	146
105. An.....	147
106. Auf.....	148
107. Sinter .....	151
108. In.....	151
109. Neben .....	153
110. Ueber.....	153
111. Unter.....	156
112. Vor .....	157
113. Zwischen.....	159

## CHAPTER IX.—PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE ONLY.

114. Aus .....	159
115. Außer .....	160
116. Bei .....	160
117. Binnen .....	163
118. Entgegen .....	163
119. Gegenüber.....	163
120. Gemäß .....	163
121. Mit .....	163
122. Nach .....	164
123. Nebst, sammt.....	165
124. Seit .....	166
125. Von .....	166
126. Zu .....	167

## CHAPTER IX.—PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

126a. Durch .....	169
127. Für .....	170
128. Gegen and wider .....	171
129. Ohne, sonder .....	171
130. Um .....	172

	Page.		Page.
<b>CHAPTER X.—PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.</b>		<b>CHAPTER XIII.—AUXILIARIES—PASSIVE VOICE.</b>	
131. Pronouns of address . . . . .	173	175. Intransitives with <i>sein</i> . . . . .	192
132. <i>Es</i> representing a noun, &c. . . . .	174	176. Variable auxiliary . . . . .	192
133. <i>Es</i> introductory . . . . .	175	177. Ellipsis of auxiliaries . . . . .	193
134. <i>Sich</i> reciprocal. . . . .	175	178. Auxiliaries of passive. . . . .	193
135. <i>His</i> . . . . .	175	179. Passive of intransitives . . . . .	194
136. <i>Dieser, jener</i> . . . . .	175	180. Middle voice . . . . .	195
137. Relative and antecedent. . . . .	176	181. Imperative passive. . . . .	196
138. Antecedent a personal pronoun . . . . .	176	<b>CHAPTER XIV.—THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.</b>	
139. <i>Der</i> in genitive . . . . .	177	182. Omission of <i>zu</i> . . . . .	196
140. <i>Der</i> and <i>welcher</i> . . . . .	177	183. Compound tenses . . . . .	196
141. Antecedent omitted. <i>Der, wer</i> . . . . .	178	184. <i>Could have, should have</i> . . . . .	196
142. Adjective in relative clause . . . . .	179	185. Perfect infinitive with verbs of mood . . . . .	197
143. <i>Such as</i> . . . . .	179	186. Verbe treated like auxiliaries . . . . .	197
144. <i>Wer</i> interrogative . . . . .	179	187. <i>Müssen</i> . . . . .	198
<b>CHAPTER XI.—THE TENSES.</b>		188. <i>Sollen</i> . . . . .	198
145. Classification of tenses . . . . .	180	189. <i>Können</i> . . . . .	199
146. Present . . . . .	180	190. <i>Dürfen</i> . . . . .	199
147. Historical present . . . . .	180	191. <i>Mögen</i> . . . . .	200
148. Present for future . . . . .	181	192. <i>Lassen</i> . . . . .	201
149. Present indicative for imperative. . . . .	181	193. <i>Wollen</i> . . . . .	202
150. Present imperfect for present perfect . . . . .	182	<b>CHAPTER XV.—ORDER OF WORDS.</b>	
151. Past imperfect for past perfect . . . . .	182	194. Parts of a simple sentence . . . . .	202
152. Imperfect and perfect . . . . .	182	195. Declaratory sentence . . . . .	203
153. Future . . . . .	184	196. Verb always second . . . . .	204
154. Double perfect and pluperfect . . . . .	184	197. Interrogative, &c., sentences . . . . .	204
155. Imperative . . . . .	184	198. Place of complement . . . . .	205
<b>CHAPTER XII.—INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE.</b>			
156. Infinitive a verbal noun. . . . .	185		
157. Infinitive converted into a noun . . . . .	185		
158. Infinitive with <i>zu</i> , or supine . . . . .	186		
159. Infinitive and supine as subject . . . . .	186		
160. Supine in apposition . . . . .	186		
161. Infinitive or supine as appositive complement . . . . .	186		
162. Infinitive as object . . . . .	187		
163. Supine as object . . . . .	188		
164. Supine depending on nouns . . . . .	188		
		165. Supine denoting purpose. . . . .	188
		166. Supine depending on adjectives . . . . .	189
		167. Supine with prepositions . . . . .	189
		168. English gerund after prepositions . . . . .	190
		169. Supine as complement in passive sense. . . . .	190
		170. Corresponding participial form . . . . .	191
		171. Ellipsis . . . . .	191
		172. Participles as adjectives. . . . .	191
		173. Past participle of neuter verbs . . . . .	191
		174. Past participle with verbs of motion . . . . .	192

	Page.		Page.
199. Objects and adverbial ad- ditions .....	205	203. Verbs of mood .....	207
200. Participles and infinitives	206	204. Apparent exception after als .....	208
201. Coordinate sentences ....	206	205. Adverbial sentences ....	208
202. Subordinate sentences ..	207	206. Irregularities .....	208

## PART II.

## SYNTAX OF COMPLEX SENTENCES.

## CHAPTER XVI.—INTRODUCTORY.

207. Substantival sentence ..	209
208. Enunciation .....	209
209. Interrogation .....	210
210. Petition .....	210
211. Adjective sentences ....	210
212. Adjectival sentences with antecedent omitted. ....	
213. Classification of adverbial sentences .....	211

CHAPTER XVII.—SUBSTANTIVAL  
SENTENCES.

214. Declaratory sentences ....	212
215. Declaratory sentences as subject, object, &c. ....	212
216. In apposition to compounds of <i>ba</i> .....	213
217. Supine in apposition ....	214
218. Supine as object .....	214
219. Subject of supine .....	214
220. Interrogative sentences ..	215

CHAPTER XVIII.—OBLIQUE  
ORATION.

221. Meaning of oblique oration	215
222. Mood and tense .....	216
223. Form and order .....	216
224. Apposition .....	217
225. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive .....	217
226. Untrue statements .....	218
227. True statements .....	218
228. No sequence of tenses ....	218
229. Imperative .....	219
230. Oblique petition .....	219
231. Infinitive in oblique peti- tion .....	220
232. Hoping and fearing ....	220
233. Oblique interrogation ..	221
234. Repeated questions. ....	221

235. Subordinate sentences in oblique oration .....	222
236. Implied oblique oration ..	222

CHAPTER XIX.—CONSECUTIVE  
SENTENCES.

237. Dependent on <i>so</i> , <i>terart</i> , &c.	222
238. Ellipsis of <i>so</i> .....	223
239. Subjunctive in consecutive sentences .....	223
240. Adjectival sentences ....	224
241. <i>Als</i> <i>baß</i> .....	224
242. <i>Dñne</i> <i>baß</i> .....	225
243. Supine .....	225

## CHAPTER XX.—FINAL SENTENCES.

244. Adverbial with <i>damit</i> , <i>baß</i>	226
245. Indicative in adverbial final sentences .....	226
246. Supine .....	227
247. Auxiliaries of mood ....	227
248. Adjectival final sentences	227

CHAPTER XXI.—SENTENCES OF  
TIME AND PLACE.

249. <i>Wenn</i> distinguished from other words .....	228
250. <i>Als</i> , <i>ba</i> .....	228
251. <i>Wie</i> .....	228
252. <i>Während</i> , <i>in</i> <i>dem</i> .....	229
253. Tenses with <i>seit</i> , <i>seit</i> <i>dem</i> ..	229
254. Subjunctive with <i>bis</i> , <i>ehe</i>	229
255. <i>Hardly</i> .. <i>when</i> ; <i>no</i> <i>sooner</i> .. <i>than</i> .....	230
256. <i>Only when</i> .....	230
257. Adjectival — <i>when</i> , with antecedent .....	230
258. <i>Wherever</i> , <i>whenever</i> ....	231
259. <i>When</i> rendered by <i>worauf</i>	231

	Page.		Page
CHAPTER XXII.—CAUSAL SENTENCES.		270. Apodosis in another form	236
260. Indicative used	231	271. Inconsistency of tenses ..	236
CHAPTER XXIII.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.		272. Conditional sentence adjectival .....	237
261. Protasis and apodosis	232	273. Concessive sentences	237
262. Three forms	232	274. Compounds of <i>ob</i>	237
263. Condition and conclusion real .....	233	275. Omission of <i>ob</i> and <i>wenn</i> ..	238
264. Condition and conclusion unreal .....	233	276. Adjectival form	239
265. Possible but not probable	234	277. <i>Whether.. or</i> .....	240
266. Other conjunctions meaning <i>if</i> .....	234	CHAPTER XXIV.—COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.	
267. Ellipsis of <i>if</i> .....	234	278. <i>Als, wie</i> .....	240
268. Conditional in another form .....	235	279. Sentences beginning with <i>so</i> .....	241
269. Modest statement	235	280. <i>The.. the</i> , before comparatives .....	241
		281. <i>As if</i> .....	241

## APPENDIX I.

## GOVERNMENT OF SOME VERBS.

(See Page 243.)

## APPENDIX II.

## GOVERNMENT OF SOME ADJECTIVES.

(See Page 250.)

## ADDENDA.

## I.—SUFFIXES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(See Page 252.)

1. Noun-endings	252	10. <i>sal, sel</i> .....	254
2. <i>er</i> .....	252	11. <i>ei (ie)</i> .....	254
3. <i>in</i> .....	252	12. Adjectival endings <i>en, ern</i> ..	254
4. <i>ung</i> .....	252	13. <i>ig, icht</i> .....	254
5. <i>chen</i> and <i>lein</i> .....	253	14. <i>isch</i> .....	254
6. <i>heit, feit</i> .....	253	15. <i>bar</i> .....	255
7. <i>schaft</i> .....	253	16. <i>sam</i> .....	255
8. <i>tium</i> .....	253	17. <i>lich</i> .....	255
9. <i>niß</i> .....	254	18. <i>haft, haftig</i> .....	255

## II.—THE ARTICLES.—DIFFERENT CLASSES OF NOUNS.

19. Proper and common nouns	256	23. Article omitted in proverbs, &c. ....	257
20. Abstract and concrete	256	24. Familiar combinations	258
21. Article with names of persons .....	256	25. Genitive before governing noun .....	258
22. Definite article with common nouns .....	257	26. One article for several nouns .....	258

## Chapter I.—Introductory.

1. ALPHABET.—The German alphabet consists of 26 letters, and closely resembles the English alphabet. The Black-letter characters are used in newspapers and works of general literature; the Roman characters in scientific works, including many theological and some historical books.—The following are the characters, with a few hints on their pronunciation.

Black-letter characters.	Names.	Roman characters.	Pronunciation.
<b>A</b>	a ah	A a	... as <i>a</i> in <i>pāpā</i> (not as in <i>man</i> , <i>hat</i> )
<b>B</b>	b bay	B b	... generally as <i>b</i> ; when final, or when followed by a consonant, almost, if not quite, like <i>p</i> .
<b>C</b>	c tsay	C c	... as <i>k</i> before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>l</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>r</i> ; as <i>ts</i> before <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>ä</i> , <i>ö</i> ; (for <i>ch</i> , <i>sch</i> , <i>ck</i> , see § 4).
<b>D</b>	d day	D d	... generally as <i>d</i> ; when final, almost, if not quite like <i>t</i> .
<b>E</b>	e ay	E e	... as <i>e</i> in <i>dēmēsne</i> (pr. <i>demane</i> ).
<b>F</b>	f ef	F f	... as <i>f</i> .
<b>G</b>	g gay	G g	... at the beginning or middle of a word as <i>g</i> hard; when final, between <i>ch</i> and <i>k</i> ; never like [g in <i>gesture</i> .
<b>H</b>	h hah	H h	... as <i>h</i> .
<b>I</b>	i ee	I i	... as <i>i</i> in <i>quinine</i> .
<b>J</b>	j yot	J j	... as <i>y</i> consonant.
<b>K</b>	k kah	K k	... as <i>k</i> .
<b>L</b>	l el	L l	... as <i>l</i> .
<b>M</b>	m em	M m	... as <i>m</i> .
<b>N</b>	n en	N n	... as <i>n</i> .
<b>O</b>	o o	O o	... as <i>o</i> in <i>prōmōte</i> (not as in <i>pot</i> ).
<b>P</b>	p pay	P p	... as <i>p</i> .
<b>Q</b>	q koo	Q q	... <i>qu</i> is between <i>kw</i> and <i>kv</i> .
<b>R</b>	r err	R r	... as <i>r</i> in French, <i>i.e.</i> more trilled than in English.
<b>S</b>	s ess	S s	... at the beginning of a word, or between two vowels as the English <i>s</i> in <i>easy</i> ; elsewhere as the English <i>ss</i> in <i>essay</i> .
<b>T</b>	t tay	T t	... as <i>t</i> .
<b>U</b>	u oo	U u	... as <i>u</i> in <i>Zübū</i> .
<b>V</b>	v fow	V v	... as <i>f</i> , but in foreign words like <i>v</i> .
<b>W</b>	w vay	W w	... as <i>v</i> , or nearly so.
<b>X</b>	x iks	X x	... as <i>ks</i> .
<b>Y</b>	y ypsilon	Y y	... as <i>i</i> or <i>y</i> in <i>gipsy</i> .
<b>Z</b>	z tset	Z z	... as <i>ts</i> , except in combination <i>sz</i> .

2. MODIFIED VOWELS.—The vowels *a, o, u* are sometimes combined with *e* to form fresh vowel-sounds, written *ä, ö, ü*. The two dots represent the *e*, which used to be written above the other letter. With capital letters, *e* is still written, but *after A, O, U*; as, *Apfel* (but *äpflich*), *Del* (but *öde*), *Uebel* (but *übel*). The German name for the modified vowel sound is *Umlaut*.\*

*Äe, ä, Ae, ä* ... as German *e*, long or short, but more open.

*Öe, ö, Oe, ö* ... as French *eu* (often rhymes with *e* short).

*Üe, ü, Ue, ü* ... as French *u* (often rhymes with *i* long).

### 3. OTHER COMBINATIONS OF VOWELS:—

*Äi, ai Ai, ai* ... as *ai* in *aisle* (in a few words *ay*, *ay* is [found]).

*Äu, au Au, au* ... as *ow* in *cow*.

*Äeu, äu Aeu, äu* } as *oi* in *foil*.

*Äi, ei Ei, ei* ... as long *i* in English *side*.

*Äe, ie Ie, ie* ... as long *e* in English *cede*.

*Äi, ui Ui, ui* ... as English *we*, French *oui*.

*Äa, aa Aa, aa* ... long *a* (when modified becomes *ä*).

*Äo, oo Oo, oo* ... long *o* (when modified becomes *ö*).

### 4. COMBINATIONS OF CONSONANTS:—

*Ch, ch Ch, ch* ... must be learned by practice—a sound between *h* and *k* is the nearest English description; † but *ch* in the root of a word = *ks* or *x*. ‡

— *ck* ... as *kk*.

— *ng* ... as *ng* in *singer* (not as in *finger*).

*Sch, sch Sch, sch* ... as *sh*.

*Sz, — Sz* ... at the beginning of a few foreign words

— *ss* ... as *ss*. [as *sts*.

*Th, th Th, th* ... as *t*.

*Tz, tz Tz, tz* ... as *ts* (or German *z*).

5. NOTES ON THE CHARACTERS.—The long *s* (ſ) is used in the middle or at the beginning of a word; the short *s* (s)—(1) at the end of a word, (2) at the end of the

\* It will be observed that modifications take place when a termination containing the letter *i* or *e* is added. The tendency was to make the root-vowels more like that of the termination; hence the vowels *ä, ö, ü*, all more like *e* than *a, o, u*.

† The Scotch *ch* in *loch*, or the Irish *gh* in *lough*, is a good equivalent.

‡ In words derived from foreign languages, *ch* is generally pronounced like *k*, as *Chor, Christ*; in some French words, as *Charlotte*, like *sh*.

first component of a compound word, and (3) at the end of a syllable, not immediately followed by a vowel, *e.g.*, sprengen, Gemüse, es, losgehen, Friedrichshall, weißlich, eisig, lesen, Donnerstag.

There is some difficulty about the sibilant ff or ß; it is denoted by ff only when it comes between two vowels, of which the first is short; in all other cases by ß—*e.g.*, weiß, muß, mußte, häßlich, passen, Fluß, Flußes, Flüsse, Schoß, Schoßes, Schöße, schießen, grüßen, gewiß, gewisser, mißbilligen, essen, issest, ist, Fuß, Fußes, Füße, groß, größer, am größten, besser. In compounds like weißfagen the two letters are independent.\*

6. CAPITALS.—All nouns are written and printed in German with capital letters, as they are, for example, in old editions of "The Spectator," &c. The same rule applies to adjectives and other parts of speech used as nouns. The only other difference from English is that adjectives derived from proper names, as französisch, French; englisch, English, are printed with small initial letters.

7. ACCENT.—The general rule in German is to place the accent on the root-syllable of a word; thus, Begebenheit, not Begebénheit; der folgende, not der folgénde. Compare gebet, give; Gebét, prayer. In compound words both constituents retain their own accents; as, Todesfeindschaft, hinterlistig. Hence *separable* prefixes, which are really distinct words (adverbs), are accented; as, eingéhen, ankómmen. The *inseparable* prefixes, which are, so to speak, merged in the compound, remain unaccented; as, begében, entkómmen. Nouns taken from Latin or Greek, ending in soph, nom, frat, &c, are accented on the last syllable; as, Demofrát, Philosoph (but notice Monat, a strictly German word), and the numerous verbs in iren, ieren, mostly from the French, are accented on the ir or ier: régieren, marschirt.

## Chapter II.—The Articles.

8. ANSWER TO ENGLISH ARTICLES.—There are in German as in English two articles, the *definite* article and the *indefinite* article. They differ from the articles of modern English, inasmuch as they take inflexions of gender, number and case.

\* When e is omitted between f and t, an apostrophe is sometimes inserted, as lief't, hercis't, der Wind brauf't.

## 9. DECLENSION—DEFINITE ARTICLE :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	der	die	daß	die
G.	des	der	des	der
D.	dem	der	dem	den
A.	den	die	daß	die

## INDEFINITE ARTICLE :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
N.	ein	eine	ein	
G.	eines	einer	eines	<i>No plural.</i>
D.	einem	einer	einem	
A.	einen	eine	ein	

The following will show how articles are joined to nouns :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	der	Sohn,	the son	die	Söhne,	the sons
G.	des	Sohnes,	{ of the son, the son's	der	Söhne,	{ of the sons the sons'
D.	dem	Sohne,	to the son	den	Söhnen,	to the sons
A.	den	Sohn	the son	die	Söhne,	the sons.
N.	eine	Frau,	a woman	die	Frauen,	the women
G.	einer	Frau,	{ of a woman, a woman's	der	Frauen,	{ of the women, the women's.
			etc., etc.			

## Chapter III.—Declension of Nouns.

[NOTE.—In learning the declensions for the first time, it will be well to postpone committing to memory some, if not all, of the lists of nouns.]

10. GENERAL REMARKS.—Nouns in German have four cases:—nominative, genitive, dative and accusative. Except in one group of nouns, the nominative and accusative singular are alike. The nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of all nouns are alike.

11. STRONG AND WEAK DECLENSIONS.\*—There are two forms of declension,—the strong declension, characterised by the addition of the case-inflexions *es, e, er*, and in many instances by the modification of the root-vowel; and

\* The names *strong* and *weak* are not (says Schleicher) as appropriate in speaking of nouns as of verbs. Strong verbs are simple, weak verbs derived verbs; but the so-called strong nouns represent the vowel-declensions, the weak nouns the consonant-declensions of the older language, neither of which has any claim to the precedence implied by strong and weak.



the weak declension, marked by the use of the inflexion **n** or **en**, and never admitting modification. The weak declension includes most feminine nouns, and one or two classes of masculines, but no neuters; the strong declension the bulk of masculine nouns, nearly all neuters, and a few feminines. A few nouns belong to one declension in the singular, to the other in the plural (§ 18). Adjectives used as nouns are declined as adjectives (§ 47).

## 12. GENERAL RULES:—

(1.) The *strong* declension forms the plural by adding **e** or **er**, and by modifying, in most instances, the root-vowel **a**, **o**, **u**. It adds **eſ** or **ſ** in the genitive singular, and **e** in the dative singular, except in the case of feminine nouns.

(2.) The *weak* declension adds **en** or **n** in all cases of the plural, and never modifies in the plural. Masculine nouns of this declension add **n** or **en** in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular; feminine nouns remain unchanged in the singular.

(3.) Feminine nouns, whether strong or weak, remain unchanged in the singular number.\*

(4.) The dative plural of all nouns ends in **n**.

(5.) When the plural of a polysyllable is formed by adding a syllable and modifying, it is only the last syllable of the root that can be affected. Thus *Paläſt* makes *Paläſte*, not *Paläſte*, *Abend* makes *Abende* (*e* being incapable of modification), not *Abende*. When no syllable is added, the modification, if any, affects the last syllable but one; thus *Water* makes *Wäter*, but *Wanderer* makes *Wanderer*, not *Wänderer*.

## 13. WEAK DECLENSION.—MASCULINE:—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N.	der Knabe, boy,	der Menſch, man, †	der Soldat, soldier,
G.	deſ Knaben,	deſ Menſchen,	deſ Soldaten,
D.	dem Knaben,	dem Menſchen,	dem Soldaten,
A.	den Knaben,	den Menſchen,	den Soldaten.
	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	die Knaben,	die Menſchen,	die Soldaten,
G.	der Knaben,	der Menſchen,	der Soldaten,
D.	den Knaben,	den Menſchen,	den Soldaten,
A.	die Knaben.	die Menſchen.	die Soldaten.

\* Feminine nouns were formerly inflected in the singular; this old inflexion is retained in a few phrases, as *auf Erben*, in *Witten*, and is found occasionally in Schiller's and Goethe's poems.

† *Menſch*, = *homo*, *Mann* = *vir*.

To this declension belong:—

(1.) Names of male persons and animals ending in *e*; as, der Affe, ape, der Rabe, raven, der Matrose, sailor.

(2.) A few monosyllables and one or two polysyllables denoting persons or animals, which once ended in *e*. The chief of them are:—

Mensch, Girt, Gese,	man, shepherd, buffoon,
Graf, Held, Herr,*	count, hero, lord,
Fürst, Prinz,† Ochse,	prince, prince, ox,
Narr, Fink, Bär,	buffoon, finch, bear.
Hagestolz, Gefell,	bachelor, mate,
Uhn, Christ, Mohr,	ancestor, Christian, Moor,
Lump, Schenk, Spatz,	vagabond, butler, sparrow,
Vorfahr, Thor,	ancestor ("forebear"), fool.

(3.) Names of nations and tribes not having the suffix *er*; as, der Kosack, der Wallach, der Tartar; also, der Barbar, der Husar.

(4.) Nouns of foreign origin and form (especially Greek derivatives in *log*, *graph*, *nom*, *arch*, *frat*, *soph*) denoting male persons, accented on the last syllable, and *not* ending in *al*, *an*, *ar*, *ier*, *on*, or; as, der Jurist, der Monarch, der Tyrann, der Democrat, der Katholik, der Protestant, der Astronom, der Philosoph.‡

#### 14. WEAK DECLENSION.—FEMININE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. die Frau, woman,	die Blume, flower,	die Handlung, action,
G. der Frau,	der Blume,	der Handlung,
D. der Frau,	der Blume,	der Handlung,
A. die Frau.	die Blume.	die Handlung.
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. die Frauen,	die Blumen,	die Handlungen,
G. der Frauen,	der Blumen,	der Handlungen,
D. den Frauen,	den Blumen,	den Handlungen,
A. die Frauen.	die Blumen.	die Handlungen.

\* Herr makes Herrn in singular, Herren in plural.

† Fürst—(1) applied to a reigning sovereign; (2) a title of nobility. Thus, Fürst is equally applicable to the Emperor of Germany and to Prince Bismarck. Prinz, a sovereign's son.

‡ Add a few foreign names of animals—Elephant, Leopard, etc., and a very few foreign words denoting things—Planet, Comet, Consonant, etc.

To this declension belong:—

(1.) All feminine nouns of more than one syllable, except *Mutter*, *Tochter*, and those ending in *niß* and *sal*. The chief feminine *suffixes* are—in, *ei*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *ung*.\* Abstract nouns and nouns denoting inanimate objects are feminine if they end in *e* (with some exceptions, for which see § 37).

(2.) About thirty monosyllables:—

<i>Art</i> , <i>Bahn</i> , <i>Flur</i> ,	manner, road, field,
<i>Bucht</i> , <i>Burg</i> , <i>Spur</i> ,	bight, castle, trace,
<i>Form</i> , <i>Frau</i> , <i>Uhr</i> ,	mould, woman, watch,
<i>Jagd</i> , <i>Last</i> , <i>Fluth</i> ,	chase, load, flood,
<i>Pflicht</i> , <i>Post</i> , <i>Gluth</i> ,	duty (plight), post, glow,
<i>Schaar</i> , <i>Schrift</i> , <i>Schlacht</i> ,	host, writing, battle,
<i>Schuld</i> , <i>That</i> , <i>Tracht</i> ,	debt (or guilt), deed, dress,
<i>Welt</i> , <i>Zeit</i> , <i>Dual</i> ,	world, time (tide†), torture,
<i>Thür</i> , <i>Wahl</i> , <i>Zahl</i> ,	door, choice, number (tale).

*Obs.* 1. It should be noticed that *n* only (not *en*) is added to the terminations *e*, *el*, *er*, as *die Fabel*, *die Fabeln*, not *die Fabelen*.

*Obs.* 2. No neuter nouns belong to the weak declension.

## 15. STRONG DECLENSION.—PLURAL IN **er**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. der	<i>Mann</i> , <i>man</i> ,	<i>das Dorf</i> , <i>village</i> ,	<i>das Fürstenthum</i> , <i>principality</i>
G. des	<i>Mann(e)s</i> ,	<i>des Dorf(e)s</i> ,	<i>des Fürstenthum(e)s</i> ,
D. dem	<i>Mann(e)</i> ,	<i>dem Dorf(e)</i> ,	<i>dem Fürstenthum(e)</i> ,
A. den	<i>Mann</i> .	<i>das Dorf</i> .	<i>das Fürstenthum</i> .
	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. die	<i>Männer</i> ,	<i>die Dörfer</i> ,	<i>die Fürstenthümer</i> ,
G. der	<i>Männer</i> ,	<i>der Dörfer</i> ,	<i>der Fürstenthümer</i> ,
D. den	<i>Männern</i> ,	<i>den Dörfern</i> ,	<i>den Fürstenthümern</i> ,
A. die	<i>Männer</i> ,	<i>die Dörfer</i> ,	<i>die Fürstenthümer</i> .

To this declension belong:—

(1.) Twelve masculine nouns, *i.e.* :—

<i>Leib</i> , <i>Geist</i> , <i>Mann</i> ,	body, spirit, man,
<i>Wald</i> , <i>Wurm</i> , <i>Gott</i> ,	wood (wold), worm, God,
<i>Vormund</i> , <i>Reichthum</i> ,	guardian, wealth,
<i>Rand</i> , <i>Ort</i> , <i>Irrthum</i> ,	edge (rim), place, error,
<i>Böfewicht</i> ,	villain (bad wight).

\* See § 35.

† As in *Whitsuntide*.

(2.) Neuters in *thum*; as, *das Herzogthum, das Eigenthum*; and a few compounds in *mal*; as, *Grabmal, Denkmal*.

(3.) About sixty neuter monosyllables, and a few neuter polysyllables, of which the chief are:—

Ei, Nest, Huhn,	egg, nest, fowl (hen*),
Volk, Weib, Kind,	people (folk), woman, child,
Haupt, Maul, Horn,	head, mouth, horn,
Lamm, Kalb, Rind,	lamb, calf, ox,
Dorf, Gut, Land,	village (thorp), estate, land,
Schloß, Haus, Dach,	castle (or lock), house, roof,
Tuch, Kleid, Gewand,	cloth, gown, robe,
Brett, Faß, Fach,	board, cask, shelf,
Buch, Wort, Lied,	book, word, song,
Blatt, Kraut, Gras,	leaf (blade), herb, grass,
Bild, Gesicht, Glied,	picture, face, limb,
Holz, Licht, Glas,	wood (holt), light, glass,
Stift, Gemach, Hospital,	foundation, room, hospital,
Feld, Korn, Thal,	field, grain, dale,
Grab, Gespenst, Aas,†	grave, ghost, carrion,
Amt, Schild, Rad,	office, sign-board, wheel,
Schwert, Regiment,	sword, regiment,
Loch, Gemüth, Bad,	hole, mind, bath,
Geschlecht, Parlament,	race (or sex), parliament.

*Obs. 1.*—All nouns forming the plural in *er* modify the root-vowel in the plural, if that vowel be *a, o, u*, or *au*. These become *ä, ö, ü, äu*.

*Obs. 2.*—No feminines form the plural by adding *er*.

## 16. STRONG DECLENSION.—PLURAL IN *e*.

### *Masculine.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N.	der Sohn, son,	der Zug, train,	der Jüngling, youth,
G.	des Sohnes,	des Zug(e)s,	des Jüngling(e)s,
D.	dem Sohne,	dem Zug(e),	dem Jüngling(e),
A.	den Sohn,	den Zug.	den Jüngling.
	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	die Söhne,	die Züge,	die Jünglinge,
G.	der Söhne,	der Züge,	der Jünglinge,
D.	den Söhnen,	den Zügen,	den Jünglingen,
A.	die Söhne.	die Züge.	die Jünglinge.

\* In moor-hen, etc.

† Plural *Aeser*.

<i>Feminine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
N. die Stadt, town,	das Pferd, horse,	das Gewicht, weight,	
G. der Stadt,	des Pferd(e)s,	des Gewicht(e)s,	
D. der Stadt,	dem Pferd(e),	dem Gewicht(e),	
A. die Stadt.	das Pferd.	das Gewicht.	
<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
N. die Städte,	die Pferde,	die Gewichte,	
G. der Städte,	der Pferde,	der Gewichte,	
D. den Städten,	den Pferden,	den Gewichten,	
A. die Städte.	die Pferde.	die Gewichte.	

The retention or dropping of *e* in the genitive and dative is a question of euphony. It is *necessarily dropped* in words of more than one syllable ending in a liquid or *e* (§ 17), and *necessarily retained* in words ending in a sibilant (*s, z*), or in *sch, st*. With regard to other words, it is generally dropped in polysyllables, and generally retained in monosyllables, except such as have a long vowel and end in a liquid. The strict rule is to use *e* in the dative of all nouns requiring *es* in the genitive; the tendency of writers is to drop it as much as possible.

Feminine monosyllables making the plural in *e* always modify the root-vowel; masculines generally;\* neuters never.

To this declension belong:—

(a) *Masculines.*

(1.) The roots of verbs, which are nearly all masculine; as, der Sang, der Schwung, der Schlag, der Fluß. Notice especially the compounds of such nouns, as der Aufschlag, der Zustand, der Besuch, der Vorhang.

\* The following masculines of this declension do not modify:—

Arm, Tag, Hof, Hund,  
Ort, Pfad, Schuh, Mond,

and Aal, Aar, Act, Amboss, Anwalt, Besuch, -holz (Rauholz, etc.), Bort, Born, Docht, Dolch, Dom, Dorst, Druck<sup>1</sup>, Erfolg, Gemahl, Gefuch, Grad, Gurt, Hag, Halm, Hauch, Helm, Herst, Hort, Kalk, Karst, Kork, Krahn, Lack, Laut, Leichnam, Melch, Nord, Park, Pol, Puls, Salm, Schust, Spath, Staar, Stoff, Sund, Takt, Takt, Thron, Trupp, Unholz, Verlust, Versuch, Vielfraß, Wiebehopf, Zoll (inch). With Herzog, Lachs, Luchs, Plan, the usage varies. It will be seen by the above list that such foreign nouns as belong to this declension generally leave the root-vowel unmodified. The following foreign nouns *do* modify:—

Abt, Altar, Chor, Choral,                      Probst, Kaplan, Palaß,  
Bischof, Pappst, and Cardinal,              Marsch, Kanal, Morast.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds of Druck modify in the plural; as, Einbrücke, impressions; Abbrücke, copies (of a print, etc.).

(2.) Monosyllabic names of male animals; as, der Dachß, badger; der Fuchß, fox; der Luchß, lynx.

(3.) A number of monosyllables denoting things; as, der Baum, tree; der Pfad, path; der Tisch, table; in fact, all masculine monosyllables that do not find their place in some other list.

(4.) Derivatives with the suffixes *ling*, *rich*, *am*; as, der Jüngling, youth; der Wüßling, libertine; der Bräutigam, bridegroom; der Wütherich, furious tyrant; also, der Monat\* (pl. Monate); der König, king; der Palast, palace (pl. Paläste), and a few others.

(5.) Nouns of foreign origin ending in *al*, *an*, *ar*, *ier*, and a few in *on*; as, der General (pl. Generäle, or Generale), der Grenadier, der Baron. Also, most in *iv*; as, Motiv, Motive.†

(β) *Feminines.*

(1.) About thirty-six monosyllables, and their compounds:—

Angst, Art, Banf, Faust,	anguish, axe, bench, fist,
Gans, Kraft, Hand,	goose, strength, hand,
Noth, Kuh, Nuf, Sau,	need, cow, nut, sow, †
Schnur, Schwulst, Wand,	string, swelling, wall,
Braut, Lust, Haut, Brust,	bride, pleasure, skin, breast,
Brunst, Kunst, Macht,	burning, art, might,
Nacht, Laus, Stadt, Maus,	seam, louse, town, mouse,
Magd, Wurst, Nacht,	maid, sausage, night,
Luft, Frucht, Zucht,	air, fruit, training,
and in compounds—Flucht,	flight,
Grust, Kluft, Junft,	grave, cleft, guild,
and in compounds—Kunst, §	coming.

All these without exception modify in the plural.

(2.) Most of the nouns ending in *niß*, and *die Mühsal*, *die Trübsal*, *die Drangsal* (pl. Mühsale, &c.).

(γ) *Neuters.*

(1.) All neuters beginning with the prefix *ge*, and not ending in *e*, except:—

· Gemüth, Gewand, Gesicht,	mind, robe, face,
Gemach, Gespenst, Geschlecht,	room, ghost, race.

\* Monat is a genuine German word, accented on the first syllable. Sobát belongs to the weak declension; Magistrát, Majorát, Drnát, Senát, to the strong declension.

† But Substantiven, Adjectiven.

‡ Also makes Sauen, see p. 15.

§ Ausflucht, excuse; Zusammenkunft, meeting, etc.; also Zeitläufte, periods; Einkünfte, revenues, used in plural only.

## (2.) Eight monosyllables ending in r:—

Haar, Paar, Rohr, Meer,	hair, pair, reed, sea,
Jahr, Thor, Thier, Heer,	year, gate, beast, army.

## (3.) The following monosyllables:—

Beil, Bein, Brod,	axe, leg, bread,
Fell, Gift, Boot,	hide, poison, boat,
Hest, Netz, Loos,	handle (haft),* net, lot,
Pferd, Pfund, † Ross,	horse, pound, steed,
Knie, Recht, Reich, Hirn,	knee, right, empire, brain,
Salz, Schwein, Werk, Ziel,	salt, pig, work, goal,
Schaf, Schiff, Seil, Spiel,	sheep, ship, rope, game.

None of these modify in the plural.

## 17. STRONG DECLENSION.—PLURAL UNCHANGED.

*Masculine.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. der Bruder, brother,	der Kessel, kettle,	der Garten, garden,
G. des Bruders,	des Kessels,	des Gartens,
D. dem Bruder,	dem Kessel,	dem Garten,
A. den Bruder.	den Kessel.	den Garten.

<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. die Brüder,	die Kessel,	die Gärten,
G. der Brüder,	der Kessel,	der Gärten,
D. den Brüdern,	den Kesseln,	den Gärten,
A. die Brüder.	die Kessel.	die Gärten.

*Feminine.**Neuter.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. die Mutter, mother,	das Wunder, miracle,	das Zeichen, token.
G. der Mutter,	des Wunders,	des Zeichens,
D. der Mutter,	dem Wunder,	dem Zeichen,
A. die Mutter.	das Wunder.	das Zeichen.

<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. die Mütter,	die Wunder,	die Zeichen,
G. der Mütter,	der Wunder,	der Zeichen,
D. den Müttern,	den Wundern,	den Zeichen,
A. die Mütter.	die Wunder.	die Zeichen.

\* Also a copy-book, several sheets of paper sewn together.

† See however § 23.

		<i>Neuter.</i>			
		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>		
N. daß	Kindlein, little child,	daß	Gemälde, picture,		
G. deß	Kindleins,	deß	Gemäldeß,		
D. dem	Kindlein,	dem	Gemälde,		
A. daß	Kindlein.	daß	Gemälde.		
		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		
N. die	Kindlein,	die	Gemälde,		
G. der	Kindlein,	der	Gemälde,		
D. den	Kindlein,	den	Gemälde,		
A. die	Kindlein.	die	Gemälde.		

This declension includes :—

(1.) The two feminine nouns *Mutter* and *Tochter*, both of which modify in the plural.

(2.) *Masculine* and *neuter* nouns in *el*, *en*, *er*.\* Remember that feminines in *el*, *er*, are of the weak declension. No feminine noun ends in *en*.

(3.) Diminutives ending in *chen* and *lein*, which are all neuter.

(4.) Neuters ending in *e*; as, *daß Gemälde*. But *daß Auge*, eye, *daß Ende*, end, belong to the mixed declension.

(5.) One masculine in *e*: *der Käse*, the cheese (*deß Käseß*, *die Käse*).

*Obs.*—The following masculines :—

*Gedanke*, *Haufe*, *Funke*, *Glaube*, *Same*,  
*Buchstabe*, *Wille*, *Friede*, *Fels*, and *Name*,  
 thought, heap, spark, faith, seed,  
 letter, will, peace, rock, name,

and the neuter noun *Herz*, heart, have lost or, at least, very rarely retain the final *n* or *en* in the nominative, but keep it in the other cases. They are declined as follows :—

\* Most nouns of this declension remain unmodified in the plural. But the neuter noun *Kloster*, and the following masculines modify :—

*Mantel*, *Sattel*, *Apfel*, *Nabel*,  
*Nagel*, *Handel*, *Vogel*, *Schnabel*.  
*Sammel*, *Mangel*, *Boden*, *Faden*,  
*Garten*, *Boden*, *Ofen*, *Laden*.  
*Vater*, *Bruder*, *Schwager*, *Schatten*,  
*Sammer*, *Acker*, *Hafen*, *Graben*.



<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. der Name, name,	der Fels (or Felsen), rock,	das Herz, heart,
G. des Namens,	des Felsens,	des Herzens,
D. dem Namen,	dem Felsen,	dem Herzen,
A. den Namen.	den Felsen.	das Herz.
<i>Plur.</i>		
N. die Namen,	die Felsen,	die Herzen,
G. der Namen,	der Felsen,	der Herzen,
D. den Namen,	den Felsen,	den Herzen,
A. die Namen.	die Felsen.	die Herzen.

Schade is declined like Name, but makes Schäden in the plural; none of the others of this group modify in the plural.

18. MIXED DECLENSION.—Certain nouns follow the strong declension in the singular, and the weak declension in the plural.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. der Strahl, ray,	das Auge, eye,
G. des Strahl(e)s,	des Auges,
D. dem Strahl(e),	dem Auge,
A. den Strahl.	das Auge.
<i>Plur.</i>	
N. die Strahlen,	die Augen,
G. der Strahlen,	der Augen,
D. den Strahlen,	den Augen,
A. die Strahlen.	die Augen.

They are :—

(a) *Masculine.*

- (1.) Zins, Gebatter, Forst, and Gau,  
 Bauer, Nachbar, Lorbeer, Pfau,  
 Pantoffel, Stachel, Sporn,  
 Zierrath, Wetter, Schmerz, Dorn,  
 Staat, Unterthan,  
 See, Strahl, and Ahn.

tax, godfather, forest, canton,  
 peasant, neighbour, laurel, peacock,  
 slipper, boot, sting (spur),  
 ornament, cousin, pain, thorn,  
 state, subject,  
 lake, ray, ancestor.

(2.) Nouns denoting professions, &c., ending in *or*; as, Doctor, Professor, (except Major, pl. *Majore*), and a few other foreign words; as, Tribun, Konsul, Medil, Triumvir, Präsekt, Muskel, Fasan, Kapaun.

(β) *Neuter*.

Auge, Ende, Ohr, Hemd, Bett, eye, end, ear, shirt, bed.

19. DECLENSION OF SOME LATIN WORDS.—Neuter nouns with the Latin termination *ium* take an *s* in the Genitive singular, and change *um* into *ei* to form the plural; as, *Studium, Studiums, Studien*. The same applies to *Verb, Insekt, Pronom, Statut, Lyzeum, Museum, Antiquarium*. Another group, *Adverb, Partizip, Prinzip, Kapital* \* (*money*), *Regal, Fossil, Reptil*, take *en*; *Adverbien, Kapitalien, &c.* Sometimes Latin plurals are used; as, *Tempus, Tempora; Motus, Moti; Casus, Casus; Thema, Themata; Verison, Verifa*. *Faktum* makes *Fakten*, or *Fakta*; *Krisis* makes *Krisen*.

20. ENGLISH AND FRENCH WORDS of modern introduction retain the plural in *s*; as, *die Honneurs (honours at cards), die Lorbs, die Puttings, die Labys* or *Labies, die Fonds (the funds)*. Notice *Rouleaus, Solos, &c.*

21. PROPER NAMES.—The following are the chief rules:—

(α.) Family names without article take *e* in the plural (and *n* or *en* in the dative); with the article the usage varies. Those ending in *e, el, en, er* naturally remain unaltered; so, as a rule, do those in *s, x, z*. Thus we may say *die Wolfe* (not *die Wölfe*), or *die Wolf*; *die Müller, die Curtius*. As to Christian names, masculines generally take *e*, as, *die Heinrich*; feminines *n*, if they end in *e*, as, *die Leonoren*: *s*, if they end in another vowel, as, *die Fanny's*.

Notice *die Scipionen, die Neronen, die Gracchen*; but *die Meteller, die Fabier*.

(β.) The Genitive, both of masculine and feminine proper names, is usually formed by adding *s*; as, *Herters Werke, Servinus's Literaturgeschichte, Fanny's Eltern, die Eltern Fanny's*. An apostrophe is inserted when the name ends in a vowel, or in *s, x, z*.

(γ.) Masculine Christian names ending in *s, x, z, sch*, form the Genitive in *ens*; as, *Hans, Hansens; Moriz, Morizens; Franz, Franzens*. So also do feminine Christian names ending in *e*; as, *Sophie, Sophiens*. The rule applies to a limited extent to surnames like *Wof, Dpiz* (*Wof's, Dpiz's* being preferred to *Wofens, Dpizens*), and not at all to classical names like *Kerres, Curtius*, even when adopted as German surnames.

Classical names ending in *s, &c.*, especially if not accented on the last syllable, do not usually take even the *s*, but their case is marked by the article or by the sense: *das Heer des Kerres, Venus heiterer Tempel, Mercur Tochter*.

Dative forms, like *Franzen, Hansen*, are no longer much used.

(δ.) The inflexion of proper names ending in *s, x, z, &c.*, is often avoided by the use of the article; as, *das Heer des Kerres, die Schönheit der Daphnis*; *von* is also frequently used, especially before the names of authors. The article is also often used with *dat.* or *acc.* to avoid ambiguity.

\* But *Kapitäl*, capitals in architecture.

Sicherer says :—“ We may say, die Gedichte Hoffens, Hoffens Gedichte, die Gedichte des Voss, Voss's Gedichte, die Gedichte von Voss (the first two being somewhat antiquated); die Werke Schillers und Göthe's, Schillers und Göthe's Werke, die Werke von Schiller und von Göthe; Morizens und Emma's Eltern, die Eltern des Moriz und der Emma, die Eltern von Moriz und von Emma, but not die Gedichte Voss's, die Eltern Moriz's, nor die Gedichte des Schiller or des Göthe.”

The genitive and dative of Jesus is generally Jesu; Christus is declined as in Latin, Christi, Christo, &c.\*; as, Strauß's Leben Jesu; nach Christi Geburt.

(ε.) When several names of the same person are mentioned, the last only—as in English—takes the Genitive inflexion: die Werke Johana Sebastian Bachs, or des J. S. Bach, or Johann Sebastian Bachs Werke. Notice die Thaten König Friedrichs des Zweiten, Karls (or Karl) des Großen Standbild.

If the name be preceded by an adjective it takes the inflexion only when standing *before* the noun on which it depends—die Werke des berühmten Herber, des berühmten Herbers Werke.

(ζ.) Names of towns and countries add s to form the genitive, unless they end in a sibilant. In that case insert Stadt, &c., as der Stadt Mainz, or use von.

22. NOUNS WITH TWO PLURALS.—A number of nouns have two forms of the plural with different meanings. The following are the chief:—

das Band,	Bande, fetters,	Bänder, bands, ribbons.
die Bank,	Bänke, benches,	Banken, banks (for money).
der Fuß,	Füße, feet of a person,	Fuße, measures. †
der Dorn,	Dorne, several thorns	Dornen (collective).
	(taken one by one),	
das Gesicht,	Gesichte, sights, apparitions,	Gesichter, faces.
das Horn,	Hörne, sorts of horn,	Hörner, horns.
der Laden,	Laden, shutters,	Läden, shops.
das Land,	Lande, territories of one	Länder, countries (the most
	state (as Niederlande),	common).
der Mann,	Männer, men,	Mannen, vassals (obs.).
der Mond,	Monde, moons,	Monden, months (poet.).
der Ort,	Orter, towns, villages,	Orte, places (to be in two
	&c.	places at once).
die Sau,	Säue (ordinary),	Sauen (wild).
die Schnur,	Schnüre, strings,	Schnuren, daughters-in-law.
der Strauß,	Sträusse, nose-gays,	Strauße, Straußen, ostriches.
das Tuch,	Tücher, cloths, shawls,	Tüche, kinds of cloth.
das Wort,	Wörter, † disconnected	Worte, words in connection.
	words,	
der Zoll,	Zölle, tolls,	Zolle, inches.

\* Christ means a Christian. † But see § 23. ‡ A dictionary is Wörterbuch.

23. NO PLURAL OF MEASURES.—Masculine and neuter names of measures, like *Fuß*, *Zoll*, *Stück*, are not usually inflected in the plural; as, *zehn Fuß hoch*; *drei Zoll lang*; *vier Stück Leinwand*; *sechs Faß Wein*; *zwei Pfund Kirschchen*; so also *Mann*, in speaking of troops, *fünf hundert Mann*, &c.; but *zwei Ellen hoch*, *Elle* being a feminine noun. Notice also that *Wein*, &c., do not, in such cases, take the sign of the genitive.

24. BORROWED PLURALS.—The majority of abstract nouns have, as a rule, no plural in German, nor, indeed, strictly speaking, in any language. But, as many abstract nouns have, along with their proper meanings, kindred significations admitting of a plural, it is often said that they borrow plurals from some of their derivatives. Thus:—

<i>Bestreben</i> , effort,	<i>Bestrebungen</i> , efforts.
<i>Betrug</i> , deceit,	<i>Betrügereien</i> , frauds, acts of deceit,
<i>Bund</i> , league,	<i>Bündnisse</i> , leagues.
<i>Dank</i> , thanks,	<i>Dankfagungen</i> , expressions of gratitude.
<i>Erbe</i> , inheritance,	<i>Erbschaften</i> , inheritances.
<i>Glück</i> , luck,	<i>Glücksfälle</i> , pieces of good fortune.
<i>Gunst</i> , favour,	<i>Gunstbezeugungen</i> , favours.
<i>Kummer</i> , trouble,	<i>Kümmernisse</i> , troubles.
<i>Lob</i> , praise,	<i>Lobsprüche</i> , <i>Lobeshhebungen</i> , panegyrics.
<i>Rath</i> , counsel,	<i>Rathschläge</i> , counsels.
<i>Raub</i> , robbery,	<i>Räubereien</i> , robberies.
<i>Segen</i> , blessing,	<i>Segnungen</i> , blessings.
<i>Streit</i> , quarrel,	<i>Streitigkeiten</i> , quarrels.
<i>Tod</i> , death,	<i>Todesfälle</i> , <i>Todesarten</i> , deaths.
<i>Verdruß</i> , vexation,	<i>Verdrießlichkeiten</i> , vexations.
<i>Zank</i> , quarrel,	<i>Zänkereien</i> , quarrels.

25. COMPOUNDS OF *Mann* take *Leute* in the plural; as, *Kaufmann*, merchant, *Kaufleute*; *Amtmann*, bailiff, *Amtleute*. But we also find *Biedermänner*, honest men; *Ehrenmänner*, men of honour; *Staatsmänner*, statesmen, &c. Notice *Ehemänner*, husbands; *Ehleute*, married people.

## G E N D E R.

26. GENDER AND SEX.—As in other languages, so in German, there are a certain number of pairs of male and female names; as, Vater, father, Mutter, mother; Vetter male cousin, Base, female cousin; Gänserich, gander, Gans, goose (where the masculine is formed from the feminine). Especially to be noticed are pairs where the feminine is formed by adding in; as, König, king; Königin, queen. For the classes of nouns to which the termination in may be added, see below.

*Obs.*-1.—There are a few groups consisting of a generic name of an animal, which is neuter, while masculine and feminine forms exist for the two sexes:—

das Pferd, } horse,	der Hengst, stallion,	die Stute, mare.
das Ross, }		
das Rind, beast,	der Stier, bull, }	die Kuh, cow.
	der Ochse, ox, }	
das Schwein, pig,	der Eber, boar,	die Sau, sow.
das Huhn, fowl,	der Hahn, cock,	die Henne, hen.
das Schaf, sheep,	der Widder, ram,	das Mutter(schaf), } ewe.
		die Schafmutter, }

*Obs.* 2.—The diminutives, Fräulein, young lady; Mädchen, girl, are neuter; so also is Weib, wife, woman.

27. NAMES OF ANIMALS.—In the case of most animals there exists only a generic name, without distinction of sex. Speaking generally, the names of the larger quadrupeds and of birds of prey are masculine; those of singing birds, insects, and a few small quadrupeds are feminine; as, der Luchs, lynx; der Habicht, hawk; der Strauß, ostrich; die Wespe, wasp; die Nachtigall, nightingale; die Maus, mouse. When both a masculine and a feminine form exist, the masculine is usually the primitive, and is used as the generic form; as, der Löwe (fem. Löwin), der Bär (fem. Bäarin). In a few cases—as, die Gans, goose (masc. der Gänserich); die Ente, duck (masc. der Entenrich); die Katze, cat (masc. der Kater)—the feminine is the simpler and therefore the generic form.

*Obs.* 1.—A few borrowed names, as, Kameel, Dromedar, Krokodil, Zebra, Lama, Känguruß, are neuter.

*Obs.* 2.—Names of the young of animals are neuter; das Kalb, calf; das Lamm, lamb; das Füllen, foal; das Kind, child.

28. TREES, PLANTS, &c.—Most names of trees, except those compounded with Baum and Dorn, are feminine; as, die Eiche, oak; die Pappel, poplar; die Linde, lime; so are a great many names of plants. Notice, however, der Ahorn, maple; der Lorbeer, laurel; der Efeu, ivy; also, der Weizen, wheat; der Roggen, rye; der Hafer, oats; der Mais, maize; der Reis, rice.

29. COLLECTIVE NOUNS.—Collective nouns beginning with *ge* are neuter; as, *das Gebirge*, chain of mountains; *das Gelächter*, laughter; *das Gerübe*, gossip.

*Obs.*—Practically all nouns beginning with *ge* as a prefix are neuter, except ten masculines:—

der Gebrauch, use,	der Geruch, smell,
der Gedanke, thought,	der Gesang, song,
der Gehalt, contents,*	der Geschmack, taste,
der Gehorsam, obedience,	der Gestank, stink,
der Genuß, enjoyment,	der Gewinn, gain.

and seven feminines:—

die Gebühr, due,	die Gemeinde, community,
die Geburt, birth,	die Geschichte, history,
die Geduld, patience,	die Gewähr, guarantee.
die Gefahr, danger,	

30. INFINITIVES, &c.—To the neuter gender belong (1) all infinitives used as nouns; as, *das Leben*, life; *das Wissen*, knowledge;—(2) undeclined adjectives used as nouns; as, *das Berliner Blau*, Prussian blue;—(3) names of letters, musical notes, &c.; as, *das A*.

Lastly, any word may be neuter when we wish to speak of it as a word only; as, *das Ja*, the word *yes*; *ein großes Aber* a great *but*; *das vertrauliche Du*, the confidential *thou*. But notice *der Ich*, the *ego*, as a philosophical term.

31. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.—Names of countries, provinces, and towns are neuter, with a few exceptions; viz.: (1) those ending in *gau*, masculine; as, *der Rheingau*; (2) those ending in *a*, *ei*, *au* (not *gau*), feminine; as, *die Herzegovina*; *die Dobrudscha*; *die Türkei*, Turkey; *die Moldau*, Moldavia; (3) *die Schweiz*, Switzerland; *die Lausitz*, Lusatia; *die Krim*, the Crimea; *die Pfalz*, the Palatinate; *der Peloponnes*, Peloponnesus.

32. ROOTS OF VERBS.—The roots of verbs, especially strong verbs, form nouns which are, with a very few exceptions, masculine and of the strong declension; as, *der Lauf*, course (*laufen*); *der Haß*, hatred (*hassen*); *der Trug*, deceit (*trügen*). The same rule applies, of course, to their compounds; as, *der Vorhang*, curtain; *der Versuch*, attempt; *der Entschluß*, resolution.

\* But *das Gehalt*, salary.

Obs.—The most obvious exceptions are :—das Lob, praise ; das Leid, suffering ; das Spiel, play ; das Schloß, lock, castle (but der Schluß, conclusion) ; die Wehr, defence ; die Willfür, caprice ; die Schen, terror (but der Abscheu, horror).

33. ROOTS OF VERBS WITH **t** ADDED.—A considerable number of abstract nouns are formed by adding **t**\* to the roots of verbs, changing at the same time **b**, **g** into **f**, **ch** ; **r**, **t**, **d** into **s**, and inserting **s** after a liquid. Such nouns are feminine ; as, die Schrift, writing (schreiben) ; die Schlacht, battle (schlagen) ; die Last, burden (laden) ; die Brunst, burning (brennen) ; die Kunst, art (können).

Obs. 1.—Except der Frost, frost, (frieren, fror) ; der Verlust, loss (verlieren, verlor) ; der Dienst, service (dienen) ; das Gift, poison (geben—but die Mitgift dowry).

Obs. 2.—Among other nouns ending in **t** or the equivalent **th**, notice : die Heimath, home ; die Heirath, marriage ; der Monat, month ; der Ernst, earnestness ; der Herbst, harvest, autumn.

34. MASCULINE ENDINGS.—Nouns ending in **ich**, **ig**, **ling** are masculine, as Lattich, lattice, Käfig, cage, Sperling, sparrow. So also are those ending in **ch** after a consonant, except die Milch, milk, das Fleisch, flesh, meat.

35. FEMININE ENDINGS.—Nouns ending in **ei**, **ie** (mostly borrowed), **ung**, **heit**, **feit**, **schaft** are feminine ; as, die Arznei, medicine ; die Philosophie, philosophy ; die Freundschaft, friendship ; die Sicherheit, safety ; die Heiterkeit, cheerfulness ; die Meinung, opinion.

The sole exceptions are patronymics, like der Nibelung, der Hornung (a name for February) and das Petschaft, † seal.

36. NEUTER ENDINGS.—Nouns ending in **thum**, **niß**, **sal**, **sel** are mostly neuter ; as, das Bisthum, bishopric ; das Ereigniß, occurrence ; das Schœusal, monster ; das Räthsel, riddle. Diminutives in **chen** and **lein** are all neuter. So are nouns in **ier** not denoting persons ; as, das Revier, police district.

Except (1) in **thum** : der Irrthum, error ; der Reichthum, wealth ; (2) in **niß** : die Beträngniß, distress ; die Befugniß, right ; die Bekümmerniß, anxiety ; die Besorgniß, anxiety ; die Bewandniß, condition, state ; die Empfängniß,

\* The remains of a longer suffix.

† A Slavonic word (Russian, petchat) altered to look like German, much as we turn *écrevisse* into *crayfish*.

conception; die Erlaubniß, permission; die Fäulniß, rottenness; die Finsterniß, darkness; die Kenntniß, knowledge; die Trockenheit, drought; die Verbammniß, condemnation; die Verwerbniß, depravity; die Wildniß, wilderness; all of which, except the last, it may be noticed, are abstract nouns. (3) in sel, fal: der Stöpsel, stopper of a bottle; der Wechsel, change; die Drangsal, oppression; die Mühsal, trouble; die Trübsal, affliction; also, die Amsel, ousel; die Achsel, shoulder; die Deichsel, pole of carriage, in which sel is not a suffix. (4) die Manier, manner.

37. NOUNS ENDING IN **e**.—Three classes of nouns end in **e**:—(1) names of persons and animals. These are mostly masculine, excepting the names of insects, small birds, &c., mentioned in § 27, and, of course, obviously feminine nouns; as, die Nichte, niece. Notice die Waise, orphan. (2) Abstract nouns, and some other nouns connected with verbs and denoting things. These are feminine; as, die Gabe, gift; die Tiefe, depth. (3) Collective nouns, which are neuter; as, das Gemälde, picture\*; das Gebirge, range of mountains. Notice der Käse, cheese; das Ende, end; das Auge, eye; das Erbe, inheritance.

38. TERMINATIONS **el, en, er**.—Most nouns ending in **el, en, er** are masculine, except:—

(1) Feminines in **el**. The chief are:—

Dregel, Kanzel, Trommel, Bibel,  
 Geißel (scourge), Kartoffel, Zwiebel,  
 Schaufel, Stoppel, Sichel, Fibel,  
 Schüssel, Messel, Dattel, Distel,  
 Wurzel, Wachtel, Droffel, Mistel,  
 Pappel, Fichel, Fessel, Fabel,  
 Natel, Kugel, Regal, Gabel,  
 Schachtel, Fiedel, Insel, Staffel,  
 Achsel, Fackel, Klingel, Spindel, Tafel. †

\* *i.e.*, a collection of details painted, a composition.

† The following is a tolerably complete list:—

Achsel, shoulder,	Dattel, date,	Fibel, primer,
Amsel, lamp,	Deichsel, carriage-pole.	Fuchtel, broad-sword,
Amsel, ousel,	Distel, thistle,	Gabel, fork,
Angel, fish-hook,	Droffel, thrush,	Geißel, scourge,
Affel, woodlouse,	Fichel, acorn,	Gurgel, throat,
Bibel, Bible,	Fabel, fable,	Hasel, hazel,
Brezel, cake in figure of 8,	Fackel, torch,	Heckel, heckle,
[handcuff,	Fessel, fetter,	Hummel, humble-bee,
Gymbel, cymbal,	Fiedel, fiddle.	Insel, island,



Obs.—The gender of several of these nouns is obvious from their Latin origin, viz. : Fabel from *fabula*, Insel from *insula*, Regel from *regula*, Tafel from *tabula*, Pappel from *pōpulus*. Bibel and Orgel are from the neuter plurals *biblia*, *organa*. Semmel comes from *simila*, Stoppel from *stipula* (in late Latin *stupula*), Sichel from *secula*.

(2) Neuters in el.—The chief are:—Mittel, means; Segel, sail; Siegel, seal.\*

(3) Feminines in er. The chief are:—

Ater, Auster, Butter, Blatter,  
Feder, Zither, Feier, Ratter,  
Folter, Kammer, Nummer, Dauer,  
Schulter, Wimper, Faßer, Lauer,  
Leiter (ladder), Eister, Mauer,  
Kelter, Kiefer, Feier, Trauer,

and, of course, Mutter, Tochter, Schwester. †

Kachel, earthen-pot,	Netzel, nettle,	Sichel, sickle,
Kartoffel, potato,	Nudel, vermicelli,	Spindel, spindle,
Klingel, bell,	Pappel, poplar,	Staffel, rung (of ladder),
Kugel, ball,	Ranunfel, ranunculus,	Stoppel, stubble,
Kuppel, cupola,	Raspel, rasp,	Tafel, table, board,
Kurbel, crank,	Rassel, rattle,	Trommel, drum,
Mandel, almond,	Schachtel, box,	Wofabel, word, vocable,
Mangel, mangle,	Schaufel, shovel,	Wachtel, quail,
Mispel, medlar,	Schaukel, swing,	Waffel, wafer-bread,
Mistel, mistletoe,	Schindel, shingle,	Windel, swathing-cloth,
Muschel, cockle, mussel,	Schüssel, dish,	Wurzel, root,
Nadel, needle, pin,	Semmel, roll,	Zwiebel, onion.

\* Also Mantel, 15; Rößel, pint; Rutel, herd; Tafel, tackle.

† The following is a pretty complete list:—

Aber, vein,	Halfter, halter,	Natter, adder,
Ammer, yellow-hammer,	Kammer, chamber,	Nummer, number,
Auster, oyster,	Kelter, wine-press,	Otter, adder,
Blatter, blister,	Kiefer, pine,	Rüster, elm,
Butter, butter,	Klammer, clamp,	Scheuer, barn,
Dauer, duration,	Klapper, rattle,	Schleuder, sling,
Eister, magpie,	Lauer, ambush,	Schulter, shoulder,
Faßer, fibre,	Leber, liver,	Steuer, tax,
Feber, pen,	Leier, lyre,	Schwester, sister,
Flitter, tinsel,	Leiter, ladder,	Tochter, daughter,
Folter, rack, torture,	Mäßer, (in pl.) measles,	Wimper, eye-lash,
Feier, festival,	Mutter, mother,	Zither, guitar.

(4) Neuters in er. The chief are:—

Alter, Lager, Futter, Laster,  
Wunder, Zimmer, Fieber, Pflaster,  
Kupfer, Silber, Messer, Kloster,  
Wetter, Ufer, Ruder, Muster,  
Leber, Polster, Abenteuer,  
Pulver, Fenster, Wasser, Feuer.\*

For neuters ending in ier, see § 36.

(5) Neuters ending in en:—Almosen, alms; Becken, basin; Eisen, iron; Füllen, foal; Kissen, cushion; Laken, sheet (also masc.); Lehen, fief; Wappen, coat of arms; Zeichen, token.

#### 40. NOUNS WITH DOUBLE GENDER.

der Band (pl. Bände), volume,	das Band (pl. Bänder), ribbon; (pl. Bände), fetters.
der Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant, boor,	das Bauer (pl. Bauer), cage.
der Buckel (pl. Buckel), hump,	die Buckel (pl. Buckeln), buckle.
der Erbe (pl. Erben), heir,	das Erbe (no pl.), inheritance.
der Geißel (pl. Geißel), hostage,	die Geißel (pl. Geißeln), scourge.
der Gehalt (pl. Gehalte), salary,	das Gehalt, contents.
der Haft (pl. Hafte), clasp, holdfast,	die Haft (no pl.), custody, das Haft (pl. Hafte), ephemera.
der Harz, Harz mountain,	das Harz, resin, turpentine.
der Heide (pl. Heiden), heathen,	die Heide (pl. Heiden), heath.
der Hut (pl. Hüte), hat,	die Hut, guard, watchfulness.†
der Kiefer (pl. Kiefer), jaw-bone,	die Kiefer (pl. Kiefern), pine.

\* The following is a more complete list:—

Abenteuer, adventure,	Klafter, fathom,	Pflaster, plaster, pavement,
Alter, age,	Kloster, convent,	Polster, bolster,
Bauer, cage,	Kupfer, copper,	Pulver, powder,
Eiter, pus, matter,	Lager, couch, camp,	Ruder, oar,
Enter, udder,	Laster, vice, sin,	Silber, silver,
Fenster, window,	Leber, leather,	Ufer, shore,
Feuer, fire,	Luber, carrion,	Wasser, water,
Fieber, fever,	Masser, (measure),	Wetter, weather,
Fuder, load, barrel of wine,	Messer, knife,	Wunder, miracle,
Futter, fodder, lining,	Nieder, boddice,	Zimmer, room.
Gitter, lattice, railings,	Muster, pattern, sample,	

† Only in the expression auf ter Hut sein, to be on one's guard.

der Koller, cholera,	das Koller (pl. Koller), collar.
der Kunde (pl. Kunden), customer,	die Kunde (pl. Kunden), tidings.
der Leiter (pl. Leitern), leader,	die Leiter, (pl. Leitern), ladder.
der Mangel (pl. Mängel), want,	die Mangel (pl. Mängeln), mangle
die Marf (pl. Marfen), march,	das Marf (no pl.), marrow.
frontier-land,	
der Mast (pl. Masten), ship's	die Mast (no pl.), mast for hogs.
mast,	
der Messer (pl. Messer), measurer,	das Messer, (pl. Messer), knife.
der Mensch (pl. Menschen),	das Mensch (pl. Menschen), wench
human being, man ( <i>homo</i> ),	
der Ohm (pl. Ohme), uncle,	die Ohm (pl. Ohmen), 40 gallons
der Reis (no pl.), rice,	das Reis (pl. Reiser), twig.
der Schenk (pl. Schenken), butler,	die Schenke (pl. Schenken), wine-
	shop.
der Schild (pl. Schilde), shield,	das Schild (pl. Schilder), sign-
	board.
der See (pl. Seen), lake,	die See (no pl.), ocean.
die Steuer (pl. Steuern), tax,	das Steuer (pl. Steuer), helm.
der Stift (pl. Stifte), peg,	das Stift (pl. Stifter or Stifte),
	ecclesiastical foundation.
der Thor (pl. Thoren), fool,	das Thor (pl. Thore), gate.
der Verdienst, earnings,	das Verdienst, merit.
der Vorwand (pl. =wände), pre-	die Vorwand (pl. =wände), fore-
text,	wall, screen.
der Weiße (pl. Weißen), kite,	die Weiße, consecration.

41. COMPOUND NOUNS.—The general rule in all languages is that compound nouns take the gender of the last part of the compound. There are, however, in German one or two exceptions to this rule.

(1) *Mitgift*, dowry, is feminine, while *Gift*, which is only used in the meaning of poison, is neuter; *Abſcheu*, horror, is masculine, while *Scheu*, terror, is feminine; *Antwort*, answer, is feminine, while *Wort*, word, is neuter.

(2) Some of the compounds of *Muth* are feminine, viz., *Anmuth*, grace; *Demuth*, humility; *Großmuth*, magnanimity; *Langmuth*, long-suffering; *Sanftmuth*, meekness; *Schwerdmuth*, melancholy; *Wehmuth*, distress. Other compounds of *muth*, as, *Uebermuth*, *Hochnuth*, pride; *Kleinmuth*, pusillanimity, are masculine.

### Chapter IV.—Adjectives.

42. **VARIOUS FORMS.**—Adjectives used as epithets, and immediately preceding the nouns to which they belong, are declined to agree with those nouns in gender, number and case. But adjectives separated from nouns are not declined. Thus German stands midway between modern English on the one hand and the classical languages and French on the other. Note the following examples:—

Dieses Kind ist <b>arm</b> ,	this child is poor.
Ein <b>armes</b> Kind,	a poor child.
Das macht die Mutter <b>stolz</b> ,	that makes the mother proud.
Die <b>guten</b> Männer,	the good men.
Die Wünsche <b>guter</b> Männer,	the wishes of good men.

Further, adjectives may be declined in three ways, according as they stand (1) without article or pronoun; (2) after the indefinite article or a pronominal adjective declined like it; (3) after the definite article or a pronominal adjective declined like it. Their inflections are the relics of longer forms. In modern German the general principle is that there should be enough inflection to show the case, and no more.

43. **STRONG DECLENSION.**—Adjectives without article or pronominal adjective preceding are declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N. <b>guter</b> ,	<b>gute</b> ,	<b>gutes</b> ,	<b>gute</b> ,	
G. <b>guten</b> ,	<b>guter</b> ,	<b>guten</b> ,	<b>guter</b> ,	
D. <b>gutem</b> ,	<b>guter</b> ,	<b>gutem</b> ,	<b>guten</b> ,	
A. <b>guten</b> ,	<b>gute</b> ,	<b>gutes</b> ,	<b>gute</b> .	

The genitive masculine and neuter used to be *gutes*, which is retained in some phrases. *Guten* is now the usual form.

Examples with nouns:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.		Masc.
N. <b>guter</b> Wein,	good wine,	<b>zehn kleine</b> Neger,	ten little
G. <b>guten</b> Weines,		<b>zehn kleiner</b> Neger,	[negroes,
D. <b>gutem</b> Weine,		<b>zehn kleinen</b> Negern,	
A. <b>guten</b> Wein,		<b>zehn kleine</b> Neger.	

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Masc.			
N. wenig guter Wein,	} not much good wine,	allerlei gute Weine,	} all sorts of good wines,
G. wenig guten Weines,		allerlei guter Weine,	
D. wenig gutem Weine,		allerlei guten Weinen,	
A. wenig guten Wein,		allerlei gute Weine.	

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	
Fem.		Neut.	
N. etwas süße Milch, some sweet	[milk,	grünes Gras, green grass,	
G. etwas süßer Milch,		grünen Grases,	
D. etwas süßer Milch,		grünem Grase,	
A. etwas süße Milch.		grünes Gras.	

This declension can obviously be used after numerals\* and the indeclinable words *etwas*, *vielerlei*, *allerlei*. Also after *viel*, *wenig*, when undeclined, and after *manch*, *solch*, *welch*, when, as often happens, they are also undeclined.

44. WEAK DECLENSION.—After the definite article, and after the pronominal adjectives *dieser*, *jenet*, *jeder*, *derselbe*, *welcher*:—

Masc.	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.	
N. der kleine,	die kleine,	das kleine,	die kleinen,	
G. des kleinen,	der kleinen,	des kleinen,	der kleinen,	
D. dem kleinen,	der kleinen,	dem kleinen,	den kleinen,	
A. den kleinen,	die kleine,	das kleine,	die kleinen,	

or with nouns:—

Masc.	<i>Singular.</i>		Neut.
N. der dicke Knabe, the fat	dieses neue Buch, this new		[book,
G. des dicken Knaben, [boy,	dieses neuen Buches,		
D. dem dicken Knaben,	diesem neuen Buche,		
A. den dicken Knaben,	dieses neue Buch.		

\* Except the inflected parts of *zwei*, *drei*; we say, for example, *dreiier blinten Mäuse*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Fem.		Fem.
N. diese blinde Maus, this blind		jene blinden Mäuse,
G. dieser blinden Maus, [mouse,		jener blinden Mäuse,
D. dieser blinden Maus,		jenen blinden Mäusen,
A. diese blinde Maus,		jene blinden Mäuse.

45. MIXED DECLENSION.—After the indefinite article, the word *sein*, and possessive adjectives, the adjective follows the strong declension in the nominative singular (and acc. sing. neuter), but the weak declension in all other cases:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N. mein guter,	meine gute,	mein gutes,	meine guten,
G. meines guten,	meiner guten,	meines guten,	meiner guten,
D. meinem guten,	meiner guten,	meinem guten,	meinen guten,
A. meinen guten,	meine gute,	mein gutes,	meine guten.

Examples with nouns:—

<i>Singular.</i>		
Masc.	Fem.	
N. ein schöner Tag, a fine day,	ihre hübsche Tochter, her pretty	
G. eines schönen Tages,	ihrer hübschen Tochter, [daughter	
D. einem schönen Tage,	ihrer hübschen Tochter,	
A. einen schönen Tag.	ihre hübsche Tochter.	

<i>Singular.</i>	Neuter.	<i>Plural.</i>
N. unser altes Pferd, our old	unsere alten Pferde, our old	
G. unseres alten Pferdes, [horse,	unserer alten Pferde, [horses,	
D. unserem alten Pferde,	unseren alten Pferden,	
A. unser altes Pferd.	unsere alten Pferde.	

Lastly, after *einige*, *etliche*, *keine*, *andere*, *viele*, *wenige*, *mehrere*, *einzelne*, *manche*, *solche*, *welche*, the Nom. and Acc. Plural have the strong form; as, *einige gute Männer*, *einiger guten Männer*.

Further details, especially about *manch*, *solch*, &c., are given in the syntax of adjectives.

## 46. NOTES ON SOME ADJECTIVES.—

(1.) When an inflexion is added to adjectives ending in *el, en, er*, like *edel, finster, verborgen, golden*, we have two *e*'s on each side of a liquid. One of them is generally dropped for the sake of euphony. Thus—

*edel* gives *edle, edlen* or *edeln, edler, edles, edlem* ;  
*heiter* ,, *heitre, heitern* or *heitren, heiter, heitres, heitem* or *heitern*.  
*golden* ,, *goldne, goldnen, goldner, goldnes, goldnem*.

(2.) Adjectives ending in *e*, like *träge*, are declined as if the *e* did not exist : *träger, träge, trages, &c.*

(3.) *Hoch* drops the *c* when declined ; making *höher, hohe, höhes, hohen, &c.*

47. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS. — Any adjective may be used as a noun, by prefixing an article or pronominal adjective, writing it with a capital letter, and declining as if the noun *Mann, &c.*, were still present. The commonest are such adjectives as *gelehrt, fremd, deutsch, bedient*, with *Mann* understood. Occasionally feminine adjectives are so used, and very often neuters like *das Schöne*, the beautiful, beauty in the abstract. All such nouns retain their declension as adjectives. Thus—

*Singular.*

*Masc.*

N. ein Bedienter, a servant,	der Bediente, the servant,
G. eines Bedienten,	des Bedienten,
D. einem Bedienten,	dem Bedienten,
A. einen Bedienten.	den Bedienten.

*Plural.*

N. unsere Bedienten,	die Bedienten,
&c.	&c.

*Singular.*

*Fem.*

*Neuter.*

N. eine Fremde, a foreign	das Schöne, the beautiful,
G. einer Fremden, [woman,	des Schönen,
D. einer Fremden,	dem Schönen,
D. eine Fremde.	das Schöne.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

48. ORDINARY FORMATION.—The comparative and superlative are formed, as in English, by adding *er* and *est*, or *ſt*; as, *mild*, *benevolent*, *milder*, *mildeſt* (*der mildeſte*); *reizend*, *charming*, *reizender*, *reizendſt* (*der reizendſte*).

49. MODIFICATION.—Simple adjectives having *a*, *o*, or *u* in the root, modify that root-vowel in the comparative and superlative; as, *kurz*, *kürzer*, *kürzeſt*; *roth*, *röther*, *rötheſt*; *ſtark*, *ſtärker*, *ſtärkeſt*. But the following classes, including practically the great bulk of adjectives in ordinary use, do not modify:—

(1.) Participles; as, *reizend*, *charming*; *reizender*, *reizendſt*.

(2.) Derivative adjectives ending in *el*, *n*, *er*, *bar*, *ig*, *ſam*, *haft*; as, *dunkel*, *dark*, *dunkler*, *dunkelſt*; *albern*, *silly*, *alberner*, *alberneſt*; *tapfer*, *gallant*, *tapferer*, *tapferſt*; *gangbar*, *current*, *gangbarer*, *gangbarſt*; *laſterhaft*, *vicious*, *laſterhafter*, *laſterhafteſt*; *ſparſam*, *frugal*, *ſparſamer*, *ſparſameſt*; *luſtig*, *merry*, *luſtiger*, *luſtigſt*.

(3.) The following common adjectives:—

<i>bunt</i> , <i>ſroh</i> , <i>tohl</i> ,	<i>motley</i> , <i>merry</i> , <i>mad</i> ,
<i>nackt</i> , <i>raſch</i> , <i>voll</i> ,	<i>naked</i> , <i>quick</i> , <i>full</i> ,
<i>roh</i> , <i>hohl</i> , <i>wahr</i> ,	<i>raw</i> , <i>hollow</i> , <i>true</i> ,
<i>brav</i> , <i>ſtolz</i> , <i>klar</i> ,	<i>honest</i> , <i>proud</i> , <i>clear</i> ,
<i>rund</i> , <i>faſch</i> , <i>matt</i> ,	<i>round</i> , <i>false</i> , <i>weary</i> ,
<i>zart</i> , <i>ſanft</i> , <i>ſatt</i> ,	<i>tender</i> , <i>soft</i> , <i>satiated</i> ,
<i>lahm</i> , <i>zähm</i> , <i>platt</i> ,	<i>lame</i> , <i>tame</i> , <i>smooth</i> .

and the following less common ones:—

<i>barſch</i> , <i>faß</i> , <i>blant</i> ,	<i>rough</i> , <i>fallow</i> , <i>clean</i> ,
<i>ſchroff</i> , <i>ſtarr</i> , <i>ſchlant</i> ,	<i>steep</i> , <i>stiff</i> , <i>slim</i> ,
<i>gerate</i> , <i>ſlach</i> ,	<i>straight</i> , <i>flat</i> ,
<i>hold</i> , <i>gemach</i> ,	<i>gentle</i> , <i>essy</i> ,
<i>farg</i> , <i>knapp</i> , <i>kaßl</i> ,	<i>chry</i> , <i>scant</i> , <i>bald</i> ,
<i>laß</i> , <i>loß</i> , <i>faßl</i> ,	<i>weary</i> , <i>loose</i> , <i>fallow</i> ,
<i>morſch</i> , <i>plump</i> , <i>rumpf</i> ,	<i>rotten</i> , <i>clumsy</i> , <i>dull</i> ,
<i>ſacht</i> , <i>ſtumm</i> , <i>ſtumpf</i> ,	<i>soft</i> , <i>dumb</i> , <i>blunt</i> ,
<i>wund</i> , <i>ſtack</i> , <i>ſtraß</i> ,	<i>sore</i> , <i>straight</i> , <i>stiff</i> ,
<i>fabe</i> , <i>ſchlaß</i> .	<i>insipid</i> , <i>slack</i> .

(4.) Adjectives with the vowel *au*; as, *grau*, *faul*.

50. IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.—(Those in brackets are regular):—



groß, great,	(größer),	der größte,
gut, good,	besser,	der beste,
hoch, high,	höher,	(der höchste),
nahe, nigh, near,	(näher),	der nächste,
viel, much,	mehr,	der meiste.

Notice also *minder, less*, with no positive but *wenig*.

There are also a certain number of comparative and superlative adjectives, of which the only positive is an adverb or preposition. Such are :—

(auß),	der äußere,	der äußerste,
(in, innen),	der innere,	der innerste,
(hinten),	der hintere,	der hinterste,
(mitten),	der mittlere,	der mittelste,
(oben),	der obere,	der oberste,
(unten),	der untere,	der unterste,
(vorn),	der vordere,	der vorderste.

51. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.—Comparatives and superlatives are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives. The only point to be remembered is that the final *er* of the comparative is now part of the stem, not an inflexion. Thus we have:—*ein besserer Mann* (not *ein besser Mann*); *ein finstrierer Wald, a darker wood* (not *ein finstrier Wald*, which means *a dark wood*). Superlatives are nearly always preceded by the definite article, occasionally by a pronominal adjective. When the superlative is used as a predicate, either the ordinary form with the definite article (*der, die, daß größte*) or an adverbial form with *am* (*am größten*) is used. See Syntax.

## Chapter V.—Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.

52. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—The German personal pronouns answer exactly to the English, and are declined as follows :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>ich, I,</i>	<i>wir, we,</i>	<i>du, thou,</i>	<i>ihr, ye,</i>
G. <i>meiner (mein),</i>	<i>unser,</i>	<i>deiner (dein),</i>	<i>euer (eurer),</i>
D. <i>mir,</i>	<i>unß,</i>	<i>dir,</i>	<i>euch,</i>
A. <i>mich,</i>	<i>unß.</i>	<i>dich,</i>	<i>euch.</i>

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. er, he,	ſie, she,	eſ, it,	ſie, they,
G. ſeiner (fein),	ihrer,	ſeiner,	ihrer,
D. ihm,	ihr,	ihm,	ihnen,
A. ihn,	ſie,	eſ,	ſie.

*Obs. 1.*—The genitive and dative of the third person neuter given above are not very much used; *deſſen* or *deſſelben* is often ſubſtituted for the Genitive, *dem* or *demſelben* for the Dative. When *it* is the object of a prepoſition, compounds of *da* are uſed; *aſ*, *davon*, *therefrom*, *thereof*, *from it*; *daraus*, *out of it*, &c. (*ſee* § 62).

*Obs. 2.*—The forms *mein*, *dein* for the genitive ſingular are found chiefly in poetry, *aſ* Goethe's *Ich denke dein*, I think of thee, and in phraſes like *Vergeiß mein nicht*, forget me not.

*Obs. 3.*—When compounded with the prepoſitions *willen*, *halben*, *wegen*, the genitives of the perſonal pronouns end in *t*, *aſ* *meinetwegen*, *um unſerwillen*.

53. PRONOUNS OF ADDRESS.—In addreſſing young children, animals, near relations, or intimate friends, *du* is uſed in the ſingular, and *ihr* in the plural; in ordinary intercourse the plural pronoun of the third perſon (*Sie*, *Ihrer*, &c.) for both numbers; it is then written with a capital letter (*ſee* Syntax).

54. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.—The reflexive pronouns are identical with the perſonal pronouns except in the third perſon. *Sich* is uſed as the dative and accuſative of the reflexive pronoun of the third perſon in all genders and in both numbers, *aſ*—

*Sie führte daſ Kind mit ſich*, ſhe took the child with her (ſelf).

*Ich ſchmeichle mir*, I flatter myſelf.

*Er ſchmeichelt ſich*, he flatters himſelf.

*Wir haben unſ gerühmt*, we boated ourſelves.

55. USE OF *ſelbſt*.—In English the words *myſelf*, *himſelf*, *herſelf*, &c., are uſed in two ways (1) they are reflexive pronouns properly ſo called, and ſtand as the objects of verbs or prepoſitions. They are then, of courſe, to be translated as in the above examples. But (2) *himſelf*, *myſelf*, *yourſelves* are often put in appoſition to *he*, *I*, *you*, &c. They muſt then be rendered in German by the indeclinable word *ſelbſt* (leſs frequently *ſelber*):—

Ich habe es selbst gethan, I did it myself, or I myself did it.

Ich selber kann sie retten, I myself can save her.

*Obs.* 1.—Selbst is also used with the oblique cases of the reflexive pronouns, as:—

Er schadet sich selbst, he injures himself.

*Obs.* 2.—Selbst before a noun or pronoun is rendered by *even*.

56. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.—The possessive adjectives corresponding to the personal pronouns are:—

mein, my	.....	corresponding to	.....	ich, I,
dein, thy	.....	„	„	..... du, thou,
sein, his	.....	„	„	..... er, he,
ihr, her.....	.....	„	„	..... sie, she,
sein, its	.....	„	„	..... es, it,
unser, our	.....	„	„	..... wir, we,
euer, your	.....	„	„	..... ihr, ye,
ihr, their	.....	„	„	..... sie, they,
(Ihr, your.....	.....	„	„	..... Sie, you).

57. DECLENSION OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.—

Possessive adjectives are declined exactly like the indefinite article. They produce the same effect on adjectives following them:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>All genders.</i>
N. dein,	dein,	deine,	dein,	deine,
G. deines,	deines,	deiner,	deines,	deiner,
D. deinem,	deinem,	deiner,	deinem,	deinen,
A. deinen.	deinen.	deine.	dein.	deine.
N. unser,	unser,	unsere,	unser,	unsere,
G. unseres,	unseres,	unserer,	unseres,	unserer,
D. unserem,	unserem,	unserer,	unserem,	unseren,
A. unseren.	unseren.	unsere.	unser.	unsere.

*Obs.*—The same contractions take place as in ordinary adjectives. Thus we have eurer, euren, eurem, eures, unser, unsern, &c.

58. CORRESPONDENCE OF PRONOUNS.—As there is more than one pronoun of the second person, it is very important to use corresponding possessives and personals. Thus:—

Du und deine Schwester,  
ihr und eure Schwester,  
Sie und Ihre Schwester.

59. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.— It often happens that a possessive, instead of qualifying a noun, stands for a noun, or at least qualifies a noun understood. For this purpose there are three forms in German, used almost indifferently. They are as follows :—

- (1.) *der meinige, die meinige, daß meinige,*  
*deß meinigen, &c.,*

exactly like *der gute* (the commonest in ordinary German).

- (2.) *der meine, die meine, daß meine,*  
*deß meinen, &c.,*

also exactly like *der gute*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	All genders.
(3.) N.	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meine,</i>	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meine,</i>
G.	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meiner,</i>
D.	<i>meinem,</i>	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meinem,</i>	<i>meinen,</i>
A.	<i>meinen.</i>	<i>meine.</i>	<i>meines.</i>	<i>meine,</i>

exactly like the definite article.

Thus, *his book and mine* is in German :—

*Sein Buch und daß meinige,*  
*Sein Buch und daß meine,*  
*Sein Buch und mein(e)s.*

There are similar forms for all the other persons, as :—

<i>der unsf(e)rige,</i>	<i>der unfere,</i>	<i>unferer,</i>
<i>der eurige,</i>	<i>der eure,</i>	<i>eurer,</i>
&c.	&c.	

*Obs. 1.* — When *mine, thine, &c.*, in English follow the verb *to be* or a similar verb, they are rendered in German by the indeclinable *mein, dein, &c.* ; as, *der Hut ist mein, dein ist die Ehre*. It is very important to ascertain whether *mine* in English implies a substantive, or simply means belonging to me. Thus, in answering the question, “Whose servant broke the window?” *der meinige* must be used, as equivalent to “my servant.” But in answer to “whose hat is that?” either *er ist mein* or *es ist der meinige* is correct.

*Obs. 2.*—The pronouns *der* *meinige*, &c., are written with a small initial letter, when they refer to a preceding noun; with a capital letter when used as independent substantives, i.e., when *die* *Meinigen* means *my friends*; *das* *Seine*, *his due*, *what belongs to him*, referring to no foregoing substantive. Thus we write *mein Bruder* and *der* *einige*, but *Gieb Jedem das* *Seine* (*suum cuique*). Of course, *der* *Ihre*, *der* *Ihrige*, *Ihrer* (meaning *yours*) take a capital for another reason.

*Obs. 3.*—Note the abbreviations *Gw.* for *Gure*; *Se.*, *St.* for *Seine*, *Seiner*, especially before titles like *Majestät*, *Exzellenz*. *Ihro* is sometimes used with *Majestät*, instead of *Ihre*, whether meaning *her*, *their*, or *your*. So *Dero* (see 60, *Obs. 4*). Both *Ihro* and *Dero* are almost obsolete.

60. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *der*.—The simple demonstrative *Pronoun* is thus declined:—

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	<i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>das</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,
G.	<i>dessen</i> ,	<i>deren</i> ,	<i>dessen</i> ,	<i>derer</i> ,
D.	<i>dem</i> ,	<i>der</i> ,	<i>dem</i> ,	<i>denen</i> ,
A.	<i>den</i> .	<i>die</i> .	<i>das</i> .	<i>die</i> ,

differing from the definite article in the Genitive Singular and Genitive and Dative Plural.

*Obs. 1.*—As in other languages, this demonstrative and the so-called definite article are originally the same word. The transition is made more obvious in German by the *emphatic* use of the definite article, rendered in English by *that* rather than *the*.

*Obs. 2.*—The genitive neuter *des*, written more frequently, but (in Becker's opinion) less correctly, *deß*, is used in poetry; as, *deß* (*des*) *rühme* *der* *blut'ge Tyrann* *sich* *nicht*, let not the bloody tyrant boast of this. In compounds the form *des* is preferred; as, *deßwegen* (less commonly *deßwegen*), *deßhalb* (less commonly *deßhalb*), &c.

*Obs. 3.*—Notice the forms *um* *derenthalten*, *deßentwegen*.

*Obs. 4.*—In older German *Dero* (gen. pl.) is often used in addressing distinguished persons, instead of the possessive *Ihr*, which properly means *their*.

61. *Dieser* AND *Jener*.—These words, corresponding to the English *this* and *that*, are declined like the definite article. They are used both as pronouns and as adjectives:—

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	All genders.
N.	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>diese</i> ,	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>diese</i> ,
G.	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>dieses</i> ,	<i>dieser</i> ,
D.	<i>diesem</i> ,	<i>dieser</i> ,	<i>diesem</i> ,	<i>diesen</i> ,
A.	<i>diesen</i> .	<i>diese</i> .	<i>diesen</i> .	<i>diese</i> .

*Obs.*—The neuter *dieses* is often, when used as a pronoun, contracted into *dieß*.

62. NEUTERS *dieses* AND *daß*.—The neuters *dieses* (or *dieß*) and *daß* are frequently used in the nominative and accusative singular, much as we use *this* and *that*. They are often employed with the plural of the verb *to be*; as, *daß sind deine Götter, Israel*, these be thy gods, O Israel. *Jenes* is less frequently so used.

Instead of using the cases of *daß* or *dieses* with prepositions the adverbs *da*, *hier* are used; as, *daraus*, out of it, out of that, therefrom; *hieraus*, out of this; *dazu*, to it, to that, thereto; *hierin*, in it, in this, herein, &c. Before a vowel, *da* becomes *dar*, for the sake of euphony; as, *darauf*, *darin*; it also sometimes does so before *n*, *darnach*, *darneben* being equally correct with *danach*, *daneben*.

*Obs.*—The genitive of *dieser* and *jener* is not generally used without a noun; the dative is constantly so used.

63. OTHER DEMONSTRATIVES. — *Derfelbe*, the same; *derjenige*, that one, are declined as adjectives with the definitive article.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	All genders.
<i>N.</i>	<i>derjenige,</i>	<i>diejenige,</i>	<i>daßjenige,</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>deßjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>deßjenigen.</i>	<i>derjenigen.</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>demjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>demjenigen.</i>	<i>denjenigen.</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>denjenigen.</i>	<i>diejenige.</i>	<i>daßjenige.</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>

*Derfelbe* is used indifferently as adjective or pronoun; *derjenige* almost exclusively as a pronoun, and nearly always as the antecedent to a relative, as *derjenige, welcher, he who*.

*Obs.*—*Derfelbe* is frequently employed as a substitute for the personal pronoun of the third person.

*Solch*, such, is generally classed as a demonstrative. It is used in three ways:—

- (1) undeclined followed by *ein*; as, *solch' ein Mann*.
- (2) declined, preceded by *ein*; as, *ein solcher Mann*.
- (3) declined without article; as, *solches Wasser*.

In the plural, only the third form is possible; as, *solche Männer*.

64. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—There are two relative pronouns in German, just as in English we have *that* and *who* or *which*. The first is *der*, which serves also as demonstrative and as the definite article.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
N.	der,	die,	das,	die,
G.	dessen,	deren,	dessen,	deren,
D.	dem,	der,	dem,	denen,
A.	den.	die.	das.	die,

differing from the demonstrative pronoun in the genitive plural.

The other is *welcher*, declined exactly like *dieser* and *jener*.

	Singular.		Plural.
N.	<i>welcher</i> ,	<i>welche</i> ,	<i>welche</i> ,
G.	( <i>welches</i> ),	( <i>welcher</i> ),	( <i>welcher</i> ),
D.	<i>welchem</i> ,	<i>welcher</i> ,	<i>welchen</i> ,
A.	<i>welchen</i> ,	<i>welche</i> ,	<i>welche</i> .

*Obs. 1.*—The pronoun *wer*, *was* is used as a relative, (1) as equivalent to *he who*, *that which*, exactly like *what* (and occasionally *who*) in English; (2) after an antecedent like *Wes*.

*Obs. 2.*—The English *whose* (relative) is rendered by *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen*, plural *deren*, the genitive of *welcher* not being used except with a noun immediately following. Otherwise the two pronouns *der*, *welcher* are employed almost indifferently. See Syntax.

65. WHOEVER, WHATEVER—are rendered by *wer* and, *was* and. It is usual to separate the two words, generally by a personal pronoun; as, *Wer er auch sei*, whoever he may be. *Whoever* in English is sometimes simply equivalent to *he who*, and is then rendered by *wer* alone.

*Obs.* Sometimes *immer* is added to *auch*: *wer auch immer*.

66. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.—*Wer* is declined as follows:—

Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
N.	<i>wer</i> ,	<i>was</i> ,
G.		
	<i>wessen</i> ,	
D.		
	<i>wem</i> ,	
A.	<i>wen</i> ,	<i>was</i> .

It has no plural, but we may say:—*Wer seid Ihr*, &c.

*Obs. 1.*—The genitive *wes* (*wesſ*) is found in older writers, and in expressions like *wesſ Geiſtes Kind iſt er?* and in the compounds *weshalb*, *weswegen*.

*Obs. 2.*—Instead of using the cases of *waß* with a preposition governing the dative or accusative, the compounds *worvon*, *woran*, &c., are employed, *r* being inserted before a vowel, as in § 62.

67. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES.—*Welch*, declined like *dieſer*, *jener*, &c., is used as an interrogative adjective: *welcher Mann?* *welche Frau?* &c.; and also occasionally as a pronoun: *welcher von dieſen?* &c.

*Waß für ein*, means *what sort of*. It is important to remember that the noun it precedes is *not governed by für*. Thus we say: *waß für ein Mann?* what sort of a man? *waß für Männer?* what sort of men? *waß für Eiuer?* what sort of one?

68. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.—It is convenient to group together under this heading the words meaning *some*, *any*, &c. They do not, however, form as marked a class as personal or relative pronouns.

69. **Ein** AND **Kein**.—*Ein*, *one*, and *kein*, *not any*, *not one*, *none*, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. As pronouns they are declined like the definite article, as adjectives like the indefinite. When they stand without a noun depending on them they are written with a capital letter.

## PRONOUN.

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	Keiner,	Keine,	Keineß,	Keine,
G.	Keineß,	Keiner,	Keineß,	Keiner,
D.	Keinem,	Keiner,	Keinem,	Keinen,
A.	Keinen.	Keine.	Keineß.	Keine.

The adjective is exactly similar, except that it is *kein* in the nominative masculine and neuter, and the accusative neuter; for example, *kein Freund*, not a friend, no friend; but *keiner von meinen Freunden*, *eineß von dieſen Büchern*.

70. **Man**, ONE, PEOPLE. This pronoun corresponds to the French *on*. It is used in the nominative singular only; as, *man ſagt*, one says, they say, people say. In other



cases, and occasionally even in the nominative, *Ein*er is used in exactly the same sense.

71. **Etwas, Nichts, SOMETHING, NOTHING.**—These two indeclinable words are written with capitals when they stand alone. But when they precede an adjective—as, *etwas Gutes*, something good, *das führt zu nichts Gutem*, that leads to nothing good, *etwas, nichts*, are written with small letters, and the adjectives following them with capitals. *Etwas* (with small initial letter) is often used with nouns; as, *etwas Wein*, some wine. *Was* is frequently used colloquially for *etwas*.

72. **Jemand, Niemand, SOME ONE, NO ONE,** take *es* in the Genitive, *en* in the Dative and Accusative; they often, however, remain uninflected in the last two cases. It should be noticed that the final *d* has no meaning, but is simply phonetic.\* The words are really *je-man*, ever a man; *nie-man*, never a man. *Wer*, is occasionally used as equivalent to *Jemand*.

73. **SOME, ANY.**—Besides *Jemand*, *some one*, *etwas*, *something*, there are in German several adjectives meaning *some*, viz., *einige*, meaning *some but not many, a few*; *etliche*, *some out of a large number*; *welche*, *some*. *Welche*, in this meaning, is only used without a noun; *etwelche* is obsolete. *Mehrere* means *several*.

*Any* in a negative sentence is combined with the negative; as, *keine, not any*; *Niemand, not any one*; *Nichts, not anything*. When *any* means *any you please* (Latin *quilibet*), *Jeder, Jedermann, &c.*, are used. See also § 74.

*Irgend Einer, irgend Jemand* means *some one or other*.

74. **DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.** *Jeder, every, any, each*, is declined like *dieser*, and used either with or without a noun, but naturally in the singular only. Sometimes we find *ein jeder*. *Jedlicher, jedweder* have the same meaning as *jeder*. *Jedermann, everyone, anyone* takes *s* in the Genitive; *everything, anything* is generally translated by *Alles*, which, of course, cannot be classed as a distributive.

\* Just as *rim, Rant*, are really the same word.

## Chapter VI.—Numerals.

75. LIST OF NUMERALS.—The numerals are :—

<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
1 ein (eins)	der, die, das erste
2 zwei	der zweite
3 drei	der dritte
4 vier	der vierte
5 fünf	der fünfte
6 sechs	der sechste
7 sieben	der siebente
8 acht	der achte
9 neun	der neunte
10 zehn	der zehnte
11 elf (elf)	der elfte (elfte)
12 zwölf	der zwölfte
13 dreizehn	der dreizehnte
14 vierzehn	der vierzehnte
15 fünfzehn	der fünfzehnte
16 sechzehn	der sechzehnte
17 siebenzehn	der siebenzehnte
18 achtzehn	der achtzehnte
19 neunzehn	der neunzehnte
20 zwanzig	der zwanzigste
21 ein und zwanzig	der ein und zwanzigste
22 zwei und zwanzig	der zwei und zwanzigste
23 drei und zwanzig	der drei und zwanzigste
24 vier und zwanzig	der vier und zwanzigste
25 fünf und zwanzig	der fünf und zwanzigste
30 dreißig	der dreißigste
40 vierzig	der vierzigste
50 fünfzig	der fünfzigste
60 sechzig	der sechzigste
70 siebenzig (siebzig)	der siebenzigste (siebzigste)
80 achtzig	der achtzigste
90 neunzig	der neunzigste
100 hundert (einhundert)	der hundertste
101 hundert und eins	der hundert und erste
200 zweihundert	der zweihundertste
1000 tausend (eintausend)	der tausendste
2000 zweitausend.	der zweitausendste.

Long numbers are arranged as in English, except that the units are put before the tens wherever they occur; as, 1878, eintaufend achthundert (or more usually achtzehnhundert) acht und siebenzig; 275,343, zweihundert fünf und siebenzig tausend, drei hundert drei und vierzig.

76. DECLENSION OF CARDINAL NUMERALS.—The general rule is that cardinal numerals are indeclinable; but—

(1.) Ein is declined in the meaning *one*, just as when used as the indefinite article. A distinction is made by printing the adjective Ein, *one*, with a capital, and sometimes in spaced letters, as opposed to ein, *a*. When *one* stands alone, einß is used: as, eß hat einß geschlagen, it has struck one; einmal einß ist einß, one times one is one\*.

(2.) Zwei, drei have genitive and dative zweier, zweien; dreier, dreien; these forms, however, are only used when absolutely necessary to distinguish the case.

(3.) The earlier numerals (up to 12) take an inflection *e* (*en* in dative) in a few familiar phrases; as, alle Viere von sich strecken, to go at full gallop; auf allen Vieren kriechen, to creep on all-fours; mit Sechsen fahren, to drive six-in-hand; alle Neune werfen, to knock down all the ninepins.

(4.) Zwanzige, hundertc, taußente are used just as we use scores, hundreds, thousands.

(5.) Notice, in den Dreißigen, Vierzigen stehen, to be between 30 and 40, 40 and 50; er schlachte der Opfer zwei (Schiller), let him slay two victims; wir kamen zu Sechsen or zu sechs, six of us came, which may be equally well expressed, wir kamen unser sechs.

(6.) The cardinal numerals are generally feminine when standing alone (Zahl or Nummer understood). Die Eins, the ace; die Herzseven, the seven of hearts; die heil'gen Zahlen liegen in der Zwölfe, the sacred numbers are contained in 12.

77. FORMS IN *er*.—Indeclinable derivatives from the numerals ending in *er* are much used, both as nouns and as adjectives; as, zwanziger, of or belonging to 20. Thus, sieben und vierziger Wein, '47 wine, wine grown in 1847; † die Einer, Zehner, Hunderter, units, tens, hundreds, in numeration; ein Vierziger, a man of 40, or one of a body of 40 members, like the French Academy; ein Dreier, a 3-pfennig piece; ein

\* Das Einmaleins means the multiplication-table, *e.g.*, in "Faust," das ist der Heren Einmaleins.

† Also ein Schoppen Zehner, a pint of wine at 10 kreuzers, &c.

Zwanziger, a 20-kreuzer piece. One of the most convenient uses of this form is to denote the decades of a century: in den zwanziger Jahren des neunzehnten Jahrhunderts, between 1820 and 1830.

78. USE OF **Beide**.—*Beide*, meaning *both*, or *the two*, is used in the plural either alone or with the definite article, and is declined like an ordinary adjective: *beide*, or *die beiden*, *beider* or *der beiden*, &c. It is also used like a substantive in the neuter singular without article, and is then written with a capital: *Beides hat Recht*, both (speakers) are right; in *Beidem ist er wohl erfahren*, he is experienced in both (operations).

79. FRACTIONS.—The names of fractions are formed by adding *tel*, an abbreviation of *Theil*, to the cardinal numerals; as, *Viertel*, *Fünftel*. A third is *Drittel*. Half is either the substantive *die Hälfte*, or the adjective *halb*: *ein halber Dollar*, half a dollar; in *sechs und einem halben Jahre*, in six years and a half.

There is a convenient form for  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , &c., viz., *anderthalb* (literally, second half), one and a half; *dritthalb* (literally, third half), two and a half; *vierthalb*, three and a half, and so on. These words are indeclinable.

80. TIME OF DAY, DAYS OF MONTH.—The German reckoning of the time of day differs from the English in always looking forward to the next hour. Thus:—

neun Uhr,	9 o'clock.
ein Viertel auf zehn,	a quarter past 9 (literally a quarter towards 10).
zwanzig Minuten auf zehn,	20 past 9.
halb zehn,	half-past 9.
drei Viertel auf zehn,	a quarter to 10.

It is, however, not unusual, instead of *ein Viertel auf zehn*, to say *ein Viertel nach* (or *über*) *neun*. Of course, too, the railway form *neun Uhr zwanzig*, &c., is common enough.

In naming the days of the month, *of* is not inserted as in English: *der achte Juni*, *der einundzwanzigste December* (Tag understood). In giving the date, the accusative without preposition or the dative with *an* is generally used; as, *den ersten* or *am ersten Januar*.

81. MISCELLANEOUS NUMERAL FORMS.—German is richer than English in derivatives of the numerals. Thus :—

(1.) *Einerlei, zweierlei, dreierlei, viererlei, zwanzigerlei*, also, *beiderlei, vielerlei*, of 1, 2, 3, 4, 20, both, many kinds; *er* is here a genitive termination. *Einerlei, &c.*, are indeclinable.

(2.) *Einfach, zweifach, dreifach, &c.*, and *einfältig, zweifältig, dreifältig, &c.* (declined like ordinary adjectives); single, double or twofold, triple or threefold. Naturally *einfach, einfältig* have, as in English, derived meanings.\* Notice without Umlaut: *die Dreifaltigkeit*, the Trinity; *mannigfaltig*, manifold.

(3.) *Erstens, zweitens, drittens, zwanzigstens*, firstly or in the first place, secondly or in the second place, &c.

(4.) The place of distributives (two a-piece, &c.) is supplied by the use of *je* or *Jeder*: *je Einer erhielt einen Thaler*, or *ſie erhielten je einen Thaler*, they received a dollar apiece. Also, *ſie gingen je zwei und zwei*, they walked two and two.

(5.) *Einmal, zweimal, dreimal, &c.*, once, twice, thrice, &c.; *ein für allemal*, once for all. Notice in this connection the difference between *Mal* and *Zeit*, both rendered by *time* in English. *Mal* is used only in enumerations, four times, seven times, &c., *das erste Mal*, the first time, *verschiedene Male*, several times.

## Chapter VII.—Verbs.—Introductory, and Auxiliaries.

82. MOODS.—There are in German, as in English, five moods—the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Conditional, and Infinitive. A verb has also two Participles, a Present (or Imperfect) Participle (speaking), and a Perfect Participle (spoken).

83. TENSES.—German verbs have only two tenses formed by inflection—the Present and the Past. The remaining tenses

\* *einfach*, simple, frugal, unadorned; *einfältig*, simple, in the sense of stupid; its better meaning is obsolete.

are formed, as in English, by the use of Auxiliaries. The following are the Indicative tenses of *lieben*, to love:—

Present (Present Imperfect)...	ich liebe, I love, I am loving,
Past (Past Imperfect or Aorist)*	ich liebte, I loved, I was loving,
Perfect (Present Perfect or	ich habe geliebt, I have loved,
[Aorist]	[I loved,
Pluperfect (Past Perfect) ...	ich hatte geliebt, I had loved,
Future Imperfect .....	ich werde lieben, I shall love,
Future Perfect .....	ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have
	[loved.

The tenses of the Subjunctive mood correspond exactly to those of the Indicative. The Imperative has only one tense; the Infinitive a simple (Present Imperfect) and a compound (Perfect) tense.

84. **CONDITIONAL MOOD.**—The Conditional mood, which is used, not to denote a condition, but the result that would happen, if the condition were fulfilled, has a present and a past tense:—

Present Conditional .....	ich würde lieben, I should love,
Past Conditional .....	ich würde geliebt haben, I should
	[have loved.

The Past (or Imperfect) and Pluperfect of the Subjunctive Mood are often used instead of the Present and Past Conditional.

85. **USE OF AUXILIARIES.**—There are three auxiliaries employed to form the ordinary tenses of a German verb:—*haben*, to have; *sein*, to be; and *werden*, to become. *Haben* is used to form the perfect compound tenses of the active voice of most verbs, but *sein* takes its place in the case of a group of verbs denoting motion or change of state, like *gehen*, to go. *Werden*, to become, forms the future tenses and the conditional of all voices, and is used in all tenses of the passive voice.

It should be added that there are several verbs in German, called Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, and answering to the English *may*, *must*, *should*, &c., which play a very similar part to the three verbs above mentioned.

---

\* For the exact force of the Tenses, see Syntax. The tense *ich liebte*, being rather an Aorist than a Past Imperfect, and the tense *ich hatte geliebt* being both Aorist and Past Perfect, it is better not to insist on the logical classification of Tenses.

86. **STRONG AND WEAK CONJUGATIONS.**— These conjugations differ in the way of forming the Past tense and the Perfect Participle from the stem of the Infinitive. In the strong conjugation, the Past tense is formed from the stem by strengthening the root-vowel, the Perfect Participle by the prefix *ge* and the suffix *en*, often with a change of vowel. Most of the older and common verbs belong in German, as in English, to the strong conjugation, as—

schwimmen,	schwamm,	geschwommen,
swim,	swam,	swum.

Besides these characteristic changes, verbs of this class often modify or otherwise change the root-vowel in forming the 2nd or 3rd persons singular of the Present tense.

The weak conjugation, which includes the great majority of verbs in the language, but not the oldest or most common, forms the Past tense by adding the suffix *te* to the root, and the Past Participle by the suffix *t* and the prefix *ge*.

## 87. CONJUGATION OF *haben*.

### *Haben*—TO HAVE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present Tense.	Ich habe, I have Du hast, thou hast Er hat, he has Wir haben, we have Ihr habt, ye have Sie haben, they have.	[Ich habe, I have]* Du habest, thou have Er habe, he have [Wir haben, we have] Ihr habet, ye have [Sie haben, they have.]
Past Tense.	Ich hatte, I had Du hattest Er hatte Wir hatten Ihr hättet Sie hätten.	Ich hätte, I had Du hättest Er hätte Wir hätten Ihr hättet Sie hätten.

\* The persons of the Subjunctive enclosed in brackets, being identical with the corresponding persons of the Indicative, are not used, and need not be learnt.

*Imperative.*

Habe! have thou!

Habet! have ye!

The compound tenses are formed exactly like those of *lieben*, to be conjugated in full afterwards.

88. CONJUGATION OF *sein*.**Sein**—TO BE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present Tense.	Ich bin, I am Du bist, thou art Er ist, he is Wir sind, we are Ihr seid, ye are Sie sind, they are.	Ich sei, I be Du seiest, thou be Er sei, he be Wir seien, we be Ihr seiet, ye be Sie seien, they be.
Past Tense.	Ich war, I was Du warst, thou wert Er war, he was Wir waren, we were Ihr waret, ye were Sie waren, they were.	Ich wäre, I were Du wärest, thou were Er wäre, he were Wir wären, we were Ihr wäret, ye were Sie wären, they were.

*Imperative.*

Sei! be thou!

Sei er! let him be!

Seid! or (Seien Sie) be ye!

Seien wir! let us be!

Seien sie! let them be!

The compound tenses of *sein* are formed exactly like those of *kommen*, conjugated afterwards. The third persons are here given:—

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present perfect...	Er ist gewesen, He has been.	Er sei gewesen.
Pluperfect .....	Er war gewesen, He had been.	Er wäre gewesen.
Future imperfect.	Er wird sein, He will be.	Er werde sein.
Future perfect ...	Er wird gewesen sein, He will have been.	Er werde gewesen sein.



*Conditional Mood.*

Present.... Er würde sein, He would be.  
 Past..... Er würde gewesen sein, He would have been.

*Infinitive.*

Sein, to be. | Gewesen sein, to have been.

89. CONJUGATION OF werden.

**Werden**—TO BECOME.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present Tense.	Ich werde, I become	[Ich werde, I become]
	Du wirst	Du werdest
	Er wird	Er werde
	Wir werden	[Wir werden]
	Ihr werdet	[Ihr werdet]
	Sie werden.	[Sie werden]
Past Tense.	Ich wurde or ward, I became	Ich würde, I became
	Du wurdest or wardst	Du würdest
	Er wurde or ward	Er würde
	Wir wurden	Wir würden
	Ihr wurdet	Ihr würdet
	Sie wurden.	Sie würden.

*Imperative.*

Werde, become thou. | Werdet, become ye.

*Infinitive.*

Present. Werden. | Perf. Geworden (or worden) sein.

*Participle.*

Present. Werdend. | Perf. Geworden (as auxiliary, [worden]).

The compound tenses of werden are formed with sein, like those of kommen.

## Chapter VIII.—Verbs continued.—Specimens of Conjugation.

### 90. CONJUGATION OF A WEAK VERB (with *haben*):

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present Tense.	<p>Ich liebe, I love            Du liebst            Er liebt            Wir lieben            Ihr liebt            Sie lieben.</p>	<p>[Ich liebe, I love]            Du liebest            Er liebe            [Wir lieben]            Ihr liebet            [Sie lieben.]</p>
Past Tense.	<p>Ich liebte, I loved, I was            Du liebtest [loving            Er liebte            Wir liebten            Ihr liebtet            Sie liebten</p>	<p>Ich liebte, I loved, I were            Du liebtest [loving            Er liebte            Wir liebten            Ihr liebtet            Sie liebten.</p>
Perfect Tense.	<p>Ich habe geliebt, I have loved,            Du hast geliebt [I loved            Er hat geliebt            Wir haben geliebt            Ihr habt geliebt            Sie haben geliebt.</p>	<p>[Ich habe geliebt,] I have loved,            Du habest geliebt [I loved            Er habe geliebt            [Wir haben geliebt]            Ihr habet geliebt            [Sie haben geliebt.]</p>
Pluperfect.	<p>Ich hatte geliebt, I had loved            Du hattest geliebt            Er hatte geliebt            Wir hatten geliebt            Ihr hättet geliebt            Sie hatten geliebt.</p>	<p>Ich hätte geliebt            Du hättest geliebt            Er hätte geliebt            Wir hätten geliebt            Ihr hättet geliebt            Sie hätten geliebt.</p>
Future Imperfect.	<p>Ich werde lieben, I shall love            Du wirst lieben            Er wird lieben            Wir werden lieben            Ihr werdet lieben            Sie werden lieben.</p>	<p>[Ich werde lieben]            Du werdest lieben            Er werde lieben            [Wir werden lieben]            [Ihr werdet lieben]            [Sie werden lieben.]</p>

Future Perfect.	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
	Ich werde geliebt haben, I [shall have loved]	[Ich werde geliebt haben]
	Du wirst geliebt haben	[Du werdest geliebt haben]
	Er wird geliebt haben	Er werde geliebt haben
	Wir werden geliebt haben	[Wir werden geliebt haben]
	Ihr werdet geliebt haben	[Ihr werdet geliebt haben]
Sie werden geliebt haben.	[Sie werden geliebt haben.]	

*Conditional Mood.*

Present.	Past.
Ich würde lieben, I should [love]	Ich würde geliebt haben, I [should have loved]
Du würdest lieben	Du würdest geliebt haben
Er würde lieben	Er würde geliebt haben
Wir würden lieben	Wir würden geliebt haben
Ihr würdet lieben	Ihr würdet geliebt haben
Sie würden lieben	Sie würden geliebt haben.

or

Present.	Past.
Ich liebte	Ich hätte geliebt
Du liebtest	Du hättest geliebt
&c.	&c.

*Imperative.*

Liebe! love!	Liebet! (or lieben Sie!) love!
Liebe er! let him love!	Lieben wir! let us love!
	Lieben sie! let them love!

*Infinitive and Participle.*

lieben, to love, liebend, loving,	geliebt haben, to have loved, geliebt, loved.
--------------------------------------	--

*Obs. 1.*—The third plural imperative lieben Sie! (Sie being printed with a capital) is the ordinary form of address, except in very familiar intercourse.

*Obs. 2.*—In the subjunctive no contraction like liebt for liebet is allowed.

91. CONJUGATION OF A STRONG VERB:—

[The parts printed in black type are not formed directly from the root of the infinitive.]

**Sprechen**—TO SPEAK.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	Ich spreche, I speak, Du sprichst Er spricht Wir sprechen Ihr sprecht Sie sprechen.	[Ich spreche] Du sprichst Er spreche [Wir sprechen] Ihr sprecht [Sie sprechen.]
<b>Past Tense.</b>	Ich sprach, I spoke, Du sprachst Er sprach Wir sprachen Ihr sprach(e)t Sie sprachen.	Ich spräche Du sprächest Er spräche Wir sprächen Ihr sprächet Sie sprächen.

*Imperative.*

<b>Sprich!</b> speak!	Sprech(e)t! (or sprechen Sie!),
Spreche er! let him speak!	[speak!
	Sprechen wir! let us speak!
	Sprechen sie! let them speak!

The compound tenses ich habe gesprochen, &c., are formed exactly like those of lieben.

92. CONJUGATION OF A VERB WITH **sein** :—

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<b>Present Tense.</b>	Ich komme, I come, Du kommst Er kommt Wir kommen Ihr kommt Sie kommen.	[Ich komme] Du kommest Er komme [Wir kommen] Ihr kommet [Sie kommen.]
<b>Past Tense.</b>	Ich kam, I came, Du kamst Er kam Wir kamen Ihr kam(e)t Sie kamen.	Ich käme, I came, Du kämest Er käme Wir kämen Ihr kämet Sie kämen.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Perfect Tense.	<p>Ich bin gekommen, I am come [or have come, Du bist gekommen Er ist gekommen Wir sind gekommen Ihr seid gekommen Sie sind gekommen.</p>	<p>Ich sei gekommen Du sei(e)st gekommen Er sei gekommen Wir seien gekommen Ihr seiet gekommen Sie seien gekommen.</p>
Pluperfect.	<p>Ich war gekommen, I had come [or was come, Du warst gekommen Er war gekommen Wir waren gekommen Ihr war(e)t gekommen Sie waren gekommen.</p>	<p>Ich wäre gekommen Du wärest gekommen Er wäre gekommen Wir wären gekommen Ihr wäret gekommen Sie wären gekommen.</p>
Future Imperf.	<p>Ich werde kommen Du wirst kommen &amp;c.</p>	<p>[Ich werde kommen] Du werdest kommen &amp;c.</p>
Future Perfect.	<p>Ich werde gekommen sein Du wirst gekommen sein &amp;c.</p>	<p>[Ich werde gekommen sein] Du werdest gekommen sein &amp;c.</p>

*Conditional.*

Present.  
Ich würde kommen  
Du würdest kommen

Past.  
Ich würde gekommen sein  
Du würdest gekommen sein

or

Present.  
Ich käme  
Du kämest  
&c.

Past.  
Ich wäre gekommen  
Du wärest gekommen  
&c.

*Imperative.*

Komme! (Komm!)  
[Komme er!]

Komm(e)t! (or kommen Sie!)  
[Kommen wir!]  
[Kommen sie!]

## 93. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VOICE.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present Tense.	Ich werde geliebt, I am loved Du wirst geliebt Er wird geliebt Wir werden geliebt Ihr werdet geliebt Sie werden geliebt.	[Ich werde geliebt, I be loved] Du werdest geliebt Er werde geliebt [Wir werden geliebt] [Ihr werdet geliebt] [Sie werden geliebt.]
Past Tense.	Ich wurde geliebt, I was loved Du wurdest geliebt Er wurde geliebt Wir wurden geliebt Ihr wurdet geliebt Sie wurden geliebt.	Ich würde geliebt, I were Du würdest geliebt [loved Er würde geliebt Wir würden geliebt Ihr würdet geliebt Sie würden geliebt.
Perfect Tense.	Ich bin geliebt worden, I have [been loved Du bist geliebt worden Er ist geliebt worden Wir sind geliebt worden Ihr seid geliebt worden Sie sind geliebt worden.	Ich sei geliebt worden, I had [been loved Du seiest geliebt worden Er sei geliebt worden Wir seien geliebt worden Ihr seiet geliebt worden Sie seien geliebt worden.
Pluperfect.	Ich war geliebt worden Du warst geliebt worden Er war geliebt worden Wir waren geliebt worden Ihr wäret geliebt worden Sie waren geliebt worden.	Ich wäre geliebt worden Du wärest geliebt worden Er wäre geliebt worden Wir wären geliebt worden Ihr wäret geliebt worden Sie wären geliebt worden.
First Future.	Ich werde geliebt werden Du wirst geliebt werden &c.	[Ich werde geliebt werden] Du werdest geliebt werden &c.
Second Future.	Ich werde geliebt worden sein Du wirst geliebt worden sein &c.	[Ich werde geliebt worden sein] Du werdest geliebt worden sein &c.

*Conditional.*

Present.  
Ich würde geliebt werden  
Du würdest geliebt werden  
&c.

Past.  
Ich würde geliebt worden sein  
Du würdest geliebt worden sein  
&c.

Present.	or	Past.
Ich wäre geliebt Du wärest geliebt &c.		Ich wäre geliebt worden Du wärest geliebt worden &c.

*Imperative.*

Werde geliebt! [Er werde geliebt!]		Werdet (or werden Sie) geliebt! [Werden wir geliebt!] [Werden sie geliebt!]
---------------------------------------	--	---

94. NOTES ON THE PASSIVE. — The difficulties of the passive voice are more apparent than real. It is essential to remember that *werden* (*to become*) takes the place of the English *be*, and *sein* (*to be*) the place of the English *have*. Thus:—

er ist geliebt worden,  
he has loved been,  
er wird geliebt worden sein,  
he will loved been have.

It will be noticed that in the compound tenses the Infinitive comes last, and the Participle of the auxiliary after the Participle of the verb.

95. REFLEXIVE VERBS.—Reflexive verbs are conjugated exactly like ordinary active verbs, with the addition of the reflexive pronoun, mostly in the accusative, but sometimes in the dative case. Many of them, like *sich schämen*, to be ashamed, *sich freuen*, to rejoice, have no reflexive equivalent in English. One or two tenses will suffice to show how they are conjugated.

*Present Indicative.*

With Accusative.		With Dative.
Ich besinne mich, I bethink Du besinnst dich [myself Er besinnt sich Wir besinnen uns Ihr besinnt euch Sie besinnen sich.		Ich schmeichle mir, I flatter Du schmeichelst dir [myself Er schmeichelt sich Wir schmeicheln uns Ihr schmeichelt euch Sie schmeicheln sich.

*Compound Tenses.*

Ich habe mich besonnen Ich werde mich besinnen &c.		ich habe mir geschmeichelt ich werde mir schmeicheln &c.
--	--	--

96. COMPOUND VERBS.—A great number of compound verbs are formed by putting certain *prefixes*, originally adverbs, before simple verbs. Many of them retain their adverbial character and their accent, and are easily separated from the verb; others have become part of the verb, have lost their accent, and remain attached to the verb throughout its conjugation.

They are conjugated as follows:—

	Separable Verbs.	Inseparable Verbs.
Present Indicative.	Ich ziehe vor, I prefer Du ziehst vor Er zieht vor Wir ziehen vor Ihr zieht vor Sie ziehen vor.	Ich entziehe, I withdraw Du entziehst Er entzieht Wir entziehen Ihr entzieht Sie entziehen.
Perfect Indicative.	Ich habe vorgezogen Du hast vorgezogen &c.	Ich habe entzogen Du hast entzogen &c.

*Infinitive with zu (Supine).*

vorzuziehen, to prefer. | zuziehen, to withdraw.

Should a simple tense of the verb stand at the end of the sentence, the separable prefix is treated exactly like the inseparable one:—

wenn ich es vorziehe. | wenn ich es entziehe.

The lists of separable and inseparable prefixes will be found in the next chapter.

97. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—A number of verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular. Such are: (1.) Verbs denoting natural phenomena; as, es blizt, *it lightens*; es regnet, *it*



rains. (2.) Verbs with a dative or an accusative of a personal pronoun representing an ordinary personal verb in English; as, *eš hungert mič, I am hungry; eš dünft mir, I fancy, methinks.* It should be noticed that *methinks* is the sole surviving English representative of this class. (3.) The verb *eš gibt, there is or there are* (French *il y a*), literally *nature produces.* The following are specimens of their conjugation:—

### 98. CONJUGATION OF *eš giebt.*

Present Imperf...	<i>Eš giebt, there is or there are.</i>
Past Imperfect...	<i>Eš gab, there was or there were.</i>
Pres. Prefect ...	<i>Eš hat gegeben, there has been or there have</i> [been.
Past Perfect ...	<i>Eš hatte gegeben, there had been.</i> [been.
Future Imperf...	<i>Eš wird geben, there will be.</i>
Future Perfect...	<i>Eš wird gegeben haben, there will have been.</i>
Pres. Conditional	<i>Eš würde geben, there would be.</i>
Past Conditional	<i>Eš würde gegeben haben, there would have</i> [been.

All impersonals, except *eš gelingt (mir, &c.),\* I succeed,* are conjugated with *haben.*

### 99. PERSONS WITH IMPERSONALS.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>eš hungert mič, I am hungry,</i>	<i>eš hungert unš, we are hungry.</i>
<i>eš hungert dič, thou art hungry,</i>	<i>eš hungert euč, ye are hungry.</i>
<i>eš hungert išn (še), he is hungry,</i>	<i>eš hungert še, they are hungry.</i>
<i>eš hat mir geahnt, I expected,</i>	<i>eš hat unš geahnt.</i>
<i>eš hat dir geahnt,</i>	<i>eš hat euč geahnt.</i>
<i>eš hat išn (ihr) geahnt,</i>	<i>eš hat iñnen geahnt.</i>

\* *Gelingen* is also used personally in the 3rd singular and 3rd plural only.

## Chapter IX.—Verbs continued.—Formation of Tenses—Prefixes, &c.

100. GENERAL PRINCIPLES.—It has been pointed out (§ 86) that there are two ways of conjugating verbs in German. In the one, the weak conjugation, the root-vowel is retained unaltered, and the past tense is formed by the addition of *te*. This suffix is the representative of the auxiliary *thū*—, meaning *did*, and, as might be expected, is not employed in the conjugation of those verbs that seem to constitute the original stock of the language.

In the strong conjugation, that of the primitive verbs of the language, the root, which is often, but not necessarily, that of the Present Tense, is almost always subjected to certain vowel changes to form the Past Tense, less frequently to form the Present Tense and the Past Participle. Thus the root *grab* has Past *grub* (representing an older *gruob*), and in the Present the two stems *grab* and *grāb*. Again, the root *gab* has in the Present *gib-* and *geb-*, in the Past *gab-*, and in the Past Participle *gegeben*.

It is impossible, in an elementary Grammar, to do more than indicate the processes which these changes represent; but it is worth while to show that they are systematic changes, and not, as might be imagined from the present condition of the language, accidental. The Aryan languages have two ways of forming a past tense:—(1.) by reduplication, and (2.) by strengthening the root-vowel. Reduplication, familiar to us in examples like *momordi*, *spopondi*, *τερυφα*, does not exist in modern German; but there is a group of verbs (*halten*, *hiet* being the type), in which the formation of the Past Tense is clearly traceable to it. *hiet* is, in fact, a contraction of a form which appears in Gothic\* as *haihald*. The other process, that of strengthening the root-vowel (*Steigerung* or *Ablaut*), is more easily traced. A short *ä* in the root, became, for certain purposes, *aa*, or *á*, and this again was strengthened to a somewhat unpronounceable combination *áa*, which in Primitive German appears as *ô* (later *uo*), and meets us, for example, in the word *grub* (for *gruob*) quoted above. Similarly, *i* in the

---

\* Gothic is the Teutonic language of which we possess the earliest literary remains, namely, a translation of the Gospels by Ulfilas, who lived in the fourth century A.D. It is not considered to be a lineal ancestor of modern High German, but collateral.

root becomes first *ai*, and then *ái*, which in Primitive German took the less ambitious forms (1) *ei* or *i*, (2) *ai* or *ei*. And *u* in the root becomes (1) *au*, (2) *áu*, or eventually (1) *iu*, (2) *au*, or *ou*. As an example, the older root of the existing verb *fliegen*, to fly, is *vlug*, retained in the noun *Flug*, flight; the first singular present is *vliug-e*, now *fliege*; the past tense *vlouc*, now *flog*, showing the three gradations of the *u*-roots (original, *vlug*; first gradation, *vliug*; second gradation, *vlouc*). The normal German practice seems to have been to take the first gradation for the singular, and the second gradation for the plural of the past tense. Of this there is a solitary survival in *warb*, plural *wurten*, though *warb* itself is in a great measure superseded by *wurde*. With this exception, one of the two has, in modern German, suppressed the other, and the net result is that the past tense shows a vowel which has a title to be considered a strengthened or heavier form of the vowel of the root of the verb.

Not content, however, with strengthening, and that in two gradations, the root-vowel, German increases its resources by weakening the vowel *a*, first down to *u*, and then down to the still thinner vowel sound *i*. This process is often, but not necessarily, used in forming the stem of the present tense; thus *gab* makes *gibst*, *gibt*; *nam*-makes *nimmst*, *nimmt*, etc. A still further change of vowel in certain parts of the present tense, known by the name of *Bredung*, will be spoken of in the next section.

101. PRESENT TENSE OF STRONG VERBS. — It will have been remarked, in conjugating strong verbs, that there is frequently, but not necessarily, a variation in the vowels employed in different parts formed from the Present stem, that is, the several persons of the Present Tense, the Infinitive, and the Present Participle. The second and third persons of the Present Tense (and now and then the first in company with them) differ from the other members of the group. Either those two persons modify the root-vowel, especially *a*, as in *schlagen*, *schlägst*, *schlägt*, or they have an *i* (occasionally *ie*) where the other parts have *e*, as in *sprechen*, *sprichst*, *spricht*, *geben*, *gibst*, *gibt*.

The explanation of this phenomenon carries us a step further than the last section. If we compare the person-inflections of a German verb with those of a Greek, a Latin, a Sanscrit, or a Gothic verb, we cannot help seeing that a person-ending was once a much more formidable thing than it is now. It was, in fact, a personal pronoun, and by diligent comparison it has been possible to form a very fair idea of the primitive form of the personal pronouns. Thus the Present of *nam*, take, is supposed to have been originally conjugated:—

<i>nam-â-mi</i>	.. ..	take—I (me).
<i>nam-a-si</i>	.. ..	take—thou (Greek <i>σν</i> ).
<i>nam-a-ti</i>	.. ..	take—he (t being root of demonstrative).
<i>nam-â-masi</i>	.. ..	take—I—thou.
<i>nam-a-tasi</i>	.. ..	take—he—thou.
<i>nam-a-nti</i>	.. ..	take—they (he and he).

Passing on to old High German,\* we find forms looking extremely like

---

\* Old High German is the language of the tribes inhabiting South Germany, as contained in literary remains from the 8th to the 11th century.

Latin; the root has suffered a change, and the terminations are a good deal cut down. The conjugation runs thus:—

nim-u,	nēm-amês
nim-is,	nēm-at.
nim-it,	nēm-ant.

Or to take another instance from the root *vall*:—

vall-u,	vall-amêa.
vell-is,	vall-at.
vell-it,	vall-ant.

Now, leaving out of consideration the first person singular, we notice that the endings of the second and third singular begin with *i*, those of the other persons, &c., with *a*. Here, then, we must look for the solution of the difficulty. A very common tendency of language is to assimilate, more or less completely, the vowels of adjacent syllables. In German this tendency works backwards, and produces the two effects known as Umlaut and Brechung. If a syllable with *i* be followed by a syllable with *a*, the *i* is changed by Brechung into an *e*-sound (denoted by *ë*); if *i* follows a syllable containing *a*, *o*, *u*, the root-vowel of that syllable is by Umlaut brought nearer to the sound of the *i*. Thus, on the one hand, *sprechen*, *sprechet*, *nehmen*, &c., show the Present stem modified by Brechung; on the other hand, *schlagen*, *schlaget*, &c., contain the true stem, *schlägst*, *schlägt*, the stem modified by Umlaut. As to the first person singular, it seems to have been arbitrarily altered to the form of the plural and the infinitive.

102. PARTICIPLES.—The Present Participle is formed, both in strong and in weak verbs, by adding *end* to the root of the Infinitive, or more simply *b* to the Infinitive. Its older form is *and*, retained in the word *Heiland*, Saviour. *Freund*, friend, *Feind*, enemy, are really contracted Present Participles.

The Past Participle is formed in strong verbs by adding the suffix *en* to the root, and prefixing *ge*; *ge* is a particle used as an independent prefix to denote the completion of an action, as in *geschweigen* compared with *schweigen*, *gedenken* compared with *denken*, and is therefore very appropriate to the Past Participle. It corresponds to the prefix *y* in old English, common enough in Chaucer, now retained only in the word *yclept*. As to root-vowel, the Past Participle very often, but not always, retains that of the verb. In the weak conjugation the Past Participle is formed by adding *t*, and prefixing *ge*. Derivative verbs ending in *ieren* or *iren*, mostly formed from foreign languages, like *regieren*, *studiren*, take no prefix *ge* in the past participle; as, *regiert*, *studirt*, &c.

102. **SUBJUNCTIVE.**—The Present Subjunctive both of strong and weak verbs has the root-vowel of the Infinitive, and never drops *e* in conjugation. The Past Subjunctive of strong verbs is formed by modifying the root-vowel of the Past Indicative; occasionally it is formed from an obsolete Past Indicative, modifying where possible, and adding *e*. In weak verbs it is identical with the Past Indicative.

The terminations of the Subjunctive in the older German contain the letter *i* or *j*, representing *ya* or *ja* of the primitive Aryan tongue. The following effects of this should be noticed:—

(1) In strong verbs the *a*, *o* or *u* of the Past Indicative is subjected to the Umlaut to form the Past Subjunctive.

(2) *e* is retained in the Subjunctive second singular and plural, as the sole representative of the syllable that once differentiated it from the Indicative.

103. **IMPERATIVE.**—The second singular of the Imperative of strong verbs, having *i* or *ie* in the 2nd or 3rd singular Present Indicative, is the root of those persons; as, *sprich*, *lies*. Other strong verbs and all weak verbs form the 2nd singular Imperative by adding *e* to the root. In some cases, as *halt!* *komm!* the *e* is conveniently dropped. The 2nd plural Imperative is identical in form with the 2nd plural Indicative. The other persons of the Imperative are either borrowed from the Subjunctive, or formed with auxiliaries: *Laß* (or *laßt*) *uns gehen!* Let us go! *Er soll bleiben!* Let him stay!

104. **CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS.**—It is usual to divide the verbs of the strong conjugation into six classes of *ablautende Verben*, and one class of *reduplizierende Verben*. The arrangement here adopted is to give (1) a typical verb, specifying the Infinitive, the Present 3rd singular, the Past Indicative and Subjunctive, and the Perfect Participle; (2) a list of the verbs that conform exactly, as far as their vowels are concerned, to the typical form; (3) a list of those verbs that, being placed in the class, deviate slightly from the type. Afterwards a tabular list of all strong verbs and all verbs that deviate at all from the weak conjugation is given.

105. **FIRST GROUP.**—*e* or *ä*—*i* (lengthened *ie*)—*a*—*o*.

TYPE:—*brechen*—*bricht*—*brach*—*bräche*—*gebrochen*.

**NORMAL VERBS:**—brechen, erschrecken\* (erschraf), gebären (gebirt or gebärt), nehmen (nimmt, genommen), sprechen, stehen, stecken† (stak), stehlen (stiehl), treffen (traf).

**VARIATIONS:**—bewegen‡ (bewegt, bewog), erwägen (erwägt, erwog), bersten (barst or borst, härste or härste), dreschen (drosch), sechten (sichst, sacht, socht), flechten (flieht, flocht), gähren (gährt, gahr), kommen (kommt or kömmt, kam), § löschen (losch), pflegen (pflegt, pflog, or weak conjugation), scharren (schiert or schert, schor), schwören (schwört, schwor), weben (webt, wob).

### 106. SECOND GROUP.—e—i (or ie)—a—e.

**TYPE:**—messen—mißt—maß—mäße—gemessen.

**NORMAL VERBS:**—essen (gegessen), fressen, geben (giebt), geschehen (geschieht), lesen (lies't), || messen, sehen (sieht), vergessen, treten (tritt).

**VARIATIONS:**—bitten (bittet, bat), genesen (genes't), || liegen (liegt), and sitzen (sitzt), the tenses of which are formed as if from setzen.

Wesen (for which sein is used) belongs to this group, and changes s into r in the psst.

### 107.—THIRD GROUP.—ei—ei (as weak verbs)—ie or i—ie or i.

**TYPE:**—scheinen—scheint—schien—schiene—geschienen ;  
reiten—reitet—ritt—ritte—geritten ;

the consonant being doubled to show the short vowel.

**NORMAL VERBS:** Like scheinen:—bleiben, bedeihen, leihen, meiden, preisen, scheiden, scheinen, schreiben, schreien, schweigen, spinnen, steigen, weisen, zeihen. ¶

Like reiten:—beißen, beleißen, erbleichen, gleichen, gleiten, greifen, leisen, kneifen, leiden (litt), pfeifen, reißen, reiten, schleichen, schleifen, schleissen, schmeißen, schneiden (schnitt), schreiten, schleissen, streiten, streichen, weichen.

### 108. FOURTH GROUP.—ie—ie (as weak verbs)—o—o.

**TYPE:**—fliegen—fliegt—flog—flöge—geflogen.

**NORMAL VERBS:**—biegen, bieten, fliehen, fliegen, frieren, genießen, gießen, kiesen (tor, geforen), kriechen, riechen, schieben, schießen, schließen, sieben (sott, gefotten), spritzen, stieben, triefen, vertrießen, verlieren, wiegen, ziehen (zog, gezogen).

**VARIATIONS:**—The verbs whose infinitives are betrügen, lügen, saugen, schrauben, saufen (soß, gesoffen), belong to this group; lügen and trügen, and several of the verbs in ie, often form, in poetry, the second and third singular Present Indicative in cu; as, leugt, freucht, fleugt.

\* To be frightened; erschrecken, to frighten, is a weak verb.

† Intransitive; stecken, transitive, is a weak verb.

‡ To induce; bewegen, set in motion, is a weak verb.

§ The e may be traced in bequem.

¶ Accuse; take care to distinguish from ziehen, draw.

|| 't, not ft.

109. FIFTH GROUP.—**or—ä—u—a.**

TYPE:—**schlagen—schlägt—schlag—schläge—geschlagen.**

NORMAL VERBS:—**fahren, graben, laden,\* schlagen, schaffen (schuf), tragen** wachsen, and sometimes **baden.**

VARIATIONS:—**heben, hebt, hub or hob, gehoben; † schwören, schwört, schwur** or **schwor, geschworen; stehen** (which has taken the place of *standan*), **steht, stand, or stund, gestanden.**

110. SIXTH GROUP.—**i** (changed into **e** before **r** and **l**)  
—**i—a—u** or **o.**

TYPE:—**singen—singt—sang—sänge—gesungen;**  
**berget—birgt—barg—bärke—geborgen.**

NORMAL VERBS: Like **singen**—: **binden, bringen, finden, gelingen, klingen** ringen, **schlingen, singen, sinken, springen, stinken, winken, winden, zwingen.**

Like **bergen**:—**befehlen** (**befiehlt, Imp. Subj. beföhle**), **helfen** (**Imp. Subj. hülf** or **hülfe**), **gelten** (**gälte** or **gölte**), **schelten** (**schölte**), **schmelzen** (**schmolze**), **sterben** (**stürbe**), **verderben** (**verdürbe**), **werben** (**würbe**), **werden** (**würde**), **werfen** (**würfe** or **würfe**).

VARIATIONS:—**glimmen, klinken, make glommi, klommi; schallen, schallt, scholl;** **schwollen, schwoll;** **quellen, quoll, the Imp. Subj. taking ö;** **dingen** makes **bang** or **tung;** **beginnen, rinnen, sinnen, spinnen** take **ö** in the **Imp. Subj.**, with **a** in the **Imp. Indic.**

111. SEVENTH GROUP.—REDUPLICATING VERBS.—  
Infinitive varies—Present as in weak verbs, except that **a**  
becomes **ä**—Past tense **ie** (or **i**)—Past Participle as Infinitive.

TYPE:—**fallen—fällt—fiel—fielen—gefallen.**

NORMAL VERBS:—**blasen, treten, fallen, fangen (sing), halten, hängen (hing),** **heißen, lassen, laufen, ratzen, rufen, stoßen.**

VARIATIONS:—**hauen** makes **hauet, hieb;** **gehen** has superseded a form **gangan** (Scotch, *gang*), and makes **geht, giug, gegangen.**

112. PECULIARITIES OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.—As in the case of adjectives, a contraction takes place when a liquid comes between two **e**'s. In the first person singular present imperfect indicative the **e** of the root, in other parts the **e** of the inflexion is dropped; as, **ich handle** du **handelst**, er **handelt**, wir **handeln**; **ich wandre**, du **wanderst**, &c.

\* These are really two verbs—**laden**, load, a strong verb; and **laden**, invite, a weak verb. In the Present Tense **labet** and **läbt** are used indifferently in both meanings; in the Past Tense, **labete** is occasionally used.

† The Participle preserved in **erhaben**, sublime.

In forming the Past Indicative and Subjunctive, *e* is retained after *b*, *t*, *th* (as, *rebete*, *vermuthete*), but dropped in all other cases, as *lachte*.

The verbs *brennen*, *rennen*, *fennen*, *nennen*, *ſenden*, *wenden* have *a* in the Past tense and Perfect Participle; *a* is the original vowel of the root.\*

113. IRREGULAR VERBS.—*Bringen*, *denken*, *bünnen* form their Past Tense and Participle as if from *brachen*, *bachten*, *bäuchen*; *gönnen* makes *gonnen*, *gegonnt*, as well as *gönnte*, *gegönnt*.

*Thun* makes *ich thue*, *du thuſt*, *er thut*, *wir thun*, *ihr thut*, *ſie thun*—*that*—*thäte*—*gethan*.

*Wiſſen* makes *ich weiß*, *du weiſt*, *er weiß*, *wir wiſſen*, *ihr wiſſet*, *ſie wiſſen*—*wußte*—*wüßte*—*gewußt*.

114. VERBS OF MOOD.—The verbs of mood *bürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müſſen*, *ſollen*, *wollen* have ſeveral peculiarities of conjugation. In all of them, (1) the ſingular Preſent Indicative has in all three perſons a different vowel from the Infinitive (except in *ſollen*); (2) the Paſt Tense and Paſt Participle are formed according to the weak conjugation; (3) there is another form of the Perfect Participle, identical with the Infinitive, which is uſed whenever a compound tense of the auxiliary is joined to another Infinitive. *Laſſen*, which has the 3rd property, is in other reſpects a ſtrong verb of the ſeventh group.

Their conjugation is as follows:—

---

\* The Gothic form is *brannjan*, etc., which accounts for the change of *a* into *e* by Umlaut.



	Present.		Past.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
bürfen, dare, may be permitted to.	ich darf du darfst er darf wir dürfen, &c.	ich dürfe du dürfest er dürfe &c.	ich durfte du durftest &c.	ich dürfte du dürftest &c.
können, can, be able to.	ich kann du kannst er kann wir können, &c.	ich könne du könntest er könne &c.	ich konnte du konntest er konnte &c.	ich könnte du könntest er könnte &c.
mögen, may, like to.	ich mag du magst er mag wir mögen, &c.	ich möge du mögest er möge &c.	ich mochte du möchtest er mochte &c.	ich möchte du möchtest er möchte &c.
müssen, must, be obliged to.	ich muß du mußt er muß wir müssen, &c.	ich müsse du müßtest er müsse &c.	ich mußte du mußttest er mußte &c.	ich müßte du müßttest er müßte &c.
sollen, ought, have to.	ich soll du sollst er soll wir sollen, &c.	ich solle du sollest er solle &c.	ich sollte du solltest er sollte &c.	ich sollte du solltest er sollte &c.
wollen, will, want to.	ich will du willst er will wir wollen, &c.	ich wolle du wollest er wolle &c.	ich wollte du wolltest &c.	ich wollte du wolltest &c.

Perfect Participles :—dürfen or' geburft, können or' gekonnt, mögen or' gemocht, müssen or' gemußt, sollen or' gesollt, wollen or' gewollt.

115. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.—There are six inseparable prefixes, viz.:—

ent or emp, and er,  
be, ge, ver, and zer.

Verbs compounded with these are conjugated like *entziehen* (§ 96). There is then no accent on the prefix.

116. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES.—Verbs compounded with *durch*, *hinter*, *um*, *über*, *unter*, *wider* (*wieder*) are sometimes conjugated like *entziehen*, and sometimes like *vorziehen*, according to meaning. If they are conjugated like *vorziehen*, the prefix retains its accent; if like *entziehen*, it does not. For details, see Syntax.

117. *Miß* AND *voll*.—*Miß* is not unfrequently a separable prefix, but its use is avoided in cases where it would have to follow the verb. Thus, *er hat mißgerechnet*, *er hat mich mißverstanden*, *er scheint mißzurechnen*, but not *er rechnet miß*. But it is more usual to treat it as an inseparable prefix; or, when it is compounded with a weak verb, to consider it so entirely a part of the verb as to prefix *ge* to the whole. Thus, *mißbilligen* makes *mißbilligt* or *gemißbilligt*, *mißbrauchen* makes *mißbraucht* or *gemißbraucht*.

*Voll* is inseparable in the verbs *vollbringen*, *vollenben*, *vollführen*, *vollziehen*. In a compound like *vollgießen*, to fill by pouring, it is really a separate word, and therefore separable.

118. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.—The following prefixes are separable:—*ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *dar*, *ein*, *fort*, *los*, *mit*, *nach*, *ob*, *vor*, *weg*, *zu*, *hin* and *her*, (and their compounds, like *herab*, *umhin*) *empor*, *nieder*, *zurück*, *zusammen*, *entgegen*. Verbs compounded with these prefixes are conjugated like *vorziehen*.

Compound prefixes made up of two separable prefixes are separable; as, *vorbei*, *vorüber*, *heran*.

There are a number of verbs, in which a separable prefix precedes a verb like *behalten*, formed with an inseparable prefix; such are, *vorbehalten*, *anerkennen*, *auserstehen*. Some of them admit of the separation of the separable prefix, *ich behalte... vor*, *vorzubehalten*, but it is generally better to avoid using the verbs in cases where such separation might be necessary. Of course, in no case can such verbs take *ge*.

119. MISCELLANEOUS COMPOUNDS.—Verbs, which have an adjective or adverb (not included in the list of ordinary prefixes) prefixed, are separable; as, *großtun*, *brag*;

wohlwollen, wish well to; fehlſchlagen, miscarry; gutheißen, approve; gleichkommen, be a match for; hochachten, esteem highly. Thus, er that groß, es ist fehlgeſchlagen.

Some combinations of a noun and verb, such as Preis (preis) geben, to give up; Statt finden, to take place; Haus halten, to keep house; Dank ſagen, to thank,—are treated as two separate words.

There are a number of verbs that look like compound verbs, but are really derivatives from compound nouns. Such are, rathſchlagen, to take counsel; hanthaben, to handle; weiſſagen, to divine, prophesy (not really a compound of weiße, ſagen); nuthmaßen, to suspect. They are treated as ordinary verbs—ich hanthabe, ich habe gerathſchlagt. It should be further noticed that we have gerathſchlagt, and not gerathſchlagen, the verb being a derivative of Rathſchlag, not a compound of ſchlagen.

A few verbs of this kind, with an inseparable prefix, also call for remark. Such are, beobachten, observe (Obacht); beauftragen, commission (Auftrag); verabſchieden, dismiss (Abſchied); veranlaſſen, cause (Anlaß). They are treated as ordinary inseparable verbs—ich habe veranlaßt; er beauftragte mich. Notice as before—veranlaßte, not veranließ; beauftragte, not beauftrag.

120. FACTITIVE VERBS.—There are, in German, a number of pairs of verbs like our *fall* and *fell*—*i.e.*, fall, and cause to fall. Factitive verbs (*cause to fall*) are formed from certain intransitive verbs by modifying the root-vowel, or sometimes by another change. Thus we have:—

börren, to dry up (intrans.),	börren, dry up, cause to wither.
wither,	
bringen, press on, make one's way,	brängen, press, crowd (trans.).
way,	
erfalten, grow cold,	erfalten*, make cold.
fallen, fall,	fällen, fell.
fließen, flow,	flößen†, cause to flow, float (tr.)
fahren‡, ride in a carriage, &c.,	führen, lead, take in a carriage.

\* Especially sich erfalten, catch cold.

† Notice Einem Etwas einflößen, to make something flow into a person, inspire him with it.

‡ Old English verb to fare.

hängen, hang, be hanging,  
 haften, stick, be fixed,  
 liegen, lie,  
 saufen, drink,

saugen, suck,  
 schallen, sound (intr.)  
 schwimmen, swim,

schwimmen, vanish,  
 sinken, sink (intr.)  
 sitzen, sit,  
 springen, jump,

trinken, drink,

wiegen, weigh (intr.)

hängen, hang (trans.).  
 heften, fasten, fix.  
 legen, lay.  
 ersäufen, drown (make to drink  
 water to excess.)  
 säugen, suckle.  
 schellen, ring (a bell).  
 schwemmen, deluge (make to  
 swim.)  
 verschwenden, squander.  
 sinken, sink (trans.).  
 setzen, set.  
 sprengen, make to jump, blow up  
 with gunpowder.  
 tränken, make to drink, water  
 (a horse, &c.)  
 wägen, weigh (trans.).

---

Chapter X.—121. List of Strong and Irregular Verbs.

Parts printed in ordinary type are formed without irregularity, according to the weak conjugation. Verbs marked with \* are also conjugated in the weak form.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.	Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group.
Backen <sup>1</sup>	bake	bäckt, bächt	bäcke	back	bäte	gebacken	6
Befehlen	command	befiehlt, befehlt	befiehl	befahl	beföhle	befohlen	6
Befehlen (sich)	apply one's self	besiehet, besieht	besiehe	besah	besöhle	beföhlen	3
Beginnen	begin	beginnt, beginnt	beginne	begann	beginne or be-	begonnen	6
Bieten	bite	beißt, beißt	beisse	biß	biße	gebissen	3
Borgen	hide, secure	birgt, birgt	birg	borg	birge	geborgen	6
Besten	burst	birst, birst	birst	barst or borst	barste, börste	gebortzen	1
*Bewegen <sup>2</sup>	induce	bewegt, bewegt	bewege	bewog	bewöge	bewogen	1
Biegen <sup>3</sup>	bend	biegt, biegt	biege	bog	böge	gebogen	4
Bieten <sup>3</sup>	bid, offer	bietet, bietet	biete	bot	böte	geboden	4
Bitten <sup>3</sup>	bind	bindet, bindet	binde	band	bände	gebunden	6
Blasen	beg	bittet, bittet	bitte	bat	bäte	gebeten	2
Bleiben	blow	bläst, bläst	blase	blies	bliese	geblasen	7
Bleiben	remain	bleibt, bleibt	bleibe	blieb	bliebe	geblieben	3
Braten <sup>4</sup>	roast	brät, brät	brate	briet	briete	gebraten	7
Brechen	break	bricht, bricht	brech	brach	bräche	gebrochen	6
Brennen	burn	brennt, brennt	brenne	brannte	brennte	gebrannt	6
Bringen	bring	bringt, bringt	bringe	brachte	brächte	gebracht	6
Denken	think	denkt, denkt	denke	dachte	dächte	gedacht	6
Dingen	hire	dingt, dingt	dinge	ding	dänge, dänge	gedungen	1
Dreschen	thresh	drescht, drescht	dresch	drang, drang	dresche	gedroschen	1

<sup>1</sup> Strong conjugation not much used, except in past participle.—<sup>2</sup> Weak when it means to set in motion, move physically.  
<sup>3</sup> Distinguish these two verbs from each other, and from beten, to pray, which is weak throughout.  
<sup>4</sup> Weak in transitive sense; but Perf. Part. always gebrochen.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.	Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group.
Dringen	press, throng	bringst, eringt	bringe	brang	bränge	gedrungen	6
Dünken	seem	es dünkt	es dünke	dünkte	dünkte	gedünkt	
Dürfen	dare, may	darf, darfst, darf	bürfe	durfte	dürfte	gedurft	6
Empfehlen	recommend	empfehle, empfehlt	empfehle	empfohl	empfohle	empfohlen	3
Erleiden	turn pale	erleide, erleidet	erleide	erlidy	erliche	erlidien	1
Gewägen	be frightened	erwäge, erwägt	erwäge	erwog	erwäge	erwogen	1
Essen	eat	isst, isst	iß	aß	aße	gegessen	2
Fahren	ride, drive	fährst, fährt	fahre	fuhr	führe	gefahren	6
Fallen	fall	fällt, fällt	falle	fiel	fielle	gefallen	7
Fangen	catch	fängst, fängt	fange	fang (fieng)	fänge	gefangen	7
Fechten	fight	fechtst, fecht	fecht	focht	föchte	gefochten	1
Finden	find	findest, findet	finde	fund	fände	gefunden	6
Flechten	plait	flechtst, flecht	flecht	flocht	föchte	geflochten	1
Fliegen	fly (as a bird)	fliegest, fliegt	fliege	flog	föge	geflogen	4
Fließen	flow	fließest, fließt	fliege	floss	föge	geflossen	4
Fressen	devour	frisstest, frisst	friß	fraß	fräße	gefressen	2
Frieren	freeze	frerst, friert	friere	fror	fröre	gefroren	4
Gähren	ferment	gährst, gährt	gähre	gohr	göhre	gegohren	1
Gebären	bring forth	gebierst, gebiert	gebier	gebar	gebäre	geboren	1
Geben	give	gibst, gibst	geb	gab	gabe	gegeben	2
Gedeihen	prosper	gedeihst, gedeiht	gedeide	gedieh	gediehe	gediehen	3
Gehen	go	gehst, geht	gehe	ging, gieng	ginge or gienge	gegangen	7
Gelingen	succeed	es gelingt	es gelinge	glang	gelange	gelingen	6
Gelten	be worth	giltst, gilt	gilt	galt	gälte or gölte	gegolten	6
Gemeßen	recover	gemeßest, gemießt	gemeße	genas	geräße	gemessen	2
Gemeßen	enjoy	genießest, genießt	genieße	genoss	genöße	genossen	4
Geschehen	happen	es geschieht	es geschehe	geschah	geschähe	geschehen	2
Gewinnen	win	gewinnst, gewinnt	gewinne	gewann	gewönne	gewonnen	6
Gießen	pour	gießest, gießt	gieße	goß	göße	gegossen	4
Gleichen	resemble	gleichst, gleicht	gleich	glich	glöhe	geglichen	3

<sup>6</sup> The transitive verb *erfordern*, to frighten, is weak.

5	Glücken	gliche	glick	glitte	geglitten	3
	Glücken	glückte	glücken	glückte	geglücken	6
	Graben	gräbte	gräbt	grub	gegraben	5
	Greifen	griff	gräbt	griff	gegriffen	3
	haben	hat	hat	hatte	gehabt	7
	halten	hält	hält	hielt	gehalten	7
0	hängen	hängt	hängt	hing (hieng)	gehangen	5
	hau	haut	haut	hieb (hub)	gehauen	7
	heaven	hebt	hebt	hob	gehoben	6
	be called	heißt	heißt	hieße (hübe)	gehießen	7
	help	hilft	hilft	half	geholfen	6
	know, ken	kennst	kennst	kannst	gekant	4
	choose	kiesest	kiesst	for	geforen	6
	climb	klimmst	klimmt	flumm	gefommen	6
	sound	klingst	klingt	flang	gefungen	3
	nip	kneist	kneist	kniff	gefchnitten	1
10	come	kommst	kommst or reg.	kam	gefommen	4
	can, be able	kann	kannst	konnte	geföunt	5
	creep	kriechst	kriecht	kröch	gefrochen	7
	load, summon	lädst	lädt, or labest,	lad (labete)	gefaden	7
	let	lässest	läßt	ließ	gefaffen	3
	run	läufst	läuft	litt	gefommen	3
	suffer	leibest	leidet	lieb	gefetien	2
	lend	leihest	leiht	lass	gefegen	2
	read	lesest	liest	lag	gefelien	1
	lie (jaceve)	liegst	liegt	lag	gefelien	4
10	be extinguished	löschst	löschst	lösch	gefelien	5
	lie (mentri)	lingst	lingt	log	gefelien	3
	grund	maßst	maßt	maßte	gefemalen	2
	avoid *	meibest	meibet	miebt	gefemalen	3
	measure	meißt	meißt	maß	gefemalen	2
	may, like	mag	magst, mag	magte	gefemalen	2
	must	muß	mußt, muß	mußte	gefemalen	2

\* Is weak when used transitively.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.	Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	G
Stechen	fake	nimmst, nimmst	nimm	nähst	nähme	genommen	1
Stechen	name	nennst, nennst	nenne	nannte	nennte	genannt	3
*Reisen	pipe, whistle	pflebst, pflebst	pflege	pflog	pflog	gepflogen	1
*Reisen	chorish	pflegt, pflegt	pflege	pfleg	pflog	gepflogen	3
*Reisen	praise	preihest, preihest	preise	preihte	preihte	gepreiset	6
*Reisen	spring forth	quillst, quillst	quill	quoll	quoll	gequollen	7
Reihen	advise	räthst, räthst	rathe	rath	rath	gerathen	3
Reihen	rub	reibst, reibst	reibe	rieb	rieb	gerieben	3
Reihen	tear	reißest, reißest	reisse	riß	riß	gerissen	3
Reihen	ride	reitest, reitest	reite	ritt	ritt	geritten	3
Reihen	run (a race)	rennst, rennst	renne	rannte	rannte	gerannt	4
Reihen	small (reek)	riechst, riechst	rieche	roch	roch	gerochen	6
Reihen	wrestle	ringst, ringst	ringe	rang	rang	gerungen	6
0	run, flow	rinnt, rinnt	rinne	ranu	ranu	geronnen	7
0	call	ruffst, ruffst	rufe	rief	rief	gerufen	4
0	drink (sup)	sänkst, sänkst	sauge	sog	sog	gesogen	4
0	suck	saugst, saugst	sauge	sog	sog	gesogen	4
0	create	schaffst, schaffst	schaffe	schuf	schuf	geschaffen	5
0	sound	schallst, schallst	schalle	scholl	scholl	geschallen	6
5	separate	scheibest, scheibest	scheide	schied	schied	geschieden	3
5	appear	scheinst, scheinst	scheine	schien	schien	geschieden	3
5	scold	schiltst, schiltst	schilt	schalt	schalt	gescholten	6
5	shear	schierst, schierst	schiere	schor	schor	geschoren	1
5	shove	schiebst, schiebst	schiebe	schob	schob	geschoben	4
5	shoot	schießest, schießest	schieße	schoss	schoss	geschossen	4
5	slay	schindest, schindest	schinde	schund	schund	geschunden	6
5	sleep	schläfst, schläfst	schlafe	schief	schief	geschlafen	7
5	strike	schlägst, schlägst	schlage	schlag	schlag	geschlagen	5
5	sneak	schleichst, schleichst	schleiche	schlich	schlich	geschlichen	3
5	slip, whet	schleiffst, schleiffst	schleife	schliff	schliff	geschliffen	3
5	sit	schleiffest, schleiffest	schleife	schliff	schliff	geschliffen	3
5	shut	schließest, schließest	schließe	schloß	schloß	geschloffen	4

6 Is weak when used transitively. — 7 Is weak in the sense to be won't, also in the sense to cherish, to take care of, except in a few phrases like Stuth pflegen. — 8 Distinguished from the factitive fügen.



120	① schlingen	sling	schlingt, schlingt	schlänge	schlang	schlänge	6
	* schmelzen	smite, sling	schmelzet, schmelzt	schmelze	schmolz	schmolze	3
	① schmelzen	melt, smelt	schmelzet, schmelzt	schmolze	schmolz	schmolze	6
	① schmelzen	snort	schmelzet, schmelzt	schmolze	schmolz	schmolze	4
	* schmelzen	cut	schmelzet, schmelzt	schmolze	schmolz	schmolze	3
	① schmelzen	screw	schmelzet, schmelzt	schmolze	schmolz	schmolze	4
125	① schreiben	write	schreibt, schreibt	schreibe	schrieb	schriebe	3
	① schreiben	cry, shriek	schreit, schreit	schreie	schrie	schriebe	3
	① schreiben	step, stride	schreitet, schreitet	schreite	schritt	schritte	3
	① schreiben	festen	schreibt, schreibt	schreibe	schrieb	schriebe	1
	① schreiben	be silent	schweigt, schweigt	schweige	schwieg	schwäge	3
130*	① schreiben	swell	schwillt, schwillt	schwill	schwoll	schwölle	6
	① schreiben	swim	schwimmt, schwimmt	schwimme	schwamm	schwämme or [schwämme]	6
	① schreiben	vanish	schwindet, schwindet	schwände	schwand	schwände	6
	① schreiben	swing	schwingt, schwingt	schwänge	schwang	schwänge	6
	① schreiben	swear	schwört, schwört	schwöre	schwor, schwur	schwöre or schwüre	5
135	① sehen	see	sieht, sieht	sieh, siehe	sah	sähe	2
	① sehen	boil	siebet, siebet	siede	sott	sötte	4
	① sehen	sing	singt, singt	singe	sang	sänge	6
	① sehen	sink	sinkt, sinkt	sinke	sant	sänke	6
	① sehen	think	denkt, denkt	denke	denk	denke	6
140	① sagen	sit.	sitzt, sitzt	sitze	sass	säße	2
	① sagen	spin	spinnst, spinnst	spinne	spinn	spinn	6
	① sagen	speak	spricht, spricht	spreche	sprach	spräche	1
	① sagen	sprout	sprossst, sprosst	sprosse	spross	sprosse	4
	* ① sagen	spring	springt, springt	springe	sprang	spränge	6
145	① stehen	sting	sticht, sticht	stich	stach	stäche	1
	* ① stehen	stick	sticht, sticht	stiche	stak	stäche	1
	① stehen	stand	steht, steht	stehe	stand or stand	stände or stände	5
	① stehen	steal	stiehlt, stiehlt	stiehl	stahl	stähle	1
	① stehen	mount	steigt, steigt	steige	stieg	stiege	3
150	① sterben	die	stirbt, stirbt	stirb	starb	stürbe	6

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.	Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group.
①stoben	disperse (intr.)	stiebt, stiebt	stiebe	stob	stübe	gestoben	4
*①stinken	stink	stinkt, stinkt	stinke	stank	stänke	gestunken	6
①stößen	push	stößt, stößt	stoße	stieß	stieße	gestoßen	7
①streichen	stroke	streicht, streicht	streich	strich	striehe	gestrichen	3
①streiten	contend	streitet, streitet	streite	stritt	stritte	gestritten	3
tragen	do	trägt, trägt	trage	trug	trüge	getragen	5
treffen	hear	trifft, trifft	triff	traf	träfe	getroffen	1
treiben	hit	treibt, treibe	treibe	trieb	triebe	getrieben	3
treten	drive	tritt, tritt	tritt	trat	träte	getreten	2
*①tiefen	tread	tretet, tretet	trete	tratt	trätte	getreten	4
trügen	drip	trägt, trägt	trüge	trug	trüge	getrogen	4
verberben	deceive	verdirbt, verdirbt	verdirb	verdarb	verdirbe	verberben	6
verdrängen	spoil	verdrängt, verdrängt	verdränge	verdrang	verdränge	verdrungen	4
vergeffen	vex	vergesset, vergesset	vergess	vergaß	vergaße	vergeffen	4
verlieren	forget	verliert, verliert	verlier	verlor	verlore	verloren	4
waschen	lose	wäscht, wäscht	wasche	wusch	wäsche	gewaschen	5
waschen	grow, wax	wäscht, wäscht	wasche	wusch	wäsche	gewaschen	5
weisen	wash	weicht, weicht	weiche	wich	wiche	gewaschen	3
①weisen	yield	weiset, weiset	weise	wies	wiede	gewiesen	3
wenden	show	wendet, wendet	wende	wandte	wende	gewandt	6
werben	turn (tr.)	wirbt, wirbt	wirb	warb	würbe	geworben	6
werfen	throw	wirft, wirft	wirf	warf	würfe, würfe	geworfen	6
wiegen	weigh	wiegt, wiegt	wiege	wog	wöge	gewogen	4
①winden	wind	wenbet, wenbet	winde	wand	wände	gewunden	6
wissen	know	weiß, weißt, weiß	weise	wußte	wüßte	gewußt	3
weisen	wish, will	will, willst, will	will	wollte	wollte	gewollt	4
ziehen	tax with, accuse	zieht, zieht	ziehe	zich	ziehe	gezogen	6
①zingen	draw	zingt, zingt	zing	zog	zöge	gezogen	4
	compel	zwingt, zwingt	zwing	zwang	zwänge	gezwungen	6

122.—The following strong participles from verbs which have passed into the weak conjugation, should be added: —

CLASS 1...	unverhohlen, from	hehlen, conceal,
	gerochen,	,, rächen, avenge.
CLASS 6...	gemolken,	,, melken, milk.
	beflommen,	,, beflemmen, press tight.
	vermorren,	,, verwirren, confuse.
CLASS 7...	gefalten,	,, falten, fold,
	gespalten,	,, spalten, to cleave,
	geschroten,	,, schroten, cut up (shred).
	gesalzen,	,, salzen, salt.

---

## Chapter XI.—Adverbs, Prepositions and Conjunctions.

123. ADJECTIVES AS ADVERBS.—Nearly all adjectives can be used in German as adverbs in their uninflected form, as *ſchön geſſeidet*, *beautifully dressed*; *ſchwer beladen*, *heavily laden*, &c.

*Obs.* In older German, a great number of adverbs were formed from adjectives by a vowel-ending, originally *o* and then *e*, which has now disappeared. A similar change has taken place in English, but we have, except in a limited number of phrases, such as to *talk loud*, to *drink hard*, made an effort to compensate the loss by employing a different form. Chaucer has, for example, *brighté*, *deepé*, in the sense of *brightly*, *deeply*.

124. ADVERBS FORMED BY TERMINATIONS.—These are (1) the genitive termination *ē*; (2) *lich*; (3) *lingē*, *wärtē*.

(1.) *ē* is added both to nouns, as *Abendē*, *in the evening*; *Anfangē*, *at the beginning*; and even *Nachtē*, *at night* (though *Nacht* is feminine); and to adjectives, as *rechtē*, *to the right*; *eilendē*, *hastily*. Notice especially the adverbs in *enē* from superlatives and numerals, as *wenigstēnē*, *at least*; *zweitēnē*, *in the second place*.

(2.) *lich*, as *ly* in English, forms adverbs as well as adjectives. The words formed by adding *lich* to adjectives are naturally adverbs only, as *neulich*, *recently*; *gänzlich*, *entirely*. Words like *täglich*, *ſchriftlich*, formed from nouns, are generally capable of being used either as adjectives or adverbs. Notice the modification when *lich* is added to a monosyllable, as *täglich*, *gänzlich*.

(3.) *lingē*, *wärtē*, as *blindlingē*, *blindly*; *rückwärtē*, *backwards*.

125. COMPOUND ADVERBS.—The German language forms compound adverbs with great facility. Two classes especially call for notice.

(1.) Those made up of an adjective and a noun in the genitive case, or of two nouns, one acting as an adjective to the other. Among these are to be noted specially compounds of

*Weiſe*, as *glücklichweiſe*, *luckily*; *vorzugweiſe*, *especially*; *ſtufenweiſe*, *step by step*.

*Fall*, as *jedenfallē*, *in any case*.

*Seite*, as *meinerſeitē*, *for my part*.

*Theil*, as *größtentheilē*, *for the most part*.

*Ding*, as *allerdingē*, *in any case, certainly*; *ſchlechtdingē*, *without more ado (straightway)*.

Weg, as feincswegs, *by no means*; geradenweges, *straightway*.

Maß, as einigermassen, *in some measure*.

(2.) Those made up of a preposition and its case, as zuletzt, *at last*; insbesondere, *especially*.

*Obs.* While several of these adverbs, as glücklicherweise, feinesweges, are strictly grammatical in form, others are corrupted; thus allenfalls is properly an accusative (allen Fall), to which the s has been added by analogy, schlechterdings a genitive plural, for schlechterdinge, and so on.

126. OTHER ADVERBS. — The ordinary adverbs of place, time, &c., need not be noticed here. Many words classed as prepositions are also adverbs, both alone, as auf! *up!* and in composition, and in bergauf, *up-hill*, &c.

127. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. — The uninflected comparatives of adjectives are used as adverbs; the uninflected superlatives only in a limited number of cases. There are two or three irregular (or rather borrowed) comparisons besides those noticed under the comparison of adjectives, viz.,

gut or wohl	... besser	... am besten,
halb	... eher	... am ehesten (halbist also used),
gern	... lieber	... am liebsten.

128. FORMS OF SUPERLATIVE ADVERB. — There are four distinct forms of the superlative adverb, as, for example, from hoch—am höchsten, auf's höchsten, höchst, höchstens.

(1.) am höchsten, which is generally used to translate the English superlative adjective, when a thing is compared with itself under other conditions (*see Syntax*), is also used adverbially; we can say both

das Schiff, welches am schnellsten segelt, comparing it with other ships, and

dieses Schiff, wenn es am schnellsten segelt, comparing its performance now with its performance at some other time.

(2.) The form auf das or auf's is the most usual way of rendering the *absolute* superlative adverb.

Er empfing mich auf's freundlichste, *he received me in the most friendly way, or most kindly*.

(3.) The simple uninflected form is also an absolute superlative, but its use is limited; it is most common in expressions of courtesy at the end of a letter, &c., as ergebenst,

*most devotedly*; dankbarſt, *most gratefully*. Notice höchſt, *extremely, very*; jüngſt, *lately*.

(4.) The form in enſ is limited to a few words with special meanings—höchſtenſ, *at most, at best*; wenigſtenſ, mindeſtenſ, *at least, &c.*

### 129. NOTES ON CERTAIN ADVERBS.—Erſt.

Erſt must often be rendered *only, not until*, as er iſt erſt geſtern angekommen, *he only arrived yesterday (i.e., yesterday was the first time he arrived)*.

130. **Schon.**—Schon, *already*, is often attached to a single word rather than to the whole sentence, and may often be translated *even*. To give its full meaning often requires a little explanation.

Nach einer Einrichtung die ſchon Carl der Fünfte gemacht hatte, *according to an arrangement which even Charles V. had made (i.e., a sovereign who lived as far back as Charles V.)*.

131. **NOW.**—Jetzt is simply an adverb of time; nun implies an inference (*now, after what has happened*).

132. **Doch, ELLIPTICAL.**—Doch (*see* § 136) is often difficult to render, because it answers an implied objection. Perhaps *after all* is the nearest English equivalent—

Die Treue iſt doch keine Wañn, *loyalty is after all no idle fancy (men may say it is, but yet it is not.)*

133. **CONCESSIVE ADVERBS.**—Freilich, zwar (*for ze wäre, zu wahr, at or in truth*), and frequently wohl are concessive, meaning *to be sure, it must be granted that, &c.*, equivalent to *sane, quidem* in Latin.

134. **THEREFORE.**—Therefore, in English, sometimes denotes a real result, sometimes only an inference. If the second fact is to be represented as a real consequence of the first, daher, darum, deßwegen or deßhalb is used; if only as a logical consequence, an inference, ſoßlich, alſo, mithin, demnach (*accordingly*).

Es hat geregnet; daher ſind die Wege ſchlüpfrig, *because the state of the roads is a real result of the rain.*

But not

Der Barometer ſteigt; daher gibt es beßeres Wetter,

because the rising of the barometer is not a cause of better weather, but simply a fact from which we infer that there will be better weather.

135. **Auch**.—*Auch* means *also, even*. When it occurs in a clause beginning with *wer, was, wo, wie*, it is conveniently rendered by the English suffix *ever* in *whoever, whatever, &c.* It should be noticed that *auch* is always separated from *wer, wo, &c.*, as—

Wer er auch sei, *whoever he may be.*

*Wenn auch* is best translated *even though, even if*. As *wenn* is often omitted in conditional sentences (see *Syntax*), it is necessary to be careful in translating *auch*.

136. **Noch** and **doch**.—*Noch* means *still, yet, of time*, and must be distinguished from *doch*, which means *nevertheless*. *Noch nicht* means *not yet*; *noch einmal*, *once more*. Notice *noch eine Flasche Wein*, *another (i.e., an additional) bottle of wine*, to be distinguished from *eine andere Flasche*.

137. **THEN**.—*Damals* always refers to a definite past time; *dann* is used with reference to something in a preceding clause or sentence, and thus either (1) answers to *erst* (*first...next*), or (2) refers to some time, past, present, or future, last spoken of; or (3) answers to *wenn*.

*Obs.* *Denn* is often used, especially in questions; like the French *donc*, to mean *then, accordingly*.

138. **WHEN**.—*When*, asking a question, *direct* or *indirect* (“*When are you coming?*” “*I want to know when you are coming?*”) is an interrogative adverb, and is translated by *wann*. In other circumstances it is a conjunction, and is rendered by *wenn, als, or da* (see *Syntax* of temporal sentences). Notice *bis wann?* *till when?* *how long?* *seit wann, since when?* *how long?* (with a past tense).

*Obs.* When *wenn?* means *under what circumstances?* it is translated by *wann?* as, *Wenn ist ein Dreieck einem andern gleich?* *when is one triangle equal to another?* In German of the last century the distinction between *wann* and *wenn* is not always accurately observed.

139. **So** is used (1) like the English *so*, to qualify adjectives and other adverbs, or before *that*; (2) in cases where it seems in English to be superfluous, to answer to words like *though, if, as, when*, expressed or understood (*apodosis*):—

Wenn die Noth am höchsten, so ist Gottes Hülfe am nächsten,  
*man's extremity is God's opportunity;*

Wenn euer Gewissen rein ist, so seid ihr frei, *if your conscience is clear, you are free;*

(see Syntax). (3) So often introduces a *subordinate* sentence, and is then closely joined to an adjective or adverb. The nearest English equivalent is either *however* (especially when auch follows) before the adjective, &c., or *as* put after it, but there is room for a good deal of variety in translating it.

So große Erwartungen auch ganz Europa jetzt hegte, so ging doch alles ganz anders.

*Great as were the expectations all Europe now cherished, everything turned out differently* (where we might also say *despite the expectations*).

Notice especially in this connection so lang, *as long as*, so bald, *as soon as*, so weit, *as far as*. (4) In old German, and consequently in modern ballad poetry, so is often best rendered by *if*.\*

So du kämpfest ritterlich,

So freut dein alter Vater sich.

*If you fight like a knight, then your old father will be glad at heart.*

140. PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.—The following prepositions always take an accusative:—durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider. They may be remembered by the dogrel—

*Cum durch, für, gegen, wider, um et ohne*

*Accusativum semper pone.*

Bis also, when used, as it is occasionally, as a preposition, takes the accusative. So also does fonder.

141. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE.

Schreib mit, nach, nächst, gemäß, nebst, sammt,

Bei, seit, von, zu, zuwider,

Entgegen, gegenüber, außer, aus,

Stets mit dem Dativ nieder.

Some of these, as gemäß, nächst, &c., are not properly prepositions, but may conveniently be classed with them.

\* Cf. Coriolanus III., i.

that he would pawn his fortunes  
To hopeless restitution, so he might  
Be call'd your vanquisher.



142. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.—The following govern the accusative when they denote *motion to a place*, the dative when they denote *rest at a place*, or *motion in or at a place* :—

**an, auf, neben, in and hinter,  
über, zwischen, vor and unter.**

It is important to bear in mind exactly under what circumstances the accusative is required after these prepositions when motion is spoken of. For example, suppose a sovereign to be with his army; mark out a space in front of him, and call it *vor dem König*. Then of a person standing in that place we say, of course, *er steht vor dem König*. We also say *er reitet vor dem König*, in speaking of an officer riding in front to clear the way, etc. But if a person at the side of the king, or behind him, comes into the space in front, we must say *er tritt vor dem König*.

#### 143. SO-CALLED PREPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE.

—A number of words (nouns, participles, &c.), have come to be used very much like prepositions, and generally govern a genitive. They may conveniently be divided into groups :—

(1.) Participles, viz., *während, during*; *ungeachtet, unerachtet, notwithstanding*. The real construction here is a genitive absolute; *während des Prozesses* is, like *during the suit*, the equivalent of *durante lite*; *ungeachtet seines Rechts* of *jure non obstante, his right notwithstanding*. Similar, but less common, are *unbeschadet (unbeschadet seines Rechts, without prejudice to his right), unangehen, without reference to*.

(2.) Nouns with preposition expressed or omitted. Such are: *anstatt or statt, instead of* (*Statt = stead, place*); *Kraft, in virtue of* (in *Kraft*); *laut, according to* (*nach Laut, after the sound of*); *zufolge, agreeably to* (*in the train of*); *wegen, on account of* (the original form is shown in the phrase *von Amts wegen, by authority*); *um ... willen, for the sake of*; *troß, in spite of* (*Troß means defiance*); *inmitten, in the midst of*. To the same class belong *halben (halber)*, and its compounds *unterhalb, on the under side of*, &c.; and the compounds of *Seite, jenseit(ig), diesseit(ig)*.

(3.) *Mittelft, vermittelst, by means of*; *längs, along*; *unweit, unfern, not far from*; *binnen, within*, are less easily accounted for.

*Obs.* Of these prepositions several are found with a dative as well as with a genitive. Thus *benungeachtet* is found as well as *beßengeachtet*, and *troß*, *zufolge*, *längs*, *hin*, and the compounds of *halb* often take a dative. *Entlang*, *along*, is generally an adverb following an accusative, sometimes a preposition preceding and governing a genitive or an accusative.

144. PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS.—Ordinary monosyllabic prepositions stand before the nouns they govern. The only exception is *nach*, which occasionally follows its case. Of the others *halb*, *halber*, *zumider* always, *zunächst*, *entgegen*, *gegenüber* generally, follow their cases. *Wegen*, *ungeachtet*, *gemäß*, sometimes precede, and sometimes follow; *zufolge* takes a genitive when it precedes, a dative when it follows its case.

The meaning of the prepositions will be discussed below.

145. CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIONS.—The chief difference between conjunctions depends on the answer to the question—are the sentences they connect *coordinate*, or is one *subordinate* to the other? — in other words, are they two independent sentences, or is one incapable of expressing complete sense without being attached to another sentence? The words, *when I come*, do not make complete sense by themselves, but have a meaning only when appended to some principal sentence, e.g., *When I come, I will settle the affair*. Hence we divide conjunctions into (1) *coordinative conjunctions*, as *and*, *but*, *or*, connecting one principal sentence, or one subordinate sentence, with another of the same kind; and (2) *subordinative conjunctions*, as *if*, *when*, *as*. The latter class, in German, always throw the verb of the clause they introduce to the end; coordinative conjunctions have no such power.

It should be added that many adverbs play the part of conjunctions, and join sentences. Much that belongs to the meaning, &c., of *subordinative* conjunctions will be better discussed in the Syntax, apropos of subordinate sentences.

146. *AND, OR, NOR*.—*Und*, *and*, *oder*, *or*, are used exactly as in English. There is no exact equivalent of *both ... and*; *ſowohl ... als* is the nearest.

*Aber ſowohl die Lage, als die Befeftigung der Stadt ſchienen jedem Angriff Troß zu bieten (Sch.). But both the ſituation of the town, and the way in which it was fortified, ſeemed to defy any attempt to take it.*

As in English *not only...but also*, so in German nicht nur (bloß, allein)...sondern auch, serve to couple both sentences and words; of course, with a certain stress on the latter of the two words or sentences. Adverbs, too, like auch, also; außerdem, besides; gleichfalls, likewise, serve to connect sentences.

Entweder...oder answer exactly to *either...or*, and weder...noch to *neither...nor*. It should be noticed (1) that when entweder or weder begins a sentence, it causes, like other adverbs, the nominative to follow the verb; oder does nothing of the kind; (2) that weder...noch are treated as *copulative* conjunctions, so that two singular nouns connected by them require a plural verb (Syntax).

Obs. 1. *Weder* is a contracted form meaning exactly the same as the Latin *neutrum*, *neither of the two things*; *noch*, *nor*, is the same word as the Latin *nec*, and quite distinct from *noch*, *yet*. *Entweder* means *one of the two things*, Latin *alterutrum*; *oder* contains the same root as *etwas*, and so really means *somehow, possibly*. Thus *entweder A oder B* strictly means—*one of two things, A, possibly B*. It should be added that the use of *entweder* or *weder* is not limited to cases where there are but *two* alternatives.

147. BUT.—The two chief words by which we may render *but* are *sondern* and *aber*. *Sondern* is used only after a negative sentence or expression, *aber* may be used after either a negative or an affirmative phrase. *Sondern* contradicts flatly, *aber* only qualifies the preceding statement. Thus

Ich leugne es nicht, sondern ich zweifle daran, disclaims the idea of *denying* much more strongly than Ich leugne es nicht, aber ich zweifle daran. The former might be paraphrased—“Denying it is not the question; my attitude is simply that of doubt;” the latter “I will not quite say that I deny it, but I do doubt it.” Neither *aber* nor *sondern* affect the order of the sentence, but *aber* is sometimes put later in its clause, and then serves to emphasize some word or words in it. Thus—

Man sagt, wir seien krank; wir sind aber in guter Gesundheit.

Ihr seid krank; wir aber sind in guter Gesundheit.

Wir fränkelt; krank aber durften wir nicht heißen.

In the first sentence, the second clause is opposed bodily to the first; in the other two the opposition is between single words in each clause.

Obs. 1. *But*, in English, is often very like a preposition, meaning *except*. It is then rendered either by the prepo-

sition außer, by the participle ausgenommen, or by the conjunction als.

Niemand außer ihm war da, *no one but he (or him) was there.*

Alle Brüder, ausgenommen der älteste, *all the brothers, but the eldest.*

Fest war keine Wohnung, als das Grab, *no dwelling but the grave was safe.*

Obs. 2. The etymology of sondern and aber throws light on their use. Sondern in the same word as our *sunder*, and therefore naturally makes a distinct opposition. Aber is properly *again*, and thus suggests only a second thought. It retains this meaning in *abermals*, *again*, *tausende und aber tausende*, *thousands and thousands*. Notice that aber is often used as we use *now*, at the beginning of a new sentence.

148. EQUIVALENTS OF Aber, sondern.—There are many adverbs which may be employed as the equivalents of sondern and aber, with different shades of meaning. Of these *vielmehr*, *nay rather, but on the contrary*, is nearly equivalent to sondern, but accentuates the opposition rather more strongly. Allein is used much as we use *only*, with a sort of affected modesty (*meiosis*). "I should say, there is only one thing makes me hesitate"—that one thing being really most important. Doch and jedoch, which is not quite so strong, and expresses a limitation rather than an antithesis or opposition, answer to the English *yet* or *though* (used as an adverb). Doch, if it stands first, generally, but not necessarily throws the nominative after the verb. Dennoch is used to contradict rather an inference that might have been drawn, than an actual statement.

Niemand sollte fehlen, und dennoch fehlte der eine,

Keine der Füße, der Schelm,

where to complete the sense, one ought to supply some such words as "and all presented themselves" after Niemand sollte fehlen.

Again, we might say—

Er ist nicht eingeladen worden, und dennoch ist er gekommen,  
but not

Er ist gekommen und dennoch ist er nicht eingeladen worden.

149. THE—THE.—The word *the* with the comparative in phrases like *the more...the better* is not of course the article, but equivalent in the one case to a relative adverb, in the other to a demonstrative adverb. The former *the* is rendered in German by je, the latter generally by desto, sometimes by um so, or by a second je.

Je mehr der Vorrath schmolz, desto schrecklicher wuchs der Hunger (Sch.), *the more the stores melted away, the more terribly did the famine increase*, or more idiomatically, *the famine became more and more terrible, as the stores gradually melted away.*

*Obs.* In English *the...the* are really the ablative case of a pronoun which may be either demonstrative or relative; in German *dessen* is the same, *je* an old case of a noun meaning *time*; so that *je mehr, desto besser*, really means *what time there are more, thereby is it better*.

150. AS is used in several ways in English:—

(1) It is a conjunction, introducing a comparison, and is then rendered by *wie*:—

*Ich singe, wie der Vogel singt, I sing as the bird sings.*

In such cases the verb of the second clause is often omitted both in English and in German.

(2) It means *as for example*,—*wie*.

(3) It means *in the capacity of*,—*als*.

*Ich komme als Gesandter des Gerichts, I come as ambassador of the court.*

(4) It is the second *as* in *as great as*, *as soon as*. It is then rendered by *als*, though in several expressions as *sobald*, *as soon as*; *so weit*, *as far as*, it is entirely dropped.

(5) It is the first *as* in *as great as*, &c. It is then rendered by *so* in a negative sentence, by *so* or *ebenso* in an affirmative one.

(6) It is a conjunction of *time* or *cause*—generally *da*.

For the way of translating *as if*, and for other details, the reader is referred to the Syntax.

151. BEFORE—AFTER. As these words are in English sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, it is necessary to be careful in translating them into German, in fact, into most languages. The following are their equivalents:—

<i>before</i> , adverb,	<i>schon, früher, vorher.</i>
preposition,	<i>vor (dat. or acc.)</i>
conjunction,	<i>ehe, bevor.</i>
<i>after</i> , adverb (rarely so in English),	<i>nachher, später.</i>
preposition,	<i>nach (dat.)</i>
conjunction,	<i>nachdem.</i>

152. SINCE may be a preposition, and is then translated by *seit*, or a conjunction, either (1) of time, *seitdem*, or (2) of cause *da* or *weil*.

## Chapter XII.—Prefixes to Verbs.

153. German is remarkable for its large number of compound verbs, and the power it still retains of forming such verbs. The prefixes are for the most part prepositions or adverbs in common use, a few are no longer used except as prefixes. The classification of prefixes will be found in §§ 115—118. The present chapter on the meaning of these little words is necessarily somewhat long, inasmuch as in German, as in other tongues, meaning after meaning has been developed as the language grew, and the existing vocabulary contains not merely words representing the signification of a prefix now most in vogue, but survivals of most of its different stages. For example, when we read in a German guide-book that a sequestered valley in the Tyrol is *nach nicht berengländert*, we gather at once that the new-coined word means *spoilt by the presence of Englishmen*, but we should be quite wrong in interpreting older words like *vergrößern*, *vergöttern*, on the same principle.

### A.—INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

154. *Über* is originally a preposition meaning *over*, *about*, and is identical with *bei*, the sense of which is more restricted. It forms verbs from other verbs, from nouns, and from adjectives.

(1.) From other verbs. The following cases may be distinguished:—

(a) The simple verb is intransitive (including verbs with a dative: see Syntax); the compound applies its action to an object, and is transitive. Thus:—

<i>sprechen</i> , <i>speak</i> ,	<i>besprechen</i> (etwas), <i>discuss</i> , <i>talk of</i> .
<i>weinen</i> , <i>weep</i> ,	<i>berweinen</i> (einen Freund), <i>weep for</i> , <i>bewail</i> .
<i>steigen</i> (auf), <i>climb</i> (intr.)	<i>besteigen</i> (einen Berg), <i>climb</i> , <i>scale</i> .
<i>kämpfen</i> (mit), <i>fight</i> (intr.)	<i>bekämpfen</i> (den Feind), <i>combat</i> .
<i>schießen</i> , <i>shoot</i> ,	<i>beschießen</i> (eine Stadt), <i>cannonade</i> .
<i>drohen</i> (with dat.), <i>threaten</i> ,	<i>bedrohen</i> (with acc.), <i>threaten</i> .

Compare in English *wail* and *bewail*, *speak* and *bespeak*.

(3) The simple verb is transitive; the compound alters, so to speak, the direction of its action, and the accusative of

the simple verb becomes a dative of the instrument with *mit*. Thus:

{	sprennen (Wasser auf den Boden),
{	besprennen (den Boden mit Wasser);
{	hängen (Kränze auf einen Grabstein),
{	behängen (einen Grabstein mit Kränzen).

In English *sprinkle* and *bepsinkle* are a good instance; frequently, however, our language uses the same verb in both ways.

(γ) The simple verb is transitive, and the compound governs the same accusative, differing but little in sense from it. There is generally, however, some idea of *completion*, *all over*, &c., to be detected. Thus:—

decken,	bedecken,	<i>cover</i> .
fördern,	befördern,	<i>further, promote</i> .

(δ) In a few intransitive compounds the force of *be* is simply intensive, as in *behagen, suit*; *bestehen, stand fast, consist*; *bekommen, suit\**; *beginnen* (from root of *gähnen, yawn, open*) *begin*; *bleiben* (from *be* and *leiben, akin to leave*) *remain*.

(ε) In one or two existing words *be* has the sense generally belonging to *bei* in composition, *aside*. Such are *begraben, bestatten, bury*. Hence a *privative* use (nearly extinct), as in *benehmen†* (*Einem Etwas*), *take away*; *sich begeben* (with *gen.*), *betake oneself from, resign*, and the English *behead*.

(2.) From adjectives it forms verbs meaning to *make* (good, beautiful, &c.) Thus from:—

feucht, <i>damp</i> ,	befeuchten, <i>moisten</i> .
ruhig, <i>quiet</i> ,	beruhigen, <i>calm</i> .

also from the comparative:—

reicher, <i>richer</i> ,	bereichern, <i>enrich</i> .
--------------------------	-----------------------------

(3.) From nouns it forms verbs meaning to *furnish with*, as from:—

Grenze, <i>boundary</i> ,	begrenzen, <i>supply with a boundary, limit</i> .
Mantel, <i>cloak</i> ,	bemanteln, <i>supply with a cloak, cloak</i> .
Zeuge, <i>witness</i> ,	bezeugen, <i>furnish with a witness, attest</i> .

\* Note also *bekommen* (trans.), *come by, get*.

† Side by side with *benehmen, take away*, exists *sich benehmen, behave*, and with the English *behead*, the German *befaupten, maintain, affirm*.

also from the plural:—

Völker, *nations*, bevölkern, *people*.

155. **Ent** (in empfinden, empfangen, written emp\*) is probably identical with the Greek *ana*, the Latin *an* (in *anhela-*, and in many words under the form *ad-*, *in-*), and similar prefixes in other languages, and originally meant *up*. Most of the compound verbs it forms are from other verbs, some from nouns and adjectives. Thus we have—

(1) From simple verbs:—

(a) In the original meaning *up*, as from:—

springen, <i>spring</i> ,	entspringen, <i>spring up, start up</i> .
stehen, <i>stand</i> ,	entstehen, <i>rise up</i> .
tauchen, <i>dive</i> ,	enttauchen, <i>dive up, emerge</i> .
werfen, <i>throw</i> ,	entwerfen, <i>throw up (Anglicè off) a plan</i> .

Notice especially words connected with flame, entzünden, *light up*; entbrennen, *blaze up*, &c., which may, however, be equally well put under the next head.

(β) With *up* is closely connected the idea of *beginning*, as in our phrase “to strike up a tune.” Thus we have from:—

blühen, <i>bloom</i> ,	entblühen, <i>come into flower</i> .
schlafen, <i>sleep</i> ,	entschlafen, <i>fall asleep (generally of death)</i> .
finden, <i>find, feel</i> ,	empfinden, <i>begin to feel</i> .
zucken, <i>twitch, make</i>	entzucken, <i>begin to twitch, and applied to</i>
<i>to palpitate</i> ,	<i>the senses ravish, put into raptures</i> .

(γ) With upward motion is often associated the notion of *reversal* (the most important meaning of the prefix), as from:—

beden, <i>cover</i> ,	entbeden, <i>uncover, discover</i> .
laden, <i>load</i> ,	entladen, <i>unload</i> .
siegeln, <i>seal</i> ,	entsiegeln, <i>unseal</i> .

The corresponding English prefix is *un*, in *unbend, unload*, &c., a prefix to be distinguished from the *un* of adjectives, *unwise, unsound*, &c.

(δ) Hence also the notion of *separation, removal*, as in entföhren, *lead away, kidnap*; entlaufen, *run away*; entfagen, *remove by*

\* Empfehlen is probably a corruption of anbesefhen. See the late Prof. Key's *Philological Essays*, p. 30, a book to which I am indebted for a great deal of the contents of this chapter.



*saying, renounce.* In *entsprechen, answer* (much used of one thing *answering or corresponding to another*), *entgelten, requite*, perhaps the idea is that of *taking up* (the conversation or injury).

(2) The sense of *ent* noticed under the head ( $\gamma$ ) is not only the commonest in compounds formed from verbs, but is also very freely used in making derivatives from nouns and adjectives, as from:—

heilig, <i>holy,</i>	entheiligen, <i>desecrate.</i>
Völker, <i>peoples,</i>	entvölkern, <i>depopulate.</i>
Art, <i>kind, genus,</i>	entarten, <i>degenerate.</i>
Larve, <i>mask,</i>	entlarven, <i>unmask.</i>

*Ent* is in such words the opposite of *be*. It is worthy of notice that in forming new words, it is this sense of *ent* that naturally suggests itself.

156. **Er**, like *ent*, seems originally to have meant *up*. But, while there are sufficient examples in modern German to parallel the various uses of *ent*, the most familiar meaning of *er*, when it forms compound verbs from simple verbs is that of *reaching up to, attaining*, and as a prefix forming verbs from adjectives, that of *making*.

(1.) From simple verbs we have—

(a) in the meaning *up* and derived meanings as for *ent*, from:—

halten, <i>hold,</i>	erhalten, <i>hold up, maintain, receive.</i>
bauen, <i>build,</i>	erbauen, <i>build up, edify.</i>

beginning:—

brausen, <i>roar,</i>	erbrausen, <i>begin roaring.</i>
staunen, <i>be astonished,</i>	erstaunen, <i>become astonished.</i>

reversal:—

schließen, <i>shut,</i>	erschließen, <i>unshut, open.</i>
-------------------------	-----------------------------------

( $\beta$ ) In the sense *again, back*, connected with reversal from—

lassen, <i>let go,</i>	erlassen, <i>let go again, let off (eine Strafe).</i>
setzen, <i>place,</i>	ersetzen, <i>replace (by a substitute).</i>
kennen, <i>know,</i>	erkennen, <i>know again, recognise.</i>
kaufen, <i>buy,</i>	erkaufen, <i>buy again, redeem.</i>
[innern], <i>put in,</i>	erinnern, <i>put in again, make intimate again with, remind.</i>

(γ) Perhaps the most characteristic meaning of *er* is that of *reaching up to*, and so *attaining*, by the action of the simple verb. Thus we have from—

eilen, <i>hasten,</i>	ereilen, <i>reach by hastening, overtake.</i>
leben, <i>live,</i>	erleben, <i>live to see, experience.</i>
denken, <i>think,</i>	erdenken, <i>get by thinking, excogitate.</i>
flehen, <i>entreat,</i>	erflehen, <i>get by entreaty.</i>
lauern, <i>lie in wait,</i>	erlauern, <i>get by lying in wait, surprise.</i>

Sometimes the idea of *attainment* is absent—

fehnen, <i>long,</i>	erfehnen, <i>long after.</i>
----------------------	------------------------------

It is in this group that new compounds with *er* are still formed.

(δ) When *er*, like *ent*, denotes *removal*, there is associated with it the idea of *disappearance* or *death*, as from—

löschen, <i>quench, be quenched,</i>	erlöschen, <i>quench or be quenched</i>
sterben, <i>die,</i>	ersterben, <i>die out.</i> [completely.]
tränken, <i>make to drink,</i>	ertränken, <i>drown.</i>

(ε) With adjectives *er* forms verbs meaning *to make* or *become*, a sense easily derived from 1 (α), as from—

schwer, <i>difficult,</i>	erschweren, <i>make difficult.</i>
neuer (comp.), <i>newer,</i>	erneuern, <i>renew.</i>
grün, <i>green,</i>	ergrünen, <i>grow green.</i>
roth, <i>red,</i>	erröthen, <i>blush.</i>
blaß, <i>pale,</i>	erblaffen, <i>turn pale, die.</i>

157. **Ge** appears to be identical in meaning, if not in origin, with the Latin *cum*, *con*. As a prefix it does little more than strengthen the meaning of the simple verb, *i.e.*, it adds a notion of *completeness*, *permanence*, &c. Hence (1) it is often difficult to see much difference of meaning between the simple and compound verbs, where both exist; and (2) compounds of *ge* with obsolete verbs have often survived, while the simple forms have disappeared, as *gebären*, *genesen*, *gelingen*.

One or two words call for notice, as *gefallen*, *please*, properly *to fall in with*; *gestehen*, *confess*, properly *stand by* (a statement);\* *gewähren* (from the

\* *gerathen*, *to fall* (*e.g.* unter Räuber, *among thieves*) is obviously from *rathen*, formed from an earlier verb probably meaning *to move on, further*. (Weigand.)

root of *Behr*,\* and cognate words), *protect*, *warrant*, *vouchsafe* (to answer for one's getting something, and so to grant it); whence *gewähren lassen* (to let a person answer for the consequences of his actions, i.e., *let him do as he likes*).

*Obs.* Notice a few syncopated compounds of *ge*, as *glücken*, from *gelücken*, (*luck*); *glauben*, from *gelauben*, the same root as *erlauben*, &c.

158. **Hinter**, A PREPOSITION MEANING *BEHIND*.—In composition its meanings are (1) *back*, *behind*, as in *leaving behind*; (2) *secretly*, behind one's back; (3) *deception*, as in the phrase *hinter das Licht führen*, *to take in*. Thus we have from—

bringen, <i>bring</i> ,	hinterbringen, <i>bring secretly (news)</i> .
lassen; <i>leave</i> ,	hinterlassen, <i>leave behind</i> .
gehen, <i>go</i> ,	hintergehen, <i>deceive</i> .
halten, <i>hold</i> ,	hinterhalten, <i>hold back, withhold (einem etwas)</i> .
treiben, <i>drive</i> ,	hintertreiben, <i>hinder (generally by secret intrigues)</i> .

159. **Ver** is a prefix which appears in many forms in older German, and is identical with *for* in the English *forswear*, *forgive*, *foredo*, *forbid*. It has in some verbs a privative sense, in many verbs a sense corresponding to one of the meanings of the English word *over*.† It forms verbs from simple verbs, from nouns, and from adjectives.

(1.) From simple verbs :—

(a) In the meaning *away*, as from—

reisen, <i>travel</i> ,	verreisen, <i>travel away</i> .
drängen, <i>press, thrust</i> ,	verdrängen, <i>thrust away, supplant</i> .
beten, <i>pray</i> ,	verbeten, <i>deprecate (try and avert by prayer)</i> .

(β) Hence with a sense of *exhausting*, *spoiling*, &c., as from—

hungern, <i>starve</i> ,	verhungern, <i>starve to death</i> .
spielen, <i>play</i> ,	verspielen, <i>play away, lose at play</i> .

\* A root meaning *man*, or *protector* (Lat. *vir*), familiar to us in the words *weir-wolf* (man-wolf), *wehrgeld* (the fine paid to the relatives of a murdered man).

† The generally accepted view is that it is identical with Greek *παρα*, Latin *per*, and conveys the idea of passing beside, and so on to excess or to destruction. Prof. Key (Essays, pp. 10 to 39) traces all its meanings to the sense *over*, and considers it to be a shortened form of *über*.

hallen, <i>sound</i> ,	verhallen, <i>die away</i> (of a sound).
blühen, <i>bloom</i> ,	verblühen, <i>come to an end of blooming, fade.</i>
rufen, <i>call</i> ,	verrufen, <i>decry.</i>
zweifeln, <i>doubt</i> ,	verzweifeln, <i>despair of.</i>

Under the same head come such cases as from—

laufen, <i>run</i> ,	verlaufen (Einem den Weg), <i>cross one's path, get in one's way.</i>
bauen, <i>build</i> ,	verbauen, <i>obstruct by building, build out.</i>

(γ) It has often the meaning *amiss*, as from—

rechnen, <i>calculate</i> ,	(sich) verrechnen, <i>miscalculate.</i>
hören, <i>hear</i> ,	sich verhören, <i>hear amiss.</i>
rathen, <i>advise</i> ,	verrathen, <i>betray.</i>
achten, <i>esteem</i> ,	verachten, <i>contemn, despise.</i>

(δ) It also sometimes reverses the action of the verb, as—

lernen, <i>learn</i> ,	verlernen, <i>unlearn.</i>
bieten, <i>bid</i> ,	verbieten, <i>forbid.</i>

(ε) In the meaning *over, excessively*, we have from—

alten, <i>grow old</i> ,	veralten, <i>become superannuated, obsolete.</i>
braten, <i>roast</i> ,	verbraten, <i>over-do</i> (meat).
pfeffern, <i>pepper</i> ,	verpfeffern, <i>over-pepper.</i> [high.
steigen, <i>climb</i> ,	sich versteigen, <i>over-climb oneself; climb too</i>
messen, <i>measure</i> ,	sich vermessen, <i>measure oneself too highly, presume.</i>

(ζ) In verfechten, vertheibigen,\* *defend*, and perhaps vertreten, *represent*; versehen, *provide*, it seems as if ver meant simply *for, on behalf of*.

(η) In some verbs it is difficult to assign a very definite meaning to ver; sometimes it simply strengthens the original force of the verb, as from—

halten, <i>hold</i> ,	sich verhalten, <i>hold oneself, behave.</i>
wechselfn, <i>change</i> ,	verwechselfn, <i>interchange, exchange.</i>
nehmen, <i>take</i> ,	vernehmen, <i>take in, hear, understand.</i>

Sometimes it has the same effect as be, making transitive verbs out of intransitive, as from—

\* From the being a corruption of tagebing, the *thing* or judicial assembly on a set day. The Scandinavian Parliament is called Storting, and we have the same idea in *hustings* (*house-thing*), the assembly of the houses or *curiæ*.

lachen, <i>laugh</i> ,	verlachen, <i>deride</i> .
fluchen, <i>curse (intr.)</i> ,	verfluchen, <i>curse (trans.)</i> .
schweigen, <i>be silent</i> ,	verschweigen, <i>conceal</i> .
dienen, <i>serve</i> ,	verdienen, <i>deserve</i> .
danke, <i>thank</i> ,	verdanken, <i>have to thank for, owe</i> .

(2.) From nouns, *ver* forms verbs meaning *to cover with, to change into*, occasionally like *be, to furnish with*, as from—

Gold, <i>gold</i> ,	vergolden, <i>cover with gold, gild</i> .
Glas, <i>glass</i> ,	verglazen, <i>cover with glass, glaze, or turn into</i>
Stein, <i>stone</i> ,	versteinen, <i>cover with stones.</i> [glass.
	versteinern, <i>petrify</i> .
Körper, <i>body</i> ,	verkörpern, <i>furnish with a body, embody</i> .
Anlaß, <i>cause</i> ,	veranlassen, <i>furnish with a cause, cause</i> .
occasion,	

(3.) From adjectives, verbs meaning *to make*, sometimes verbs meaning *to become*, as from

kurz, <i>short</i> ,	verkürzen, <i>shorten</i> .
größer, <i>greater</i> ,	vergrößern, <i>increase</i> .
deutsch, <i>German</i> ,	verdeutschten, <i>turn into German.*</i>
kühl, <i>cool</i> ,	verfühlen, <i>get cool</i> .

*Obs.* The compounds of *ver* are among the most difficult, especially as some of them have several different meanings. Thus *vergeben* means *to give away, to forgive, to misdeal (cards), to poison (obsolete)*; *verhauen*, *to cut down or short*; and also *to barricade (i.e., stop the road by cutting down trees)*; *verhören*, *to hear completely (as a judge), or to fail to hear*; *verlegen*, *to mislay, (Einem den Weg) to stop the way, to remove, or to publish†*; *versagen*, *to deny, or to promise, engage (consent by saying)*; *versehen*, *overlook, err, or provide (look out for, as in versehen)*; *vertreten*, *to stop the way, to represent (step forward for), to trample down, (sich den Fuß) to hurt one's foot by treading*.

160. **Wider**, *against*, English *with, gain*, in composition, as from—

stehen, <i>stand</i> ,	widerstehen, <i>withstand</i> .
sprechen, <i>speak</i> ,	widersprechen, <i>contradict, gainsay</i> .

161. **Zer** denotes separation—all *to pieces*, as from—

schlagen, <i>beat</i> ,	zerschlagen, <i>beat to pieces</i> .
setzen, <i>put</i> ,	zersetzen, <i>decompose</i> .
stören, <i>disturb</i> ,	zerstören, <i>destroy</i> .

\* Prof. Key compares *übersetzen, put over from one language to another, translate*.

† *Verlegen* is sometimes like *versehen* used in the meaning of *provide*; hence it is used of persons who provide paper, types, &c., for a book to be printed.

## B.—SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

162. *Ab*, a particle originally meaning *down*, as it still does in *auf und ab*, *up and down*; *bergab*, *downhill*; *herab*, *hinab*. In older German it was much used as a preposition, and many of its compounds will be best understood by imagining a case (often *sich*) after it. It answers most nearly to the Latin *de*; consequently many of the English equivalents of its compounds begin with *de*. Its meanings are:—

(1.) *down, down from, off*, both literally and metaphorically, as from—

legen, <i>lay</i> ,	ablegen, <i>put off</i> (clothes, armour, &c.), <i>deposit</i> .
bitten, <i>beg</i> ,	abbitten, <i>beg off, apologise for</i> .
danke, <i>thank</i> ,	abdanken, <i>dismiss</i> (properly with thanks).
sagen, <i>say</i> ,	absagen, <i>cry off, renounce, refuse</i> .
nehmen, <i>take</i> ,	abnehmen (intr.), <i>decrease</i> .

and so to strengthen verbs where the idea of decrease already exists—

fürzen, <i>shorten</i> ,	abfürzen, <i>shorten</i> .
mager, <i>lean</i> ,	abmagern, <i>emaciate</i> .

(2.) In a few words, the idea of taking from another suggests that of getting for oneself, so that *ab* nearly equals *er*,—

pressen, <i>press</i> ,	abpressen, <i>extort</i> .
hören, <i>hear</i> ,	abhören, <i>get by hearing, overhear</i> .
hexen, <i>bewitch</i> ,	abhexen, <i>get by witchcraft</i> .

(3.) With *off* are associated the ideas of *completion, finishing off, of ceasing, leaving off*, and even of *undoing* (with words of *tying, &c.*), as from—

nutzen, <i>use</i> ,	abnutzen, <i>use up</i> .
fertigen, <i>get ready</i> ,	abfertigen, <i>finish off</i> (also <i>dispatch</i> ).
regnen, <i>rain</i> ,	abregnen, <i>leave off raining</i> .
blühen, <i>bloom</i> ,	abbühen, <i>cease blooming</i> .
flechten, <i>twist</i> ,	abflechten, <i>untwist</i> .

(4.) *Ab* is also used as we use *off* when we speak of *taking off* either an impression or a person's oddities. Thus from—

schreiben, <i>write,</i>	abschreiben, <i>copy, transcribe.</i>
reiten, <i>ride,</i>	abreiten, <i>train (a horse).</i>
richten, <i>direct,</i>	abrichten, <i>train (after a given standard).</i>
messen, <i>measure,</i>	abmessen, <i>proportion, measure according to a</i>
reden, <i>speak,</i>	abreden, <i>make an appointment.* [standard.</i>

163. **Un** probably represents two different prefixes, (1) the preposition meaning *on, on to, to*; and (2) a particle meaning *up*, another form of the prefix, common to many languages, which appears most frequently in German as *such*.

(1.) *on, on to, to* or *at*, much as in English, as from:—

rücken, <i>move,</i>	anrücken, <i>move on, advance.</i>
greifen, <i>grasp,</i>	angreifen, ( <i>grasp at</i> ), <i>attack,</i>
binden, <i>tie,</i>	anbinden, <i>tie on, attach.</i>
rechnen, <i>reckon,</i>	anrechnen, <i>reckon to, impute to.</i>
beten, <i>pray,</i>	anbeten, <i>pray to, adore, worship.</i>
gehen, <i>go,</i>	angehen, <i>go to, affect.</i>

Sometimes it is necessary to supply *ich* or some other words to see how the verb gets its meaning:—

ziehen, <i>draw,</i>	anziehen, <i>attract (draw to oneself).</i> <i>put on (clothes on oneself).</i>
geben, <i>give, put,</i>	angeben, <i>put forward, produce (an's Licht).†</i>

(2.) The meaning *up* appears in verbs denoting *commencement*, as from:—

bahnen, <i>make a path,</i>	anbahnen, <i>begin to make a path.</i>
geben, <i>give,</i>	angeben, ‡ <i>begin to deal (cards).</i>
stimmen, <i>tune,</i>	anstimmen, <i>strike up a tune.</i>

\* Under this head falls probably *absehen, measure with the eye, whence Absicht, aim, intention.* *Absehen* has also the sense of *looking off, or away*, as in *abgesehen von, leaving out of consideration.* *Ab* forms some compounds direct from nouns, as *abkanzeln, lecture from the pulpit, upbraid.*

† Notice *anschlagen*, and the noun *Anschlag*. Their meanings are derived from two ideas, (1) putting a gun to the shoulder, whence the meaning *aim, purpose*; (2) nailing up a notice on a wall, whence the idea of *estimate, &c.*

‡ Notice the two meanings of *angeben*; also *den Ton angeben, to set the fashion.*

164. *Auf* has in composition two meanings (1) that connected with its use as a preposition *upon, on to*, and (2) that connected with its use as an adverb, *up*. In the latter sense it has naturally much in common with *ent* and *er*; its most characteristic use is in reference to *storing up, reservation*. In general it corresponds very closely to the English *up*, much more so in fact than *ent* or *er*.

(1) *upon, on to*; as from:—

geben, <i>give</i> ,	aufgeben, <i>set a task to</i> (Aufgabe).
drücken, <i>press</i> ,	aufdrücken, <i>impress on</i> .

(2) in connection with the meaning *up*,

(a) literally as in simple metaphors, as from:—

hängen, <i>hang</i> ,	aufhängen, <i>hang up</i> .
bleiben, <i>stay</i> ,	aufbleiben, <i>stay up</i> (at night).
fordern, <i>summon, demand</i> ,	auffordern, <i>call up, challenge</i> .

especially of raising the voice:—

sagen, <i>say</i> ,	auffagen, <i>repeat aloud</i> .
bieten, <i>bid</i> ,	aufbieten, <i>proclaim, publish banns</i> .

(β) *opening and beginning*:—

machen, <i>make</i> ,	aufmachen, <i>open</i> .
blühen, <i>bloom</i> ,	aufblühen, <i>come into flower</i> .
schließen, <i>close, lock</i> ,	aufschließen, <i>open, unlock</i> .

(γ) *completely* (with a notion of destruction or reversal):—

fressen, <i>eat</i> ,	auffressen, <i>eat up</i> .
geben, <i>give</i> ,	aufgeben, <i>give up</i> .
gehen, <i>go</i> ,	aufgehen, <i>disappear, be lost</i> .
heben, <i>take up</i> ,	aufheben, <i>abolish</i> (take up and remove).
kündigen, <i>make known</i> ,	aufkündigen, <i>give notice to quit</i> .
sagen, <i>say</i> ,	auffsagen, <i>renounce</i> (as well as <i>recite</i> ).
decken, <i>cover</i> ,	aufdecken, <i>uncover</i> .
binden, <i>bind</i> ,	aufbinden, <i>unbind</i> (as well as <i>bind up</i> [or on]).

(δ) *again*:—

backen, <i>bake</i> ,	aufbacken, <i>rebake</i> .
-----------------------	----------------------------



(ε) *storing up* :—

bewahren, <i>keep,</i>	aufbewahren, <i>reserve.</i>
heben, <i>take up,</i>	aufheben, <i>store up, reserve,</i> (as well as <i>abolish</i> ).

165. **Auß**, *out, out of* :—

(α) of motion or simple metaphors connected with it :—

gehen, <i>go,</i>	ausgehen, <i>go out.</i>
blasen, <i>blow,</i>	ausblasen, <i>blow (an egg).</i>
drücken, <i>press,</i>	ausdrücken, <i>express.</i>

(β) *out of, implying selection* :—

nehmen, <i>take,</i>	ausnehmen, <i>except.</i>
suchen, <i>seek,</i>	aussuchen, <i>seek out, select.</i>
erwählen, <i>choose,</i>	auserwählen, <i>choose (among a number).</i>

(γ) *to the end* :—

brennen, <i>burn,</i>	ausbrennen, <i>burn out.</i>
halten, <i>hold,</i>	aushalten, <i>hold out.</i>
arbeiten, <i>work,</i>	ausarbeiten, <i>elaborate.</i>

166. **Bei**, a preposition meaning *at the side of*. Hence its compounds may give an idea either of (α) coming to the side of, or (β) of putting aside.

(α) coming to the side of, *i.e. addition, help, or rivalry* :—

spannen, <i>put in horses,</i>	beispannen, <i>put on extra horses.</i>
bringen, <i>bring,</i>	beibringen, <i>adduce (evidence),</i> <i>administer (medicine),</i> <i>impart (knowledge).</i>
stehen, <i>stand,</i>	beistehen, <i>stand by, assist.</i>
treten, <i>step,</i>	beitreten, <i>join, (a society, &amp;c.).</i>
kommen, <i>come,</i>	beikommen, <i>come up to, rival.</i>

(β) *aside* :—

legen, <i>lay,</i>	beilegen, <i>put aside, (as done with).</i> <i>put by, reserve, settle (a quarrel).</i>
--------------------	--

See also instances of the cognate *be* used in this sense.

167. **Dar**, an adverb meaning *there*, used in composition to mean *in the presence of a person, before his eyes*, as from :—

stellen, <i>place,</i>	darstellen, <i>exhibit.</i>
reichen, <i>reach, hand,</i>	darreichen, <i>deliver up.</i>

168. **Ein**, *in*, exactly corresponds to the English *in* put after verbs. It has in some words a peculiar meaning of *coming to an end*.

(a) answering to the English *in*, as from :—

gehen, <i>go</i> ,	eingehen, <i>go in, enter</i> .
athmen, <i>breathe</i> ,	einathmen, <i>inspire, inhale</i> .
prügeln, <i>flog</i> ,	einprügeln, <i>drive in by flogging</i> .
dachén, <i>roof</i> ,	eindachén, <i>roof in</i> .

and of gathering *in* :—

betteln, <i>beg</i> ,	einbetteln, <i>collect by begging</i> .
ernten, <i>harvest</i> ,	einernten, <i>get in harvest</i> .

(β) *coming to an end* :—

fallen, <i>fall</i> ,	einfallen, <i>fall in (in ruins)</i> .
gehen, <i>go</i> ,	eingehen, <i>come to nought</i> .
stellen, <i>put</i> ,	einstellen, <i>put an end to, discontinue</i> .

169. **Empor**, properly *into that which is borne or lifted, into the height*, is used (chiefly in poetry) to mean *up* :—

kommen, <i>come</i> ,	emporkommen, <i>rise in the world</i> .
streben, <i>strive</i> ,	emporstreben, <i>soar aloft</i> .

170. **Fort**, an adverb meaning *forward, onwards*, and then by an easy transition *away*, as from :—

fahren, <i>go, fare</i> ,	fortfahren, <i>continue</i> .
jagen, <i>hunt, chase</i> ,	fortjagen, (1) <i>go on hunting</i> ;
	(2) <i>drive away, dismiss</i> .
kommen, <i>come</i> ,	fortkommen, (1) <i>get on, thrive</i> ;
	(2) <i>get away</i> .

171. **Her** and **Hin**, mean respectively *hither* and *thither*, that is towards the speaker or person thought of and away from him. The distinction comes out especially in the numerous compound prefixes of which *hin* and *her* form part. Thus a person at the top of a staircase would say to a person beside him : gehen Sie hinab ! *go down ! (i.e. from the speaker)* while to a person at the bottom he would say : kommen Sie herauf ! *come up ! (i.e. to the speaker)*. So again a person inside a room says herein ! *come in !* in answer to a knock at the door.

Her has two idiomatic meanings:—

(a) it refers to the *origin* of something now existing or present, as from:—

kommen, <i>come,</i>	herkommen, <i>originate, be descended.</i>
rühren, <i>move,</i>	herrühren, <i>originate.</i>

Herbringen, herkommen, are especially used of things handed down by tradition.

(β) it is used of repeating a set form of words, as:—

sagen, <i>say,</i>	hersagen, <i>repeat (a lesson, &amp;c.).</i>
lispeln, <i>lisp,</i>	herlispeln, <i>repeat lispings.</i>

Hergehen often means simply to *go on, come to pass.*

Hin frequently means *on, away,* and so is used both of continuance, and of *bringing to an end,* as from:—

geben, <i>give,</i>	hingeben, <i>give up, resign.*</i>
reichen, <i>reach,</i>	hinreichen, <i>reach on to the end, suffice.</i>
halten, <i>hold,</i>	hinhalten, <i>keep in suspense.</i>
träumen, <i>dream,</i>	hinträumen, <i>dream away (one's life, &amp;c.).</i>
brüten, <i>brood,</i>	hinbrüten, <i>go on brooding.</i>

172. **Loß** is properly an adjective, meaning *loose, separated,* and is accordingly used both as a prefix to denote separation, and as a suffix equivalent to the English *less.* Thus from:—

lassen, <i>let, leave,</i>	loßlassen, <i>set free.</i>
brennen, <i>burn,</i>	loßbrennen, <i>let off (a gun).</i>
gehen, <i>go,</i>	loßgehen, (1) <i>go off (as a gun);</i> —auf (2) <i>fly at a person.†</i>

173. **Mit**, *with, at the same time,* as from:—

nehmen, <i>take,</i>	mitnehmen, <i>take with me.</i>
sprechen, <i>speak,</i>	mitsprechen, <i>join in a conversation.</i>
arbeiten, <i>work,</i>	mitarbeiten, <i>cooperate.</i>

174. **Nach**, *after,* has all the meanings of the English word. Thus are formed from:—

machen, <i>make,</i>	nachmachen, <i>imitate.</i>
beten, <i>pray,</i>	nachbeten, <i>repeat a prayer after.</i>

\* Also *dahin* geben (*das Leben für's Vaterland.*)

† c.f. in Bret Hart, "He *went* for that heathen Chinese."

eilen, <i>hurry,</i>	nacheilen, <i>hurry after, try and catch.</i>
eifern, <i>strive,</i>	nacheifern, <i>strive after.</i>
stehen, <i>stand,</i>	nachstehen, <i>be inferior to.</i>
sehen, <i>look,</i>	nachsehen, (1) <i>look after, examine ;</i> (2) <i>overlook, forgive.</i>

175. **Nieder**, *down*, English *nether*. Notices from :—

lassen, <i>let,</i>	sich niederlassen, <i>settle (in a country).</i>
kommen, <i>come,</i>	niederkommen, <i>be brought to bed, confined.</i>

176. **Ob**, equivalent to *über*, *over* or *on*, as from :—

walten, <i>rule,</i>	obwalten, <i>rule over.</i>
liegen, <i>lie,</i>	obliegen, (1) <i>devote oneself to ;</i> (2) <i>be incumbent on.*</i>

177. **Vor**, *before*, *forward*, as from :—

lesen, <i>read,</i>	vorlesen, <i>read before people, lecture.</i>
singen, <i>sing,</i>	vorsingen, (1) <i>act as precentor ;</i> (2) <i>teach to sing.</i>
fechten, <i>fight,</i>	vorfechten, (1) <i>fight as a champion ;</i> (2) <i>show how to fight (as a fencing-master).</i>
geben, <i>put,</i>	vorgeben, <i>put forward (as an excuse).</i>
ziehen, <i>draw, march,</i>	vorziehen, (1) <i>prefer ; (2) advance.</i>
beugen, <i>bend,</i>	vorbeugen, <i>bend before, prevent.</i>

178. **Zu**.—The meanings of *zu* in composition come either (α) from its ordinary form as a preposition ; or (β) from its use as an adverb, in phrases like *die Thür ist zu*, *the door is shut* (English *to*).

(α) *to*—*towards*, *addition*, as from :—

fließen, <i>flow,</i>	zufließen, <i>flow towards.</i>
thun, <i>do, put,</i>	zuthun, <i>add.</i>
schauen, <i>look,</i>	zuschauen, <i>look at, contemplate.</i>
sprechen, <i>speak,</i>	zusprechen (1) <i>adjudge ;</i> (2) <i>Wuth, give by speaking.</i>
sagen, <i>say,</i>	zusagen, <i>promise.</i>
stimmen, <i>vote,</i>	zustimmen, <i>agree to, add one's vote.</i>

\* *Obliegen* was formerly used as the converse of *unterliegen*, meaning *to get the upper hand*.

(β) *closing* :—

bauen, <i>build</i> ,	zubauen, <i>build up, close by building.</i>
machen, <i>make</i> ,	zumachen, <i>close.</i>

Notice zureiten (ein Pferd), *to train, break.*

179. COMPOUND PREFIXES. — The meaning of the compound separable prefixes like *hervor, vorbei, entgegen*, and of simple adverbs like *weg, zurück*, &c., is easily found in dictionaries, and requires no discussion.

### C.—DOUBTFUL PREFIXES.

180. GENERAL PRINCIPLES. — The prefixes *durch, über, unter, um*, are separable in some verbs, inseparable in others. The general principle which regulates their use is that when the preposition and the verb coalesce into one meaning, when they constitute, so to speak, a *chemical compound*, the prefix is inseparable. If on the other hand, each retains its full meaning, if, to continue the metaphor, they form only a *mechanical mixture*, the prefix is in reality an adverb and therefore separable. In this case the prefix is accented, in the former unaccented. The following rules are useful :—

#### 181. TRANSITIVE COMPOUNDS OF INTRANSITIVES.

—The transitive compounds of an intransitive verb with the above prefixes are inseparable; its intransitive compounds separable.

Thus *durchgehen* (insep.) means (1) *to traverse*; (2) *to penetrate*, with accusative; (3) *to examine, peruse*; *durchgehen* (sep.) means (1) *to come through* (intrans.) of smoke, wind, &c.; (2) *to run away*; (3) *to pass*, i.e., *to become law*, of measures, bills; also, *to pass current*, of coin.

Again, *übergehen* (sep.) means (1) *to run over* (of liquids, &c.); (2) *to desert from one side to the other*; (3) *to cross* (intrans.), from one point to another; (4) *to pass over* (of a storm, &c.). But *übergehen* (insep.) means (1) *to go about* (e.g. a field); (2) *to examine*; (3) *to cross* (trans., e.g. a boundary), or *to transgress* (trans.); (4) *to omit*. *Ueberbieten*, meaning *to bid highest*, is separable; meaning *to outbid any one*, inseparable.

This principle is especially applicable to verbs like *setzen*, *greifen*, *brechen*, which are sometimes used transitively, sometimes intransitively. The transitive compounds formed from their intransitive meanings are inseparable, the intransitive compounds separable.

182. CHANGE OF ACCUSATIVE.—It often happens that a transitive verb compounded with one of the prepositions named above governs a different accusative to that which it governs alone (*see* compounds of *be*, § 154). Thus, to take an example which has a close parallel in Latin, *umgeben*, *to surround*, is used with an accusative of the thing enclosed: *er umgab die Stadt mit einem Graben*, while the simple verb *geben*, *give* or *put*, would, if used in the same connection, take *the ditch*, not *the town* as its accusative; therefore *umgeben*, *to surround*, is inseparable. Again compare:—

*Ich habe meinen Namen untergeschrieben,*  
*I wrote my name at the bottom (of a letter, &c.).*

*Ich habe den Brief unterschrieben,*  
*I signed the letter (with my name).*

The thing written is the name; with the separable verb the name is still the accusative; with the inseparable verb a different object, the document on which the name is written, becomes the accusative.

183. OTHER COMPOUNDS OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.—The above rules apply to all compounds of intransitive verbs with *durch*, &c., and to a certain number of compounds of transitive verbs. Many other compounds of transitive verbs may be discriminated by remembering that *durch*, &c., when strictly and obviously used as adverbs, are separable, as in *durchschlagen*, *slag soundly*; *umwerfen*, *turn upside down*; *unterbringen*, *bring under shelter*. There are, however, a certain number of cases, in which usage alone can decide.

*Obs.*—These prefixes, when separated from the verb, are frequently preceded by *hin*, *her*, sometimes by *dar*; as, *er zog in die Königstraße hinüber*, *he moved into King Street*; *wir gingen rings um die Stadt herum*, *we went round the town*.

184. *Durch*, *through*. It is separable in the meanings—(1) *thoroughly*, *to the end*; (2) *wildly*, *beyond control*; (3) *through* in the sense of *slipping through*, *failure*. The following examples will illustrate both the meaning of *durch*, and the principles given above:—

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
durchbeten,	go through (a set of prayers),	spend in prayer (die Nacht).
durchbrechen,	make a way for oneself (intr. an's Licht, &c.),	penetrate (eine Mauer, die Reihen der Feinde).
durchbringen,	(1) get through (trans.), (2) spend, waste (time, &c.).	
durchbringen,	(1) get through (intr.), (2) (mit Etwaß) succeed, gain one's end,	(1) penetrate. (2) fill (with pity, &c.).
durchduften,		fill with fragrance.
durchfahren,	(1) drive through (intr.), (2) take the bit between one's teeth.	traverse (in a carriage, boat, &c.).
durchfallen,	(1) drop through (intr.), (2) fail (in an election, examination, &c.).	
durchfragen,	das ganze Kapitel,	die ganze Klasse.
durchgehen,	(1) go through, get through (2) run away, [(intr.), (3) pass, become current, (4) die Sohlen (walk holes in one's shoes). (5) peruse.	(1) penetrate. (2) peruse, examine.
durchleuchten,	peep through (intr. of light),	illuminate.

185. **Ueber** answers to the English *over* in all its senses. It is separable when it means (1) *to the other side* (of a river, &c., understood); (2) *over*, of *overflowing*; (3) *over*, with the notion of *upsetting*, *overturning*. It is inseparable when it means (4) *covering*, *overlying*; (5) *excess*. There are many more inseparable compounds of *über* than separable ones. Examples are:—

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
überbinden,	tie on (a ribbon, bandage, &c.),	bandage (a wound).
überbieten,	bid highest,	outbid.
überbleichen,		cover with tin; "tinplate."

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
überbringen,	(1) <i>take to the other side,</i> (2) <i>get on (a lid on a box, &amp;c.).</i>	<i>deliver (a message, letter).</i>
überreifen,		(1) <i>hurry on too fast (tr.).</i> (2) <i>overtake.</i>
überfahren,	(1) <i>cross by a ferry (intr.),</i> (2) <i>put across by a ferry,</i>	(1) <i>cross by a ferry (tr.).</i> (2) <i>strew, cover.</i> (3) <i>drive over, run over (tr.)</i>
überführen,	<i>take across (e.g. über die Grenze),</i>	<i>convict (prop. bring over to confession).</i>
übergehen,	(1) <i>overflow (intr.),</i> (2) <i>omit, pass over (intr.),</i> <i>desert (to the enemy),</i>	(1) <i>traverse.</i> (2) <i>cross (tr.).</i> (3) <i>overlook.</i>
überlegen,	<i>lay on the top,</i>	(1) <i>overload.</i> (2) <i>ponder, consider.</i>
übersetzen,	(1) <i>set on the top,</i> (2) <i>take across (a river),</i> (3) <i>leap to the other side (über einen Graben).</i>	(1) <i>overcharge.</i> (2) <i>translate.</i>
überziehen,	<i>move (from one house to another),</i>	<i>cover (with paper, cloth, &amp;c.).</i>

186. **Um** is a preposition meaning *round*. In composition with verbs it is used (1) of *surrounding, encircling*, and in this sense forms inseparable transitive verbs; (2) of *going by a roundabout way*; (3) of *change, renewal*; (4) in the verbs *umbringen*—*um's Leben bringen, to kill*, *umkommen (um's Leben, &c.), to lose*. In all these cases, except (1), it is separable.

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
umbinden,	(1) <i>put on (a ribbon round the neck),</i> (2) <i>rebind (a book).</i>	<i>bind up (a cut finger, &amp;c.).</i>
umbringen,	<i>kill.</i>	
umdonnern,		<i>thunder round.</i>
umgeben,	(1) <i>put on (einem einen Mantel),</i> (2) <i>make a fresh deal (of cards).</i>	<i>encircle, surround.</i>



	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
umgehen,	(1) <i>go about, have dealings</i> (in der Stadt, mit einem, &c.), (2) <i>make a détour,</i> (3) <i>go round and round.</i>	(1) <i>go round, traverse.</i> (2) <i>avoid by a détour.</i> (3) <i>evade.</i>
umspannen,	<i>change horses,</i>	<i>encircle, encompass.</i>

187. **Unter** appears in composition to have two principal meanings\*: (1) *below, underneath*, in which sense it forms many separable compounds; (2) *up*, and derived meanings like those discussed above; in this sense all its compounds are inseparable. Among the meanings derived from the sense *up*, that of (3) *interruption* is among the most characteristic. In one or two words it means (4) *with each other*, like the French *entre*. The following are instances:—

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
unterbauen,	<i>build underneath,</i>	<i>prop by building.</i>
unterbleiben,		<i>remain undone.</i>
unterbrechen,		<i>interrupt.</i>
untergehen,	(1) <i>sink (as a ship),</i> (2) <i>set (as the sun),</i> (3) <i>perish.</i>	
untergraben,	<i>dig in (manure, &amp;c.),</i>	<i>undermine.</i>
unterhalten,	(einem ein Waschbecken, &c.),	<i>keep up, maintain, entertain.</i>
unterkommen,	<i>find shelter, get a situation.</i>	
unterlassen,	<i>admit to shelter,</i>	<i>omit, leave undone.</i>
unterliegen,	<i>lie at the bottom,</i>	<i>succumb.</i>
unterreden (sich),		<i>converse.</i>
untersagen,		<i>forbid.</i>
unterschreiben,	<i>write at the bottom</i> (one's name, &c.),	<i>sign (a letter, &amp;c.).</i>

---

\* Key's *Essays*, p. 36<sup>sq.</sup>

## PART I.

## SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

## I.—PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

1. SIMPLE SENTENCE.—A *simple sentence* contains a single statement, command, or question. We shall confine ourselves at present to those which contain statements.

The person, thing, or idea about which we are talking is called the *subject*. The statement made about it is called the *predicate*.

2. SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE.—The subject must be a noun, or something equivalent to a noun. It may be necessary to describe it more closely than can be done by a single noun. The words added to the noun for this purpose are adjectives, or of the nature of adjectives. They are often called *attributes*, or *epithets*.

3. FINITE VERB.—The essential part of the predicate is a finite verb, that is, any part of the verb but the infinitive and participles. This verb may be—

(a) intransitive, and in this case it can, without any additions, constitute the predicate; as,—

Die Sonne scheint,  
The sun shines.

(b) It may be transitive, and it is then incomplete in itself, and leads us to look for some additional words. Thus in the sentence—

Der Schneider macht,  
The tailor makes,

we look for something to which the action of the transitive verb *makes* may be passed on; *e.g.*,—

Der Schneider macht einen Rock,  
The tailor makes a coat.

The addition thus required is called the *object* of the verb. Some verbs, it will be seen hereafter, take more than one object.

(c) The verb may be the verb *sein*, *to be*, which is commonly known as the *copula*. This, too, leads us to expect something further. Thus, if we say—

Mein Herz ist,  
My heart is,

one expects some more words, and probably words more or less descriptive of *my heart*. For instance—

Mein Herz ist schwer,  
My heart is heavy,

would be an intelligible sentence. Such an addition is called the *complement* (*i.e.*, that which completes, or makes up) of the predicate. Hence in this case—

predicate = copula + complement.

The verb *sein* in German, and the verb *to be* in English, may be either accented or unaccented. It is to the unaccented verb that all that is said here applies. The accented verb, which means *to exist*, is a philosophical term with which we have nothing to do.

4. COPULATIVE VERBS.—There are several verbs which, like *sein*, lead the reader to look for some words descriptive of the subject, and can scarcely be said to make complete sense without such words. They are *werden*, *to become*; *scheinen*, *to seem*; *heißen*, *to be called*; *gelten*, *to be accounted*; and passive verbs of *calling*, *naming*, *making*. Such verbs are called *copulative verbs*.

5. EXTENSION OF PREDICATE, &c.—Whichever form the predicate assumes, it admits of being made more definite by the addition of adverbs, or phrases equivalent to adverbs. Thus we may say:—

Die Sonne scheint hell.  
Der Schneider macht einen Rock in seinem Laden.  
Mein Herz ist heute schwer.

In each case the predicate is made more definite by mentioning some additional circumstance. This is done by ad-

verbial additions, which in the examples given are of manner, place, and time respectively.

The object may, like the subject, be accompanied by epithets, and so may the complement of the predicate, if a noun.

6. IMPERATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES. — The construction of *imperative* and *interrogative* sentences, that is, of those which contain a simple command, or a simple question, is exactly the same as that of the declarative sentences just discussed. In the one the imperative mood is substituted for the indicative, in the other the order is changed.

7. COMPLEX SENTENCES. — The place of the subject or the object in a simple sentence, or that of any of the epithets or adverbs employed in it, may be supplied by another sentence. The resulting combination is called a complex sentence. The construction of such sentences will be the subject of the next part.

---

## II.—CONCORD OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

8. FIRST CONCORD.—Verbs in the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and conditional moods agree with their nominative cases or subjects in number and person:—

Du hast der Götter Gunst erfahren. (Sch.)

*Thou hast experienced the favour of the Gods.*

Ich bin der Geist, der stets verneint. (Goe.)

*I am the spirit, that ever denies.*

9. TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—If the subject consists of two or more singular nouns or pronouns, whether connected by *und*, *and*, or *weder ... noch*, *neither ... nor*; the verb generally stands in the plural. It sometimes does so even when they are connected by *oder*, *or*.

Hesper und Aurora zogen

Wechselnd auf am Himmelsbogen. (Sch.)

*Hesperus and Aurora climbed the vault of heaven in alternation due.*

Weder Auge noch Geist sind hinreichend, sie zu fassen. (Goe.)  
*Neither the eye nor the mind can adequately grasp the idea.*

Ich weiß nicht, was du oder ich für Begriffe von Freiheit haben. (Sch.)  
*I don't know what ideas you or I have of freedom.*

*Obs. 1.*—When two or more substantives denoting things or abstract ideas are closely connected in our thoughts, so as to form a single notion, the verb is generally put in the singular. Such combinations are—Meer und Land, Haus und Hof, Leben und Weben, Dichten und Trachten, Thun und Schaffen.

Ihr Quellen alles Lebens,  
 An denen Himmel und Erde hängt. (Goe.)  
*Ye sources of all life,  
 On which heaven and earth depend.*

Viel Zehren und Gasten  
 Leert Keller und Kasten.  
*Frequent feasts and liberal fare  
 Soon leave cellar and cupboard bare.*

So too, even where the connection is slight, and confined to the passage in question:—

Da thut sich Herz und Keller los. (Goe.)  
*Then heart and cellar are opened freely.*

*Obs. 2.*—The tendency of a verb to agree with the nearest subject often gets the better of strict grammar.

*Obs. 3.*—Two or more singular nouns connected by *oder* . . . *noch* are really equivalent to a plural. (Neither A nor B is . . . = A and B are not . . .).

*Obs. 4.*—In the case of nouns in the singular, connected by *oder*, the singular is generally, but not necessarily, used.

10. DIFFERENT PERSONS.—If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the worthier; that is, *I* or *we* *and*... is treated as if it were *we*, *thou* or *ye* *and*... as if it were *ye*.

Ich und mein Haus wollen dem Herrn dienen. (Luth. Bib.)  
*I and my house will serve the Lord.*

Ihr selbst und euer Nächster gewinnt. (Less.)  
*You and your neighbour gain by it.*

Often, as in French, the nominatives of different persons are summed up by a personal pronoun:—

Der da und ich, wir sind aus Eger. (Sch.)  
*Yonder man and I come from Eger.*

*Obs.*—In the case of pronouns connected by *oder*, the verb may be put in the plural, as in the last example of § 9, or it may agree with the nearest, as—

Sch weiß nicht, ob du oder er es gethan hat.  
*I know not if you or he has done it.*

It would be better to write—*ob du es gethan hast oder er.*

Similarly it is better to render *you or I* by a periphrasis:—

Einer von uns beiden  
 Muß die Zelle meiden.  
*One of us two (you or I) must quit the cell.*

11. COLLECTIVE NOUNS AND NOUNS OF MULTITUDE. — A *collective noun* speaks of many individuals acting as a single unit; it is, in many cases, one of the simplest forms of personification.

Collective nouns require the verb in the singular:—

Und unterwegs begegnet ihm ein Schwarm  
 Von Hornissen. (Sch.)  
*And on the way a swarm of hornets meets him.*

A *noun of multitude* speaks of many individuals, without thus collecting them into a single unit.

Nouns of multitude *may* take a plural verb. The usage is limited to nouns like *Menge*, *Dugend*, *Paar*, followed by a plural noun to which they stand almost in the relation of numeral adjectives:—

Ein Paar Häuser sind abgebrannt. (Goe.)  
*A few houses are burnt down.*

Es befanden sich dort eine Menge französischer Ueberläufer. (Arch.)  
*There were a number of French deserters there.*

But—

Eine Anzahl Soldaten mußte sich im Schwimmen üben. (Arch.)  
*A number of French soldiers had to practise swimming.*

## 12. AGREEMENT WITH LOGICAL SUBJECT. —

It is very usual in German, especially in German poetry, to begin a sentence with *eß*, which is almost pleonastic. The real subject is then put after the verb which agrees with it:—

*Eß stürzten die herrlichen Säulen.* (Sch.)  
*The glorious columns fell.*

*Eß sind nicht alle frei, die ihrer Ketten spotten.* (Less.)  
*All are not free, who scoff at their chains.*

*Obs.*—Remember that *it is I, it is you, are in German ich bin eß, du bist eß.*

13. *Sein* AGREEING WITH COMPLEMENT. —

In English the words *these, those* often stand as the nominative to *are*, which is then followed by a plural noun. In German the *neuter singular eß, daß, dieseß or dieß* is used in such case, but the verb agrees with the noun following:—

*Daß sind meine Richter.* (Sch.)  
*Those (persons pointed to or named before) are my judges.*

14. IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS.—The impersonal use of ordinary verbs, limited in English almost entirely to verbs connected with the weather, and to a few like *it grieves me, it seems, &c.*, is very common in German:—

*Eß klopf!* — { *Some one is knocking.*  
                          { *There is a knock at the door.*

The usage is especially common with passive and reflexive verbs:—

*Lebhafträumt sich's unter diesem Baum.* (Sch.)  
*Under this tree one's fancy runs wild.*

And omitting *eß*:—

*In diesem Coupé wird nicht geraucht.*  
*No smoking allowed in this compartment.*

15. TITLES WITH PLURAL VERB. — Some singular titles, such as *Majestät, Durchlaucht, Excellenz, &c.*, when used in addressing a person, take the verb in the plural. Hence the courteous use of *Sie* in addressing a single person:—

Von der Residenz hab' ich nichts weiter gewußt, als daß Seine Majestät der König dort wohnen. (Kotzebue.)

*Of town I knew nothing, but that His Majesty the King lives there.*

Herr Doctor wurden dort catechisirt. (Goe.)

*Your reverence was being put through your catechism there.*

The latter example is an ironical excess of civility.

### III. — APPOSITION — THE APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT.

15a. APPOSITION—AGREEMENT IN CASE.—When one noun is added to another noun, or to a pronoun, in order to explain or qualify it—when, in fact, it does the duty of an adjective—the second noun is said to be in apposition to the first, and is put in the same case:—

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen, schlich Mæros. (Sch.)

*To Dionysius, the tyrant, crept Mæros.*

Es war sein Neffe, seines Bruders Kind,  
Herzog Johann von Schwaben. (Sch.)

*It was his nephew, his brother's son,*

*Duke John of Suabia.*

Ihr kennet ihn, den Schöpfer kühner Heere. (Sch.)

*You know him, the creator of bold armies.*

*Obs. 1.*—The second noun is often preceded by nämlich, namely; als, as.

*Obs. 2.*—In the case of proper names the tendency of German is to inflect as little as possible. The following examples will show when it is possible to avoid inflection (*see Acc.*, § 21):—

I. Herzog Albrecht's Gemahlin, Graf Heinrichs Tochter.

II. Die Gemahlin des Herzogs Albrecht, die Geschichte des Königreichs Baiern.

III. Die Zeit Heinrich (or Heinrichs) des Voglers, Karl (or Karls) des Fünften.

IV. Der Anfang des Monats Mai.

16. AGREEMENT OF GENDER. — If the second noun has two forms (especially if it has a feminine in it), it agrees in gender with the noun to which it is in apposition:—

Was Venus band, die Bringerin des Glücks,  
Kann Mars, der Stern des Unglücks, bald zerreißen. (Sch.)

*Whom Venus, bringer of good hap, hath joined,*

*Mars' baleful influence may sever soon.*



17. NAMES OF TOWNS, &c.—The names of towns, islands, countries, &c., and of months, stand in apposition to the words *town*, *island*, &c., and are not, as in English, connected with them by prepositions:—

Im Monat Mai, *In the month of May.*

Den Flecken Stanz erbauten sie. (Sch.)

*The hamlet of Stanz they built.*

Im Dorfe Hochkirch schlug es fünf. (Archenholz.)

*In the village of Hochkirch it was striking five.*

18. NOUN IN APPOSITION TO SENTENCE. — A noun in apposition to a sentence is put in the nominative:—

Die Blüthe des alten Offiziercorps lag auf den Schlachtfeldern; während der sieben Jahre waren—ein beispielloser Fall in der Kriegsgeschichte—sämmliche namhafte Generale bis auf spärliche Ausnahmen geblieben oder kampfunfähig geworden. (v. Treitschke.)

*The flower of the old body of officers lay dead on the battlefields; during the seven years every general of note, with scarcely an exception, had been killed or incapacitated for service—an unprecedented event in military history.*

19. COMPLEMENT AFTER COPULATIVE VERBS.—As the complement after the verb *sein* and other copulative verbs refers to the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the same case and is called an *appositive complement*:—

Der Knecht wär' selber ein Ritter gern. (Uhland.)

*Fain would the serving-man be a knight himself.*

Du, Kindlein, wirst ein Prophet des Höchsten heißen. (Luth.)

*Thou, child, shalt be called a prophet of the Highest.*

So hörten diese Rechte: Wappenschild, Rüstung und Turniertheilung auf, ein persönlicher Vorzug zu sein; sie wurden ein erbliches Recht der Familien. (Freitag.)

*Thus these rights, of armorial bearings, of wearing armour, and of taking part in tournaments, ceased to be personal privileges; they became a hereditary prerogative of families.*

Die Sünde,

Die aller Sünde größte Sünd' uns gilt. (Less.)

*The sin which in our eyes is deemed the greatest sin of all.*

Aber dennoch dünkt es mich ein weit unverzeihlicherer Fehler. (Less.)

*But yet it seems to me a far more unpardonable fault.*

Er blieb der höfische Frauenritter bis zu seinem Ende. (Freitag.)  
*He remained to his dying day the courtly squire of dames.*

20. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER COPULATIVE VERBS.—With *werden* and passive verbs of *making*, *zu*, and a dative (with the *definite* article) are generally preferred to the nominative; with *gelten* and passive verbs of *deeming*, *für* :—

L'Etrées wurde für den besten französischen Feldherrn gehalten. (Arch.)  
*L'Etrées was considered the best French general.*

Wir können gelten für ein ganzes Volk. (Sch.)  
*We may pass for a whole nation.*

Das heißt den Boß zum Gärtner machen. (Proverb.)  
*That's like making the goat your gardener.*

Da wurde Leiden oft Genuß,  
 Und selbst das traurigste Gefühl zur Harmonie. (Sch.)  
*Then suffering often became enjoyment,  
 And even the saddest feeling turned to melody.*

Wie der Bauer zum Ritter werden wollte, so der Ritter zum Adeligen. (Freitag.)

*As the peasant wanted to become a knight, so the knight wanted to become a noble.*

21. VERBS OF NAMING, MAKING.—The verbs *to make*, *to name*, &c., may, with their objects, form complete predicates. Thus, *he made a watch*, *he named his son*, are both complete sentences, the word *make* means *to form*, the word *name*, *to give a name to*. Both verbs admit, however, a slightly different meaning, which leads us to look for some additional word or words before we have a complete idea. Hence incomplete sentences, as—

*He named his son,  
 He made the captain,*

which we may complete by adding a noun, an adjective, or a more complicated expression. Thus :—

*He named his son John.  
 He made the captain angry.*

The words *John*, *angry* are called, like the additional words required by the copulative verbs, *appositive complements*. They are in *apposition* to the object, and *complete* the predicate.

22. CONSTRUCTION AFTER SUCH VERBS.—The appositive complement after such verbs, like those, namely, of *naming, deeming, &c.*, is, like the object, in the accusative :—

Den nennt' einmal das Volk den Weisen. (Less.)  
*Him once the people named the wise.*

Einen schlechten Kerl schalt er ihn.\*  
*He called him (reproachfully) a bad fellow.*

Obs. 1.—halten für is the commonest rendering of the English *to consider* with a double accusative.

Obs. 2.—machen zu represents the English *make* with double accusative; when an adjective is the complement, no preposition is used :—

Mache zum Herrscher sich der, der seinen Vortheil versteht. (Goe.)  
*Let that man make himself a ruler, who understands his own advantage.*

Mache nicht schlimmer das Uebel. (Goe.)  
*Do not make the mischief worse.*

23. **WAS** INSERTED.—The conjunction *wie* or *als* is sometimes inserted before the appositive complement. It implies, of course, an ellipsis of several words, but the usage is so common, that the ellipsis is hardly thought of :—

Er wird als ein Wahnsinniger angesehen. (Goe.)  
*He is looked upon as a madman.*

Sie habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet. (Sch.)  
*You have always looked upon me only as an enemy.*

---

#### IV.—ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

24. SECOND CONCORD.—An adjective or participle, when used as an epithet, and standing immediately before

---

\* Compare in Greek τυφλόν μ' ώνειδίσας. Soph. O. T. 412.

the noun it qualifies, agrees with it in gender, number, and case:—

Da gießt unendlicher Regen herab. (Sch.)  
*Then endless rain poured down.*

Ihr sollt ein wahres Kunststück hören. (Goe.)  
*You shall hear a real masterpiece.*

25. ADJECTIVE WITH DEPENDENT WORDS.—An adjective or participle with other words depending upon it may, in German, be used as an epithet, and is, in that case, still subject to the same rule.

Schlesien, ein schönes, mit arbeitsamen Einwohnern bevölkertes Land. (Archenholz.)

*Silesia, a beautiful country, inhabited by an industrious population.*

Denkmale einer ehemals so prächtigen Stadt. (Goe.)  
*Memorials of a town once so magnificent.*

*Obs. 1.* Such phrases must generally be rendered in English by adjectival sentences. Some attempts have been made to introduce the German idiom. They are ridiculed in "Rejected Addresses." The following are specimens:—"The not-a-bit-the-less-on-that-account-to-be-universally-execrated monster, Buonaparte;" "the in-general-strewn-with-cabbage-stalks-but-on-Saturday-night-lighted-up-with-lamps market of Covent Garden."

*Obs. 2.* Care must be taken not to employ this characteristic German idiom to the detriment of clearness or elegance.

26. ADJECTIVES NOT EPITHETS.—An adjective used otherwise than as an epithet is undeclined. The commonest case is when the adjective occupies the place of the appositive complement after verbs of *naming, making, &c.*, and copulative verbs.

Alle Herzen sind beglückt. (Sch.)  
*All hearts are filled with joy.*

Selig preiß' ich Polyxenen. (Sch.)  
*Happy do I deem Polyxena.*

Dich kann mein Mund nicht glücklich sprechen. (Sch.)  
*As for thee, my lips cannot pronounce thee happy.*

Dich macht die Zeit nur gerisser. (Goe.)  
*Time only makes you more certain.*

*Obs.* If, however, the adjective, when used as appositive complement, is accompanied by the article, it is declined, and may be supposed to agree with the subject (or object, as the case may be) repeated.

Ist ein alter Einbruck ein verlornen. (Less.)  
*Is an old impression a lost one.*

*i.e.*, ein verlornen (Einbruck understood).

27. SECONDARY PREDICATES.—Participles, and occasionally adjectives, generally with words depending upon them, often stand as *secondary predicates*—that is, they make an additional statement about the subject of the sentence, which might be embodied in another clause, either subordinate to the principal sentence, or co-ordinate with it. In such cases the adjective or participle is undeclined.\*

Mit fremden Schätzen reich beladen  
 Kehrt zu den heimischen Gestaden  
 Der Schiffe mastenreicher Wald. (Sch.)

*Richly laden with the treasures of foreign lands, the fleet, like a forest of masts, is returning to its native shores.*

The clause mit...beladen might be made a co-ordinate sentence, and is richly laden...

Entworfen bloß ist's ein gemeiner Frevel,  
 Vollführt ist's ein unsterblich Unternehmen.† (Sch.)  
*Conceive it only, 'tis a vulgar crime ;*  
*Achieved, an enterprise of deathless fame.*

*i.e.*, if it is conceived—if it is achieved.

Dort wohnte ein gestittetes Handelsvolk, schwelgend von den Früchten seines Fleißes, wachsam auf Gesetze, die seine Wohlthäter waren. (Sch.)

*There dwelt a refined commercial people, revelling in the fruits of their industry, watchful guardians of laws, which were their benefactors.*

28. ADJECTIVES NEVER USED AS EPITHETS.—Certain adjectives, such as schuld, kund, ansichtig, are never used as epithets, but only as appositive complements after copulative verbs, or verbs of making, calling, &c. The adjectives aware, rid, mindful, poorly, &c., are subject to the same limitation in English. One cannot say, for example, *an aware*

\* See Abbott's "How to Parse."

† For unsterblich see § 41.

*policeman*, but only *the policeman was aware of the presence of the thief*, &c.\* Such words hover in their usage between the character of an adjective and that of an adverb.

29. EPITHETS ONLY.—Certain other adjectives can be used as epithets only. Such are :—

I. Adjectives in *n, en, ern*, describing the material of which anything is made, as *golden, lebern*. Consequently we must say : *der Ring ist von Gold*, or *ein goldener*, to translate *the ring is golden*.

II. Most adjectives in *isch* derived from names of persons or countries, as *diebisch, thievish*; *spanisch, Spanish*.†

III. Many adjectives in *lich*, not denoting qualities, but rather attendant circumstances, as *anfänglich, initial*; *stündlich, hourly*. On the other hand, *herrlich, splendid*; *rebllich, honest*, &c., denoting qualities, may be used as epithets or complements indifferently.

IV. The so-called *Formwörter*,‡ like *dortig* (*die Dortigen, the people there*), *hierig, heutig*, &c. The adverbs from which they are formed can generally be used as complements : *er ist dort, wir sind hier*, &c.

*Obs.* Any of these adjectives, if the article is placed before them, become practically nouns, and can then be used as complements.

\* The following is the list :—

<i>abhold</i> , ill-affected.	<i>gebe</i> ( <i>gäbe</i> ), current ( <i>gänge und gebe</i> ).	<i>handgemein</i> , engaged (in battle).
<i>abspenstig</i> , recalcitrant.	<i>gebes</i> , mindful.	<i>leid</i> , annoying.
<i>abwendig</i> , estranged.	<i>getrost</i> , of good cheer.	<i>noth</i> , necessary.
<i>angst</i> , uneasy.	<i>gewahr</i> , aware.	<i>nütz</i> , useful.
<i>anheischig</i> , hound over to.	<i>gemärtig</i> , on the look-out for.	<i>quitt</i> , rid, quits.
<i>ansichtig</i> , in sight of.	<i>gram</i> , averse.	<i>schate</i> , pity (regrettable).
<i>ausfindig</i> , discovered.	<i>heil</i> , sound.	<i>schult</i> , guilty of.
<i>bereit</i> , ready.	<i>irre</i> , mistaken.	<i>theilhaft</i> , } partaker in.
<i>brach</i> , fallow.	<i>kund</i> , aware.	<i>unpaß</i> , poorly.
<i>eingebent</i> , mindful.	<i>habhaft</i> , in possession of.	<i>verlustig</i> , a loser.
<i>feind</i> , hostile.		<i>wach</i> , awake.
<i>gänge</i> , current.		
<i>gar</i> , cooked.		

† Note that while adjectives of this kind from names of countries are written with a small initial letter, those from names of persons have a capital, as *der Trübner'sche Betrag*.

‡ Corresponding to the Greek *ὁ πῦν, οἱ ἰκεῖ, ῥηραῖος*, etc. Hence *Aeneas se matutinus agebat, ῥηραῖος ἀπικερα* have no parallel in German.

30. THE SUPERLATIVE. — As the superlative has generally no uninflected form, we must use, when it occurs as the appositive complement, either the inflected form with the definite article, or an adverbial form: am schönsten, am eifrigsten. The former is employed when the subject (or object) is compared with another individual of the same kind, the latter when it is compared with itself under different circumstances. Thus—

Der gestrige Sturm war der heftigste des ganzen Jahrhunderts.  
*Yesterday's storm was the fiercest of the century.*

But

Um zwei Uhr war der Sturm am heftigsten.  
*At two o'clock the storm was fiercest.*

that is, more violent than the same storm at 10 o'clock, 3 o'clock, &c.

Dann ist dieser Tag der schönste meines Lebens. (Sch.)  
*Then will this day be the brightest of my life.*

Der Starke ist am mächtigsten allein. (Sch.)  
*The strong man is strongest alone.*

*Obs.* If es, not representing any word from a previous sentence, be the subject, the form with am is used.

Am besten ist's auch hier, wenn ihr nur Einen hört. (Goe.)  
*In this case too it will be best to hear only one.*

31. COMPARATIVE.—*More* is used in English not only to compare one person or thing with another, but also to compare the degrees in which a person or thing possesses different qualities; to contrast, in fact, adjectives, and not nouns. In this case mehr is generally used in German, not the comparative degree.

Er ist mehr klug als rechtschaffen.  
*He is more clever than honest.*

*Obs.* Good writers occasionally use the comparative in this sense—

Diese Ausrufungen sind rhetorischer, als gründlich. (Lessing.)  
*These exclamations are rather rhetorical than essential.*

32. NEUTER ADJECTIVE AS NOUN.—The neuter of an adjective with the definite article is used much more freely in German than in English, and often requires to be rendered by several words.

Das Fürchterliche, was er erfahren, hatte auch neue Kraft in ihm  
wach gerufen. (Freitag.)

*The terrible experiences he had gone through had at the same time  
aroused in him new energy.*

33. STRONG AND WEAK FORM.—The general rule is that an adjective preceded by an article or pronominal adjective takes the strong form if the article or pronominal adjective has no inflexion, but the weak form if the article or pronominal adjective is inflected. It is, in fact, the principle of economy; the least possible amount of inflexion is used. Thus *mein guter Freund, unser neues Buch, jener schlechte Mann.*

34. INFLEXION AFTER *einige*, &c.—After *einige*, *etliche*, *andere*, *viele*, *wenige*, *mehrere*, *einzelne*, *manche*, *solche*, *welche*, an adjective in the *nominative* or *accusative* plural retains the strong form. In the genitive plural the weak form is preferred in modern German.

Die schöpferische Kraft ist in viele einzelne Kreise getheilt. (Freitag.)  
*Creative energy is distributed over many different circles.*

Der Eifer mancher warmen Freunde des Schönen. (Lessing.)  
*The zeal of many enthusiasts for the Beautiful.*

The following is less common :

Es war das Verdienst einiger schöner Frauen in der Stadt. (Grimm.)  
*It was the merit of some fair ladies in the town.*

35. *Manch*.—*Manch* before another adjective is usually declined, and the adjective takes in that case the weak form. In the nominative singular of all genders, and in the accusative singular feminine and neuter, the inflexion of *manch* may be omitted, and the strong form of the adjective used, as *manch bunte Blumen; die Laufbahn manches jugendlichen Talentes.*

36. *All*.—The word *all* involves some difficulty both as to its own declension and that of the adjectives that follow it.

I. The inflected form is used immediately before a noun, or a noun understood, and means in the singular *all, all the, every*; in the plural, *all, all the*. This is the most usual way of rendering *all the* in the plural:

Aller Zustand ist gut, der natürlich ist und vernünftig. (Goe.)  
*Every condition is good which is natural or reasonable.*

Der Antrag ist aller Ueberlegung werth. (Goe.)  
*The offer is worthy of all consideration.*

Neidhart von Reuenthal, der geistvollste und traurigste aller ritterlichen Sänger im  
dreizehnten Jahrhundert. (Freitag.)  
*Neidhart of Reuenthal, the most brilliant and original of all the knightly  
minstrels of the 13th century.*



Notice especially *Alles*, meaning *every one*.

Wo alles liebt, kann Karl allein nicht hassen. (Sch.)  
*Where all love, Charles alone cannot hate.*

II. The inflected form is often followed by a possessive or demonstrative adjective, sometimes by the definite article.

Das einzige Regiment das alle seine alten Ehrenzeichen gerettet hatte. (von Treitschke.)  
*The only regiment that had saved all its old trophies.*

Nach allen den kläglichen Demüthigungen der jüngsten Jahre. (von Treitschke.)  
*After all the pitiable humiliations of the years just past.*

Alle die Weisesten aller der Zeiten. (Goe.)  
*All the wisest men of all times.*

Ich nehme alle seine Sorge von ihm ab. (Grimm.)  
*I relieve him of all his care.*

Um alles sein Vermögen (more usually sein ganzes or all sein) ist er gekommen. (Grimm.)  
*He has lost all his fortune.*

III. The uninflected form *alle* is used before the masculine and neuter *nom.* and *acc. singular* of the definite article and possessive adjectives, and also before the dative *dem* after prepositions.

Wozu dient alle der Aufwand von Sonnen und Planeten? (Goe.)  
*To what purpose is all the profusion of suns and planets?*

Mir wird von alle dem so bumm. (Goe.)  
*I feel so bewildered in the presence of it all.*

IV. The uninflected form *all* is used before the definite article or a possessive adjective in the *nom.* and *acc. singular, masc. and neut.* In other genders and cases it is admissible, but less common. In modern German *alle* is preferred.

Was soll all der Schmerz und Lust? (Goe.)  
*What means all the pain and pleasure?*

Der Schauplatz all meiner Glückseligkeit. (Goe.)  
*The scene of all my happiness.*

V. If *all* inflected be followed by another adjective, the adjective takes the weak form.

Aller guten Dinge sind drei. (Lessing.)  
*All good things go in threes.*

Jeder müßte alle übrigen Stimmen für sich haben. (Sch.)  
*It would be necessary for each of them to have all the other votes in his favour.\**

There are, however, instances of the strong form in the nominative and accusative plural.

Vor die Versammlung wurden alle große Angelegenheiten gebracht. (Sch.)  
*All great affairs were brought before the assembly.*

37. **Biel, wenig.**—*Biel, wenig* are undeclined when they denote a large or small quantity of the thing to which they refer, taken as a whole: declined,

\* *Alle* is used (provincial) in the complement to mean *complete, at an end*.  
 Die Kugeln sind alle; wir wollen neue gießen. (Goe.)  
*The bullets are exhausted; we will cast new ones.*

when they denote a large or small number of individuals belonging to a class. They are, therefore, generally declined in the plural, and undeclined in the singular. The following and other cases, where *viel* is declined in the singular, may easily be explained on this principle:—

*Verne nicht auf einmal Vieles, aber viel. Ne multa sed multum.*

*Ich bin für viele Höflichkeit Schuldner. (Goe.)*  
*I am your debtor for many acts of courtesy.*

*Ein Gewölb, wo vieles Eisen liegt*  
*Von alter Siegesbeute aufgehäuft. (Sch.)*  
*A vault where lie heaped up many implements of iron (not a mass of iron).*

*Viel, wenig*, when preceded by an article or adjective pronoun, are always declined—*das viele Geld, sein weniges Geld, &c.*

38. **Solch**.—There are three different ways of using *solch*:—

I. It may precede the indefinite article, and is then undeclined.

II. It may follow the indefinite article, and is then declined.

III. It may stand alone, without article, mostly, but not always, in the plural.

*Solch ein Wetter ist selten zu solcher Hitze gekommen. (Goe.)*  
*Such heat has rarely been followed by such a storm.*

*Ein solcher Auftrag schreckt mich nicht, mit solchen Schätzen kann ich bienen. (Goe.)*  
*Such a commission does not frighten me; I can let you have such treasures.*

*Obs. 1.* If *solch* precede another adjective, two forms are admissible. *Solch edler Mann, or solcher edle Mann.*

*Obs. 2.* *Such a good man* generally means *so good a man*, and is rendered *ein so guter Mann*.

*Obs. 3.* *Such a* is often *so ein*.

39. **ADJECTIVE AFTER PERSONAL PRONOUNS**.—After the plural, and the oblique cases of the singular of personal pronouns, the weak form of the adjective is used; after the nominative singular, the strong form.

*So geh', du deutscher Bär. (Less.)*  
*Go then, you German bear.*

*Ruhet sanft, ihr Geliebten,*  
*Rest peacefully, ye beloved.*

*Mir armen Manne.*  
*To unhappy ms.*

40. **INDECLINABLES IN er**.—The indeclinable words ending in *er* formed from the names of towns and districts are really genitives plural. They are written with capital letters, which would not be the case if they were adjectives.

*Die Dresdener Gallerie, The Dresden Gallery* (lit. *the gallery of the Dresdeners*).

*Der Mainzer Hof, The Hotel de Mayence* (lit. *the hotel of the Mayencers*). So also *der Schweizer Hof*.

41. INFLECTION DROPT IN POETRY, &c.—In poetry, and in familiar conversation, adjectives are used without inflection before the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

Jede herbe Noth der Meinen  
Schlug an mein empfindend Herz. (Sch.)

*Every bitter sorrow of my people smote my heart, and it felt the blow.*

So schön Wetter, baar Geld, auf gut Glück, &c.

Adjectives are also undeclined when they follow their substantives, as is often the case in ballad poetry.

Als Kaiser Rothbart lobesam  
Zum heil'gen Land gezogen kam,  
Da muß' er mit dem frommen Heer  
Durch ein Gebirge, wüst und leer. (Uhland.)

*When Emperor Barbarossa the Good came marching to the Holy Land, needs must he pass with the pious army through a mountain region waste and bare.*

*Obs.* This does not apply to adjectives accompanied by the article.

Auch die Armuth macht stolz, die unverbiente. (Goe.)  
*Poverty, too, undeserved poverty, makes us proud.*

Such an adjective is more like a substantive in apposition to that which precedes it.

## ACCUSATIVE CASE.

42. MEANING OF ACCUSATIVE.—The primary use of the Accusative is to answer the question *whither*. This comes out most clearly in German in its use after the preposition *an*, *auf*, and denoting motion or intended motion to a place. From this meaning it naturally passes to denote *extension* in space or time, and the analogous ideas of weight, measure, &c. And, above all, it is used to denote the direct object of a verb, or that to which its action is primarily directed.

43. SPACE AND TIME.—The accusative is used to form adverbial expressions answering to the questions *how long?* *how far?* *over how much space?*

Ungefähr eine Stunde von der Stadt liegt Wahlheim. (Goe.)  
*About a league from the town lies Wahlheim.*

So saß er viele Tage,  
 Saß viel Jahre lang. (Sch.)  
*So sat he many a day and many a year.*

Notice especially its use with compounds of *herauf*, *herab*, &c.,

Der Mönchsteufel polterte die Treppe herauf. (Klinger.)  
*The convent demon blundered upstairs.*

44. TIME WHEN.—The answer to the question *when*, when made definite by some word like *this*, *each*, or an ordinal numeral, is put in the accusative.

Sie treffen diesen Vormittag noch ein. (Sch.)  
*They will arrive before noon to-day.*

Seid jede Stunde des Befehls gewärtig. (Sch.)  
*Be prepared for orders at any hour.*

The preposition *an* with dative is used as freely as the accusative to answer the question *when*?

Noch an eben diesem Abend erschien Gustav Adolf. (Sch.)  
*That very evening Gustavus Adolphus appeared.*

The day of the month is given by the accusative in the heading of a letter, &c., by the accusative or *an* with dative in a connected sentence.

Strasßburg im Elsaß, den 4. Juli 1872.

Am 28. August 1749, Mittags mit dem Glockenschlage zwölf, kam ich auf die Welt. (Goe.)

45. EXTENT, WEIGHT, MEASURE, &c.—With verbs and adjectives of *weight*, *measure*, *price*, *age*, &c., the accusative answers the question *how heavy?* *how long?* *how costly?* &c., in each case denoting the extent to which the quality (weight, price, &c.) goes.

Die Kiste wiegt einen Centner.  
*The chest weighs a hundred weight.*

Es ist keinen rothen Heller werth.  
*It is not worth a brass farthing.*

*Obs.* The neuter accusative (*viel*, *wenig*, &c.), used with many verbs to denote the extent of their action, is scarcely to be distinguished from an adverb.

Das hat uns viel geschadet.  
*That has injured us seriously.*

46. NEARER OBJECT.—The action of a verb may affect two objects, a person and a thing, for example. On one of these it is considered to act more directly; and to this the name *nearer object* is given.

The nearer object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. It is often its only object.

Was schmückt den Jüngling, ehrt den Mann.  
*What graces the youth, does honor to the man.*

Dann soll sie ihre Kunst dem Sohn erweisen. (Freitag.)  
*Then it shall show the son its cunning.*

*Obs.* Certain intransitive verbs, like *singen*, *weinen*, *flagen*, occasionally take an accusative in poetry, though they have transitive compounds that might be substituted for them. Compare in English "*I sing the sofa.*" (Cowper.)

47. GERMAN AND ENGLISH TRANSITIVES. — German differs less than most languages from English in the matter of transitive verbs. Nearly all German transitives, except a few inseparable compounds of *durch*, *unter*, *um*, *über*, have transitive equivalents in English; though on the other hand, owing to the disappearance of the dative inflexion from English, many English verbs, as *to help*, *to serve*, &c., have intransitive equivalents in German.

48. COMPOUNDS OF *Se*.—With a very few exceptions, the compounds of *se* take an accusative. The force of *se* is in fact (Acc. § 154) to turn intransitive verbs into transitive, or to make transitive verbs govern a different accusative. Thus from *weinen*, *weep*, intransitive, comes *beweinen*, *bewail*; from *bedienen*, *serve*, with a dative, comes *bedienen*, *serve*, with an accusative; from *schenken*, *give*, with a dative of the person, comes *befchenken*, *present*, with an accusative of the person.

*Obs.* 1. *Begegnen*, *meet*, *behagen*, *bekommen*, *suit*, *beliebt*, *please*, take a dative. For the reason see § 64.

Wie wird die Reche dir leidet  
 Nach der Mahlzeit bekommen? (Goe.)  
*Alas! how will the reckoning after dinner suit you?*

Solchem Stich begegnete der andere dadurch, daß er das Gleiche that. (Freitag.)  
*The other met a thrust of this kind, by doing the same.*

*Obs.* 2. Befehlen, *command*, takes a dative of the person, and an accusative of the thing, but not necessarily both together.

*Obs.* 3. Bedürfen, *need*, begehren, *desire*, take either a genitive (partitive) or an accusative.

*Obs.* 4. Beharren, *persevere*, beruhen, *rest*, bestehen, *consist*, bewenden, *come to an end* (bewenden lassen, *acquiesce in*\*), and a few words like berosten, *get rusty*, are intransitive.

49. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—The cognate accusative with an intransitive verb, as *to sleep a sleep, to fight a fight*, is not uncommon in German. Of course the noun has generally an adjective with it.

Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft. (Luth.)  
*I have fought a good fight.*

Er starb einen Reiterstod. (Goe.)  
*He died a trooper's death.*

*Obs.* Sterben also takes a genitive in the same sense.

Sie starb eines bösen Todes. (Grimm.)  
*She died a cruel death.*

50. ACCUSATIVE ANALOGOUS TO COGNATE.—Somewhat similar to the cognate accusative is another idiomatic use of the accusative after intransitive verbs, in the phrases Thränen weinen, Zorn blicken, Freude athmen. These accusatives denote that which is produced or exhibited by weeping, looking, &c., not the act itself, as in the case of Kampf kämpfen, Schlummer schlummern.

Das Mühlrad stäubt Diamanten. (Heine).  
*The mill wheel scatters diamond spray (foams diamonds).*

Es regnete Blut.  
*It rained blood.*

51. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.—With a verb of *teaching* the person taught is the direct object, the thing taught a cognate accusative. Hence lehren governs two accusatives.

Wer hat dich solche Streiche gelehrt? (Uhland.)  
*Who taught you such tricks?*

---

\* Er ließ es nicht bei bloßen Worten bewenden.  
*He would not rest satisfied with mere words.*

*Obs. 1.* *Belehren* takes an accusative of the person and a genitive of the thing, especially in the phrase: *Jemanden eines Besseren belehren.*

Glaubst du nicht,

Daß Träume dann und wann der Zukunft uns belehren. (Wieland.)

*Doest thou not believe that now and then dreams teach us things to come?*

*Obs. 2.* The rule of the double accusative applies to a certain extent to *fragen, ask*, when the accusative of the thing is a neuter pronoun.

Ich will dich etwas fragen,

*I will ask you something.*

52. REFLEXIVE VERBS.—With most reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun is the nearer object, and in the accusative case; in some instances, however, it is the dative, and then the verb, if naturally transitive, takes an accusative. Thus from *sich einbilden*.

Bildet euch meinen Schrecken ein! (Lessing.)

*Picture to yourselves my terror!*

53. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Certain sensations, such as *hunger, thirst, sleepiness*, are expressed in German by impersonals with the accusative. Thus *es hungert mich* or *mich hungert, I am hungry*; *es friert mich, I am cold*; *es schläfert mich, I feel sleepy*; *es dürstet mich, I am thirsty*; *es brennt mich auf der Zunge, my tongue is parched*; *es gelüstet mich nach etwas, I long for something*.

Hungert deinen Feind, so speise ihn; dürstet ihn, so tränke ihn.

(Luth. Bible.)

*If thy enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink.*

Es juckt und brennt mich nach dem Namen. (Schiller.)

*I am all impatience to discover the name (literally, I itch and burn).*

*Obs. 1.* Compare in old English, *him hungrede*, and in Scott—

And when in Salamanca's cave

*Him listed* his magic wand to wave,

The bells would ring in Notre Dame.

*Obs. 2.* We say *es friert mich an den Händen*, not *die Hände frieren mir*. See § 67 for the use of the dative in somewhat analogous cases.

*Obs. 3.* Ordinary transitive verbs used as impersonals keep their accusative, as, *es ärget mich, I am vexed*; *es freut mich, I am pleased*; *es dünkt, methinks*, takes sometimes an accusative, sometimes a dative. *Es gilt* takes an accusative of the thing.

Nun gilt es schnellen Rath. (Schiller.)  
*Now speedy counsel is all-important.*

Es gilt seinen guten Namen,  
*His good name is at stake.*

54. THE IMPERSONAL **Es giebt**.—**Es giebt**, meaning *there is* or *there are*, takes an accusative. The real meaning of the phrase is “some power or other produces for us,” but this meaning has become quite obscured.

Da giebt's einen großen Spaß. (Goe.)  
*Then there is great fun.*

*Obs.* **Es** *setzt* is used with the same meaning and construction as *es giebt*.

55. CONSTRUCTION OF **lassen**, &c.—The verbs *lassen*, *machen*, *heißen* are followed by an accusative and infinitive, the infinitive taking the place of the accusative of the thing in § 51.

Laß, Herr, des Opfers Düste steigen. (Sch.)  
*Sire, let the odour of sacrifice ascend to heaven.*

Er hieß inzwischen  
 Im Kloster mich als Laienbruder bleiben. (Less.)  
*He bade me meanwhile remain in the convent as a lay-brother.*

*Obs.* 1. It is important to distinguish the accusative governed by *lassen* from the case (whatever it may be) governed by the infinitive depending on *lassen*, or rather perhaps by the compound verb made up of *lassen* and the infinitive.

Er ließ die Brücken abbrechen,  
*He had the bridges broken down (he bid-break-down the bridges).*

Laß dir nicht schmeicheln,  
*Don't let yourself be flattered (don't let-flatter yourself).*

*Obs.* 2. It will be easy therefore to see the difference between *Laß mich die Zeitung vorlesen*, *let me read the paper aloud*, and *Laß mir die Zeitung vorlesen*, *let some one read the paper to me*.

56. ADJECTIVES WITH ACCUSATIVE. The adjectives *ansichtig*, *gewahr*, *los*, *gewohnt*, *müde*, *satt*, *überbrüssig*, which naturally govern the genitive, are sometimes found with an accusative.

Den Bösen sind sie los, die Bösen sind geblieben. (Goe.)  
*They are rid of the evil one, but evil men are still there.*

Das bin ich nicht gewohnt. (Goe.)  
*To that I am not accustomed.*

This has probably crept in from the conversational usage. Even a preposition and its case are replaced by it in familiar talk.

Das sind auch wir zufrieden. (Goe.)  
*We too are satisfied with that.*



57. Sometimes the accusative is used absolutely, that is, it forms an adverbial expression, not depending in construction on any other word in the sentence.

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen, schlich  
Meros, den Dolch im Gewande. (Sch.)

*To Dionysius, the tyrant, Meros stole, his dagger hidden in his gown.*

---

DATIVE.

58. The uses of the dative in German resemble, for the most part, its use in the classical languages. They fall under three heads:—

1. The *locative* use, after prepositions like *an, auf, &c.*, when rest is denoted.

2. The Dative of *Relation*, including:—

( $\alpha$ ) the dative of the remoter object with transitive verbs ;

( $\beta$ ) the dative governed by many intransitive verbs, &c. ;

( $\gamma$ ) the ethic dative.

3. The Dative denoting *separation*, corresponding to the Latin Ablative.

59. REST AFTER PREPOSITIONS.—The prepositions *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen*, govern a dative when they denote rest at a place, or motion within its limits, an accusative when they denote motion to or towards.

Er ging in's Haus,  
*He went into the house.*

Er blieb hinter der Thür stehen,  
*He remained standing behind the door.*

(For further examples see chapter on Prepositions.)

60. NEARNESS, COMPARISON.—The dative is used after verbs, adverbs, and adjectives denoting *nearness*, and hence after those denoting *comparison, likeness, and unlikeness*. For the act of comparing involves setting things side by side.

Du bist mir nah. (Goe.)

*Thou art near me.*

Du gleichst dem Geist, den du begreifst. (Goe.)

*Thou art like the spirit, whom thou comprehendest.*

Sagt, wem vergleich' ich diese muntere Schaar? (Goe.)

*Say, to whom shall I liken this merry troop?*

Ein bloßer Schall, dem nichts entspricht. (Lessing).

*A mere sound to which nothing corresponds.*

*Obs.* These examples might equally well fall under the dative of relation.

61. REMOTER OBJECT.—A number of verbs, of which verbs of *giving* are the most obvious example, have two objects, the one which they are said to affect directly, is put in the accusative, and denotes the thing given, the other, which is supposed to be more remotely affected by the action, denotes the person to whom it is given, and is put in the dative. The same principle applies to verbs of *telling, advising, permitting, commanding, promising, showing, forgiving, owing, &c.*

Dem Glück bezahlt' ich meine Schuld. (Sch.)

*I paid my debt to fortune.*

Meine Blindheit gib mir wieder. (Sch.)

*Give me back my blindness.*

Ihn will ich den Erinnen weihen,

Ob sie mein Glück mir dann verzeihen. (Sch.)

*I will consecrate it to the Furies, if so be they will then forgive me my good fortune.*

Dem Tell verdank' ich mein gerettet Leben. (Sch.)

*To Tell I owe my rescued life.*

Ich habe dich gelobet meinem Herrn. (Herder.)

*I have promised thee to my master.*

Vertraust du dich doch sorglos

Täglich dem wilden Meer. (Heine.)

*Yet day by day dost thou, without a thought, commit thyself to the wild sea.*

*Obs.* 1. The opposites of these verbs, those of *refusing, grudging, &c.*, take the same construction.

Wer mißgönnt's euch? (Goe.)

*Who grudges it to you?*

*Obs. 2.* The accusative after such verbs is often replaced by an infinitive mood with zu.

So rathe ich dir nur kurz und gut,  
 Desgleichen gleichfalls anzulegen. (Goe.)  
*So I advise you, without more ado, to put on the same costume.*

62. TO BELONG, TO BE DUE.—Neuter verbs meaning *to belong, to be wanting, to be due, to happen, to appear, &c.*, which are nearly akin in signification to the passives of the transitive verbs that take a dative, are themselves, as in English, followed by an dative of the person to whom some thing belongs, &c.

Denn dir gehören meine Pflichten. (Sch.)  
*For to thee belongs my allegiance.*

Und was mir fehlt, du Kleine,  
 Fehlt manchem im deutschen Land. (Heine.)  
*And, little maid, what is lacking to me is lacking to many a man  
 on German soil.*

Ehre dem Ehre gebührt. *Honour to whom honour is due.*

Der schönste Lohn soll dir werden. (Goe.) *The noblest prize shall  
 be thine.*

Eine Nonne, die aus ihrer Zelle wegen Liebshaft entronnen war, wie  
 das so mancher geht. (Freitag.)  
*A nun, who had escaped from her cell, because of an intrigue, as  
 happens to so many.*

*Obs. 1.* Dünken, *'to seem*, is as often found with the accusative. The cognate English word *thinks*, in *methinks* (i. e. *it thinks or seems to me*), should be noticed.

63. RELATION.—VERBS OF PLEASING, &c.—Verbs which denote that one person or thing stands in a certain relation to another person or thing take the dative. The most frequent relations of this kind are *pleasing, displeasing, obedience, resistance, trust, friendship, enmity, fitness, anger*. Many of the verbs of this class are transitive in English; others are followed by prepositions.

Der König, dem das Lied gefiel. (Uhland.)  
*The king whom the song pleased.*

Ich kann nicht sagen, wie der Ort mir widert. (Schiller.)  
*I cannot say how hateful the place is to me.*

Wie wollt' ich dienen dem Herzog hoch zu Pferd. (Uhland.)  
*How gladly would I serve the duke in knightly guise.*

Weil er dem Strome mächtig wehren kann.  
*Because he mightily can stem the stream.*

Curtesirt' ihr immer mit Pastetchen und Wein. (Goe.)  
*Was ever courting her with cakes and wine.*

Meiner Mutter ziemt Wildpret und Fisch. (Uhland.)  
*Game and fish is fitting fare for my mother.*

Run zürnst du schrecklich mir. (Uhland.)  
*Now art thou terribly wroth with me.*

Er vertrauet scheiternd oder landend  
 Seinen Göttern.

*He trusts his gods, whether wrecked or safe on shore.*

Obs. 1. So also compound expressions with similar meanings.

Ich hielt noch keiner Stand. (Uhland.)  
*None ever yet confronted him.*

Des Lebens ungemischte Freude  
 Ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil. (Sch.)  
*Unmixed happiness never fell to a mortal's lot.*

Obs. 2. Notice especially schaden, helfen.

Es wird ihr hoffentlich nicht schaden. (Goe.)  
*It will, I hope, do her no harm.*

64. **Folgen, begegnen.**—Folgen, begegnen, and words of cognate signification take a dative, perhaps from a notion of service on the part of the person who follows or meets one.

Folgt durch die Lüfte dem Klang, folgt durch den Aether dem Strahl.  
*Follows the sound through the air, follows the sunbeam through the ether.*

Nur Einem Traurigen hab' ich begegnet,  
 Der sich verbergen muß, wo Alles jauchzt. (Schiller.)  
*I have met but one mourner, who must shun men's sight when all are joyous.*

Obs. Begegnen is occasionally (Grimm says wrongly) found with an accusative.

65. **DATIVE OF RELATION.**—Besides the above mentioned verbs and adjectives, which are those most frequently found with the dative, nearly all verbs and adjectives may, under particular circumstances, be used with a dative of the

person or thing which their action indirectly affects. This construction is called the *dative of relation*.

Hätt' ich mir nicht die Flamme vorbehalten. (Goe.)  
*Had I not reserved fire to myself.*

Das erste steht uns frei. (Goe.)  
*The first alternative is open to us.*

Nehmt mir's nicht ungut, Nathan. (Less.)  
*Take it not amiss of me, Nathan.*

Ihr seht es ihr an, sie ist rüstig. (Goe.)  
*You see (lit., in her) she is a fine strong girl.*

Vergiß sie jetzt und lebe nur der Freude. (Sch.)  
*Forget them now, and live to joy alone.*

Sei mir begrüßt.  
*I bid you welcome.*

66. DATIVE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. — This dative is especially used where in English we should use a possessive pronoun; very commonly in speaking of parts of the body.

Der Gott des Sieges wandelt ihr zur Seite. (Sch.)  
*The god of victory marches at her side.*

Die Leier, die so hell erschollen,  
 Liegt ihm in Armen, sonder Klang. (Uhl.)  
*The lyre, which erst rang out so clear, lies silent in his arms.*

Ich zog's ihm aus dem Busen. (Less.)  
*I drew it from his bosom.*

Compare in French *je me suis coupé le doigt*, but the application of the rule is wider in German than in French.

67. ETHIC DATIVE.—The dative, especially the dative of personal pronouns, is often used to imply that the person spoken of has an interest in the transaction. It cannot be translated literally in modern English.

Was machst du mir  
 Vor Liebchens Thür? (Goe.)  
*I should like to know what you are doing before your sweetheart's door.*

Und frage mir die Knechte dorten,  
*I wish you to ask the servants there.*

*Obs.* The construction is found in Shakespeare :—

Why, then build me thy fortunes upon the basis of valour. Challenge me the count's youth to fight with him. (*Twelfth-Night.*)

In Latin it is not uncommon.

*Quid mihi Celsus agit?* I want to know what Celsus is doing.

*Tongilium mihi eduxit.* I have to thank him (Catiline) for taking Tongilius out of the city.

The construction is called the *ethic dative*; for more examples see Farrar's Greek Syntax, p. 73.

68. **Sein, etc., IMPERSONAL.**—*Sein, werden*, used impersonally in the sense *I feel, I begin to feel, etc.*, (literally *it is to me, it becomes to me*), always take the dative. So *gehen, ergehen*.

*Es wird mir vor all dem so wirr, so dummt,  
Als ging' mir ein Mühlrad im Kopf herum.* (Goe.)

*This makes me as confused and giddy-brained  
As though a mill-wheel were whirling within my head.*

*Laß dir doch nicht bange sein.* (Less.) | *Es erging ihm schlecht.*  
*Pray don't let yourself be alarmed.* | *It went ill with him.*

69. **OTHER IMPERSONALS.**—Though most impersonals govern an accusative (§ 52), there are a few which take a dative. The chief of these are *es dünkt, es scheint, it seems*; *es grauet, one shudders*; *es ekelt, it disgusts*; *es schwindelt, one feels giddy*; *es bangt, one trembles*; *es träumt, one dreams*.

*Dem Vater grauset's, er reitet geschwind.* (Goe.)  
*The father shudders, he rides swiftly.*

70. **COMPOUND VERBS.**—The compounds of many simple verbs that do not of themselves govern the dative, acquire the power of doing so by virtue of the prefixes with which they are compounded. Such prefixes are *an, auf, bei, ein, entgegen, mit, nach, vor, wider, zu*. Most of these verbs supply collateral illustrations of preceding rules.

*Georg hatte der Schlacht bei Dettingen beigewohnt.* (Archenholz.)  
*George had been present at the battle of Dettingen.*

*Was wollen sie mir anhaben?* (Goe.)  
*What do they want with me (to have at me)?*

*Sie gingen im Range den übrigen Rittern vor.* (Freitag.)  
*They took precedence of the other knights.*

Unterwerft euch dem Kaiser.

*Submit to the emperor.*

Da flößte mir der Geist es ein. (Sch.)

*Then my spirit inspired me with the thought.*

Sie waren mein, im Angesicht der Welt,  
Mir zugesprochen von zwei großen Thronen,  
Mir zuerkannt von Himmel und Natur. (Sch.)

*You were mine, betrothed to me before all the world, by two great potentates, acknowledged mine by heaven and nature.*

Obs. 1. Nachahmen, nachmachen, *to imitate*, take either (1) a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing, as er ahmt seinem Vater Vieles nach; or (2) an accusative of the thing only; or (3) a dative of the person only.

Obs. 2. Notice the construction of nachsehen:—kleine Vergehen kann man Kindern nachsehen, *one can overlook children's peccadilloes.*

71. ADJECTIVES.—Certain classes of adjectives govern a dative; viz. (1) those like fremd, anständig, lieb, where the dative expresses the same relation as after the verbs above enumerated; (2) the adjectives in bar and lich with a passive meaning.

Einen Bürger hofft' er sich gemogen. (Goe.)

*He hoped to find a citizen his friend (favourable to him).*

Eine Seele, die der List und der Liebe gleich unbretretbar war. (Sch.)

*A soul equally inaccessible to intrigue and to love.*

72. COMPOUNDS DENOTING SEPARATION.—Verbs compounded with ab, ent, auß, which denote separation, are followed by a dative, and of course, if transitive, by an accusative as well:—

Der Ring, den er dem Riesen abgenommen. (Wieland.)

*The ring he had taken from the giant.*

Und ihr Haupt,

Dem seines Armes Stütze sich entzog,

Stürzt auf das Kissen. (Lessing.)

*And her head, from which his arm's support was withdrawn, sinks on the pillow.*

Sie konnte ihrem wilden Leben entsagen. (Freitag.)

*She was able to give up her wild life.*

Obs. The same remark applies to the adjective abtrünnig.

73. TAKING AWAY.—Other verbs of *taking away* often take an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person (but other constructions are used):—

Doch hatt' ich einen theuren Erben,

Den nahm mir Gott, ich sah ihn sterben. (Schiller's Ged.)

*Yet I had a beloved heir — him God took from me — I saw him die.*

Er hinterhält ihm sein gerechtes Erbe. (Less.)

*He withholds from him his lawful inheritance.*

74. PASSIVE OF VERBS WITH DATIVE.—When verbs that govern the dative and accusative are used in the passive, the accusative becomes the subject, and the dative remains; those which govern the dative only in the active, are used impersonally in the passive and retain the dative. In no case can the dative which is governed by the active verb become the subject of the passive verb.

Dafür ist mir auch alle Freud' entrißen. (Goe.)

*For that is all joy too taken from me.*

Namen, die nur der Tugend geweiht sind. (Less.)

*Names which are sacred to virtue alone.*

Um diesen deinen lieben Sohn

Soll dir verziehen sein. (Uhland.)

*For the sake of this thy dear son shalt thou be forgiven.*

Damit ist mir nicht gedient. (Rückert.)

*Therewith I am not duly served.*

Compare in Latin, *Non parcetur labori, nobis resistitur, etc.*

75. VERBS OF MOTION.—*To* after a verb of motion is of course naturally expressed by a preposition, zu, nach, &c.\*

Ich reise nach Berlin.

*I am going to Berlin.*

Komm zu mir!

*Come to me!*

Sein Flehen bringt zu keinem Retter. (Sch.)

*His entreaties reach no deliverer's ear.*

*Obs.* But it often happens that, when no particular stress is laid on the motion, a dative of the person without zu, a dative of relation in fact, is found. This is especially the case with pronouns.

\* zu being used in speaking of persons, nach in speaking of places.



Bringt ihr mir nichts von Unterwalden—nichts  
Von meinem Vater? (Schiller.)

*Do you bring me no news from Unterwalden—no news from my father?*

76. COMPOUNDS WITH *be*.—The remoter object of simple transitive verbs, or the dative case which follows intransitive verbs, becomes the nearer object of their compounds with *be*. Thus:—

Er schenkte mir ein Buch.

Er beschenkte mich mit einem Buche.

Er dient mir—er bedient mich.

See § 48.

## GENITIVE CASE.

77. MEANING OF THE GENITIVE.—If it be assumed that the genitive, like the dative, referred originally to locality, its first meaning is *from*, that of the dative being *at*. It accordingly denotes primarily the origin or source of anything, an idea now mostly expressed in German by the preposition *von*. Another way of speaking of it is “the genitive denotes adjectival additions.” To understand this it is only necessary to reflect that an adjective may be formed from any noun, as *horse*, to mean *belonging to or connected with a horse*. The genitive case is, according to this view, such an adjective. In some languages the terminations by which adjectives are formed from nouns are the same as those of the genitive.

The genitive is most frequently dependent on another noun; but it may also be governed by verbs; adjectives or prepositions.

The chief uses of the genitive in German are:—

I. The genitive depending on an ordinary noun which may be—

(a.) Subjective, closely allied to which is the possessive Genitive.

(β.) Objective.

II. The partitive Genitive.

III. The Genitive of *material, quality, &c.*

*Obs.* German, like other modern languages, tends more and more to dispense with inflexions, and therefore we find, in modern prose, *von* with the dative preferred in many instances where in older German or in poetry, a genitive is the natural construction.

78. SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE.—Genitives depending on substantives derived from verbs are generally divided into *subjective* and *objective*. The expression “Cæsar’s conquest of the Gauls” reminds us of the simple sentence “Cæsar conquered the Gauls;” in which *Cæsar* is the subject, *the Gauls* the object. Now, we may attach to the noun *conquest* attributes associating it with Cæsar and with the Gauls respectively. The genitive *Cæsar’s* used for this purpose is called the *subjective genitive*, because it makes us think of the subject of a sentence; *of the Gauls* is called the *objective genitive* because it makes us think of the object.

Of course a genitive often depends on a noun unconnected with a verb, and then the above distinction seems to fail. Practically what is called in English the possessive genitive fades imperceptibly into the subjective genitive, and may for all purposes be classified with it.

79. SUBJECTIVE AND POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.—The genitive is used as in English when one noun is used with another to point out the doer of the action or the possessor of the thing denoted by it.

If the governing noun follow the genitive it has no article, being sufficiently defined by the genitive.\*

Mit grauet vor der Götter Neide. (Sch.)  
*I tremble at the envy of the gods.*

Hero’s und Leander’s Herzen. (Sch.)  
*Hero’s and Leander’s hearts.*

Auch Wallenstein ist der Fortuna Kind. (Sch.)  
*Wallenstein too is Fortune’s child.*

The commoner plan in ordinary writing is to put the genitive *after* the noun on which it depends. In that case the genitive is always accompanied by an article or possessive adjective, except it be a proper name, when the usage varies.

Die lustige Festzeit der ritterlichen Kämpfer. (Freytag.)  
*The merry festival of knightly combatants.*

Das Heer des Xerxes.		Die Thaten Friedrich’s.
<i>The army of Xerxes.</i>		<i>Frederick’s deeds.</i>

but— Eine Rede Cicero’s or des Cicero.  
*An oration of Cicero.*

\* Called by grammarians the Saxon (i.e. English) genitive.

80. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.—The objective genitive is used after verbal substantives derived from transitive verbs, and represents their nearer object.

Die kleine Gunst ist mir des größern Glücks  
Verfünderin. (Sch.)

*The smaller favour is in my eyes an earnest of the greater fortune.*

i. e., Verkündet das größere Glück.

Die Erziehung der Kinder,  
*The education of children.*

from man erziehet die Kinder.

*Obs.* 1. It will be obvious that the objective genitive must occur chiefly after nouns ending in *er* or *ung*, or after the monosyllabic nouns from the roots of verbs.

*Obs.* 2. Verbal substantives derived from intransitive verbs cannot govern an objective genitive, nor can those derived from transitive verbs which are followed by another case besides the accusative, take an objective genitive to represent that case. Hence, thinking of the sentence *der Reiche spottet des Armen*, we might say *der Spott des Reichen* (*the scoff which he utters*), not *der Spott des Armen* (*scoff at the poor*). Prepositions must be used, e. g. corresponding to *dem Angriff widerstehen*, *Widerstand gegen den Angriff* (not *des Angriffs*), &c. Again from *einen Mann des Diebstahls anklagen*, we have *die Anklage des Mannes*, but not *die Anklage des Diebstahls*.

81. GENITIVE OR *von*.—There are several cases in which the preposition *von* with a dative is used in preference to the subjective, possessive or objective genitive; they are as follows:—

(1.) Before names of towns and countries incapable of inflexion, and very frequently before such names even when they do admit of inflexion. Thus not only do we say *der Koloss von Rhodus*, *die Lage von Paris*, but also *die Straßen von Wien* rather than *Wiens*. This is especially the case in giving titles, like *der König von Baiern*.

*Obs.* This does not apply to proper names of *persons* incapable of inflexion; the genitive is in their case indicated by the definite article.

(2.) Before indeclinable numerals, as:—

Nach Verlauf von zehn Jahren,  
*After the lapse of ten years.*

*Obs.* Even with *zwei*, *drei*, it is more usual to say *von zwei*, *von drei* than *zweier*, *dreier*.

(3.) When the second noun has no article or adjective preceding it:—

Das laute Dröhnen von Schild und Speer. (Freitag.)

*The loud clash of shield and spear.*

compared with—

Der Zusammenstoß der Schilder und das geräuschvolle Brechen leichter

Speere an entgegengehaltenen Schildern. (Ibid.)

and—

Ein solcher Massenkampf phantastisch geschmückter Kämpfer. (Ibid.)

(4.) Sometimes when the second noun has a genitive depending upon it, to avoid the juxtaposition of two genitives:—

Die Geschichte von der Erbauung der Stadt,

*The history of the building of the town.*

(5.) In cases where there would be ambiguity, as such would arise, for instance, if the painter, the possessor, and the subject of a picture were all described by the genitive. It is usual to put von before the name of the painter, author, etc., and to use the genitive in other cases. Thus:—

Ein Bildniß von Dürer, *a likeness by Durer.*

Ein Bildniß Dürers, *a likeness of Durer, or in Durer's possession.*

82. PARTITIVE GENITIVE.—In all languages a genitive or its equivalent is used to denote the whole from which a part is taken after (1) nouns of number, measure and quantity, (2) cardinal numerals, (3) comparatives and superlatives and ordinal numerals, (4) interrogative and indefinite pronouns, (5) (in many languages) adverbs of quantity. In German von with the dative is preferred to the simple genitive in most of these cases.

*Obs.* There is one case in which von is nearly always used in modern prose, viz., when the partitive genitive is a pronoun.

83. AFTER NOUNS.—After nouns like Theil, Hälfte, Menge, &c., a genitive is used:—

Die Teutonen waren ein Theil des Kimbrerheeres. (Freitag.)

*The Teutons were a part of the Cimbrian army.*

Eine Anzahl französischer Soldaten. (Archenholz.)

*A number of French soldiers.*

In many phrases with nouns of number, quantity, &c., the genitive termination of the governed noun, when unaccompanied by an adjective, is lost, and the two nouns seem to be in apposition:—

Eine Flasche Wein, *a bottle of wine;*

but—Eine Flasche des besten Weines, or vom besten Weine.

84. AFTER CARDINALS.—If the noun depending on a cardinal numeral has no article or other qualifying word, *von* must be used in ordinary prose; if it has, either *von* or a genitive. Very often *von* or *unter* with its dative is put early in the sentence. In poetry a genitive is very freely used.

Sechzig bis siebenzig der Zurückbleibenden übergaben dem Rathe eine Bittschrift. (Sch.)

*Sixty or seventy of those who were left behind presented a petition to the council.*

Es sind jetzt Tausende von Kaufleuten u. (Freytag.)  
*There are now thousands of merchants.*

Von 25,000 Pilgern retteten sich nur 3,000 in eine alte Burg. (Raumer.)

*Out of 25,000 pilgrims only 3,000 escaped to an old castle.*

Es waren unser sechzehn. (Goe.)  
*There were sixteen of us.*

Aller guten Dinge sind drei. (Less.)  
*Of all good things there are three. [A proverb.]*

85. AFTER ORDINALS, &c.—After ordinals, comparatives and superlatives, it is, in prose, a matter of indifference whether the genitive proper or the dative with *von* be used. Sometimes the dative with *unter* or *aus* is preferred. In poetry the genitive is preferred.

Die besten seiner Helden, die lagen in Sachsen todt. (Simrock.)  
*The best of his heroes lay dead in Saxony.*

Der Größte meiner Großen fühle sich durch Deine Hand geehrt. (Sch.)  
*Let the greatest of my grandees feel himself honoured by thy hand.*

Der treueste von meinen Freunden. (Sch.)  
*The most faithful of my friends.*

Hugo war dem Geschlechte nach der erste unter den Pilgern. (Raumer.)  
*Hugo was, by birth, the first of the pilgrims.*

86. AFTER PRONOUNS.—After interrogative and indefinite pronouns and adjectives, the form with *von* is almost exclusively used; as:—

Es strebe von euch jeder um die Wette,  
Die Kraft des Steins in seinem Ring an Tag  
Zu legen. (Lessing.)

*Let each of you do his utmost to manifest the virtue of the jewel in his ring.*

Mehreren von den Prädikanten wurde der Proceß gemacht, und Einige von ihnen wurden sogar aufgehängt. (Sch.)

*Several of the preachers were brought to trial, and some of them even hanged.*

87. AFTER ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.—The partitive genitive is also occasionally used after adverbs of quantity like *genug*, *wenig*, *mehr* :—

Sollten wir nicht hoffen, daß mehr solcher Fürsten herrschen können? (Goe.)

*Should we not hope that more of such princes may reign?*

Laß, Vater, genug sein des grausamen Spiels!

*Let there be an end of the cruel game, my father!*

But it is much more usual to put *genug*, &c., in apposition to the noun it is connected with.

*Obs.* The adjective in *wer Anders*—*was Anderes*—*jemand Anders*—*etwas Neues*—*nichts Neues*, is really an instance of the partitive genitive. It has, however, come to be treated as a case of apposition, and thus the regular construction is :—

Das könnte zu etwas Schrecklichem führen. (Sch.)

*That might lead to something dreadful.*

88. ELLIPTICAL AFTER VERB.—The partitive genitive, or the dative with *von*, is sometimes used after verbs :—

Sorgsam brachte die Mutter des klaren herrlichen Weines. (Goe.)

*Carefully the mother brought of the bright generous wine.*

Gebt uns von eurem Del. (Luth. Bib.)

*Give us of your oil.*

89. GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR QUALITY.—The material of which anything is made, or some attribute or quality of it, are often treated as if they indicated its origin, and are consequently expressed by the genitive or by *von*. Material is hardly ever expressed by the genitive proper; quality may be expressed in either way, but the dative with *von* preponderates in prose :—

Ein Mann edlen Sinnes, or von edlem Sinne,  
*A man of noble mind.*

Ja wir sind eines Herzens, eines Blutes. (Sch.)

*Aye, we are of one heart, of one blood.*

Zeigte sich tapfer und mächtig und gegenwärtigen Geistes. (Goe.)

*Showed herself brave and vigorous and of ready wit (presence of mind).*

Ein Cavalier von Kopf und Herz ist überall willkommen. (Goe.)  
*A cavalier with brains and feeling is everywhere welcome.*

Man hat mich vor ein Gericht von Männern vorgefordert. (Sch.)  
*I have been cited before a court of men.*

Ein Strahl von Hoffnung,  
*A ray of hope.*

Ein System von Regeln,  
*A system of rules.*

*Obs.* It should be remembered that the genitive of quality or material, &c., is only one way, and by no means the commonest, of expressing the idea. Adjectives and compound words are very frequently used for the purpose. Thus:—

Ein Tisch von (or aus) Marmor,  
 Ein marmorner Tisch,  
 Ein Marmortisch,

are all equally correct. So again, we may say either ein Knabe böser Art, or ein bössartiger Knabe.

90. GENITIVE WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.—A considerable number of adjectives and verbs govern a genitive, though the tendency of modern prose writers is, whenever the reason for a genitive is not very obvious, to prefer the accusative, or to use a preposition. In poetry the genitive is retained in cases where it would be pedantic to use it in prose. The genitive in question may generally be traced to the notion either of participation or of separation, mental or physical.

91. PARTICIPATION.—Adjectives denoting *participation in*, or the reverse, and consequently those of *knowledge, habituation, guilt* and their opposites, take a genitive:—

Und sind die Edeln dieses Bundes theilhaftig. (Sch.)  
*And are the nobles privy to this league.*

Nicht des Schwertes gewohnt ist diese Hand. (Sch.)  
*This hand is unused to the sword.*

Du bist dir nur des einen Triebes bewußt,  
*You are conscious only of the single impulse.*

*Obs.* 1. Notice with *bewußt* the dative (like the Latin *sibi conscius*) of the person who shares the knowledge.

*Obs.* 2. *Theil nehmen* takes an with a dative; *schuldig* takes a genitive of the penalty or the crime, but an accusative of the thing owed—as *er ist mit Dem schuldig, der schweren Sünde schuldig*; *bewußt* generally keeps the genitive, but sometimes takes an accusative; *gewohnt* is found most often with an, sometimes with an accusative, but least frequently with a genitive; the verb *gewöhnen* with an or zu; *funbig* has no construction but the genitive.

Du nahmest Theil an meinem tiefen Schmerz. (Goe.)  
*You sympathised in my deep sorrow.*

Sie werden sich an manches noch gewöhnen müssen. (Sch.)  
*There is still much to which they will have to get used.*

92. FULNESS, EMPTINESS.—Adjectives denoting *fulness, emptiness, satiety, and verbs of wanting*. \*—

Die Erde ist voll der Güte des Herrn. (Luth. Bib.)  
*The earth is full of the goodness of the Lord.*

Ach, ich bin des Treibens müde,  
*Alas, I am weary of this sort of life.*

Bedürft ihr meiner zur bestimmten That. (Sch.)  
*If you need me for a deed resolved.*

Mitten im Regen ermangelten wir sogar des Wassers,  
*Even while it was raining we were short of water.*

Obs. 1. Voll is often used with von. If followed by a single noun without epithet, the genitive termination is dropped, as after nouns of measure, as, ein Faß voll Wein. Lastly, an inflected form voller is used in the predicate, as:—

Die Landstraße war voller Soldaten. (Tieck.)  
*The high-road was full of soldiers.*

It should be noticed that only voller is so used, not volle, volles, as one might have expected. It is probably a survival of the inflexion of the adjective used as predicate.\*

Obs. 2. Like voll, the adjectives bloß, frei, leer, lebig, often take von; satt, los, müde, übertrüffig are often found with an accusative; reich, arm, take an—

Keine Periode ist so arm an Charakteren. (Freitag.)  
*No age is so poor in characters.*

Wohl dem, der frei von Schuld und Fehle  
 Bewahrt die kindlich reine Seele. (Sch.)

*Happy is he who keeps his soul, pure as an infant's, free from blame and sin.*  
 See also § 56.

Obs. 3. Among verbs of wanting, ermangeln always takes the genitive, entbehren, *to do without*, the accusative, at least in modern prose; brauchen, bedürfen, the genitive or accusative indifferently. The impersonal es fehlt is accompanied by an.

In Kühnheit wirt's euch auch nicht fehlen. (Goe.)  
*Nor will you lack boldness.*

93. REMOVAL, SEPARATION.—Some verbs and adjectives denoting *removal or separation* take a genitive, often in addition to an accusative. Under this head may be included verbs like sich weigern, sich wehren, sich erwehren, schonen (*to keep one's hands off, spare*), sich scheuen (*to shrink from*), and several reflexive compounds of ent.

\* Voll is occasionally formed with a simple dative.



Nach der Genuß scheint eines Theils der Poesie entkleidet, welche der Deutsche so leicht um seine Freuden spinnt. (Fröytag.)  
*Even enjoyment seems stripped of some of the poetry, with which the German is so ready to invest his pleasures.*

Der Edelste bleibt nicht der Fesseln frei,  
*The noblest remains not free from fetters.*

Einer großen Furcht sind wir entledigt. (Sch.)  
*We are relieved from a great anxiety.*

Sogar der Sultan kann der Lust sich nicht erwehren. (Wieland.)  
*Even the sultan cannot resist the temptation (abstain from the desire).*

O schöne sein, mein Vater. (Wieland.)  
*O spare him, my father.*

Fast scheu' ich mich des Sonderlings. (Less. Nath.)  
*I almost shrink from the strange being.*

Obs. With many such verbs you may be used, with sich scheuen and with other verbs of fearing vor.

Von Feindesnoth sind wir befreit. (Sch.)  
*We are delivered from fear of the foe.*

94. VERBS, &c., OF FEELING.—Verbs and adjectives denoting feelings such as *pity, shame, pride, repentance, care*, often take a genitive denoting the cause of the feeling. Many of these are reflective, others impersonal. The impersonals take also an accusative of the person who feels:—

Sich des Bedrängten zu erbarmen.  
*To have pity on the oppressed.*

Deß rühme der blut'ge Tyrann sich nicht. (Sch.)  
*Let not the bloody tyrant boast of that.*

Wer erfreute sich des Lebens,  
 Der in seine Tiefen blickt? (Sch.)

*Whoever would take pleasure in life, who gazes into its depths?*

Mein edler Feldherr, den des Blutes jammert. (Sch.)  
*My noble captain, who grieves over the bloodshed.*

Der Ritter, seines schönen Waffenkleides froh. (Fröytag.)  
*The knight, proud of his beautiful panoply.*

Dein nicht zu achten. (Gos.)		Nehmt euch meiner an,
<i>Not to care for thee.</i>		<i>Take pity on me.</i>

Die des Altars pflegen, genießen des Altars (Luth. Bib.)  
*They which wait at the altar, are partakers of the altar.*

*Obs.* In many of these cases, the genitive may be replaced by a preposition and its case; *sich freuen*,\* for instance, takes *über* or *auf*; *sich erfreuen* takes *an* with a dative; *sich schämen*, *über*; *achten* an accusative or *auf*; *genießen*† often an accusative; *pflegen*, to take care of, generally takes the accusative; verbs of wondering prefer *über*.

Wie stugte der Pöbel über die neuen Livreen! (Goe.)  
*How the populace stared at the new liveries!*

Sich genieße die Geseze. (Sch.)  
*I enjoy the benefit of the laws.*

95. REMEMBERING, DESIRING.—In some languages verbs meaning to *lay hold of* take a genitive, which is often considered to be an instance of the partitive genitive. In German the usage is confined to figurative grasping; hence verbs of *remembering* (and its opposite, *forgetting*), *desiring*, *striving after*, *expectation*, *presuming to*, etc., with adjectives of similar meaning take a genitive.

Sei des Todes eingedenk (*memento mori*),  
*Be mindful of death.*

Vergiß=mein=nicht.—Sich denke dein,  
*Forget-me-not; I think of thee.*

Enig werde dein gedacht, | Beseißt euch des Schreibens. (Goe.)  
*Be thy memory for ever cherished. | Be diligent in writing.*

Sprecht, wessen soll man sich zu euch versehen? ‡ (Sch.)  
*Say, what shall we expect of you?*

Da saß ein Mann und wartete der Fähre. (Sch.)  
*There sat a man and waited for the ferry.*

Hat sich der Landmann solcher That verwogen? (Sch.)  
*Has the countryman presumed to do such a deed?*

Seid jede Stunde des Befehls gewärtig.  
*Expect the order at any hour.*

\* Man freut sich über das Geschehene; am Gegenwärtigen; auf das Künftige oder dazu. (Sanders.)

† On the same page of Goethe's *Wahlverwandtschaften* one finds, — Des Lebens genießen and das früh so sehnlich gewünschte, endlich spät erlangte Glück zu genießen, illustrating very well the principle that the genitive remains in well-known phrases, while in less simple expressions the accusative is preferred.

‡ Sich versehen is also found with an accusative:—

Sich hätte mir eher des Himmels Einsturz versehen als dich.

*Obs.* Verbs of *hoping*, *harren*, *hoffen*, *warten*, *prefer* auf with an accusative; *begehren* often takes an accusative or nach; *begierig*, and the impersonal *es gelüftet*, nach; *denken*,\* *sich* erinnern, an; *vergessen* an accusative.

Der rohe Basalt hofft auf die bildende Hand. (Sch.)

*The rough basalt awaits the sculptor's hand.*

Laß mich

An jene goldnen Zeiten mich erinnern! (Sch.)

*Let me recall to mind those golden days!*

96. ACCUSING, REMINDING.—Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, *reminding* take a genitive of the crime, with an accusative of the person:—

Welcher Sünde zeigt dich dein Gewissen?

*Of what sin does thy conscience accuse thee?*

Wahnen, ermahnen take an; verbs of *acquitting* often take you.

97. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE.—Certain adjectives, either directly derived from transitive verbs, or expressing the same idea as such verbs, take an *objective* genitive, like the nouns mentioned in § 80. Such are:—

(1.) *Ansichtig*, *verlustig*, *gewiß*, *habhaft*, *kundig*,† etc., from *ansetzen*, *verlieren*, *wissen*, *haben*, *kennen*, &c.

(2.) *Würdig*, *unwürdig*, and sometimes *wertth*. Also the verb *würdigen*.

(3.) Adjectives denoting power over, and hence verbs like *sich bemächtigen*:—

Ich bin des Wegs nicht kundig. (Sch.)

*I am not acquainted with the road.*

Und als der Herr mein ansichtig ward. (Sch.)

*And when the lord caught sight of me.*

Wie wurdet ihr der Burgen mächtig? (Sch.)

*How did you become masters of the castles?*

Die Franzosen hatten sich des Meeres versichert. (Archenholz.)

*The French had made sure of the sea.*

98. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.—The genitive of nouns is used, either alone or with an adjective, to form adverbial expressions—

\* Denken an, or with genitive, *to call to mind*; denken auf, *to excogitate*; denken von, *to have ideas about*.—Was denken Sie von ihm?

† Some of these fall equally well under § 91; adjectives denoting power over, under § 95; *verlustig* under § 93. *Ansichtig* often takes an accusative.

- (1.) Of time when :—

Morgens, Abends, jedenfalls, Anfangs, much as we sometimes say "of a morning."

- (2.) Of manner :—

Unglücklicher Weise, *unluckily*.

Doch schnellen Schritts müßt ihr vorüber eilen. (Sch.)

*But swiftly must you hurry past.*

In the same way, forms like blindlings, eilends, vergebens, höchstens, &c., may be accounted for.

- (3.) Of place :—

Er sucht ihn aller Orten,

*He seeks him everywhere.*

Many adverbs formed in a similar way are found in English—*else, unawares, needs, once, twice, thrice, thence, whence* (originally written *ones, twies, thries, thennes, whennes*.) Compare also the Scotch *blindlins, sidelins*. (Latham.)

99. NOUNS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Cases of substantives which like the Latin *causa, instar*, have come to be used like prepositions, or rather, like adverbs with nouns depending on them, take a genitive. Such are *fract, by virtue of; um... willen, for the sake of; behuf, in behalf of, &c.*

100. **Während**, &c.—*Ungeachtet, unbeschadet, während* are properly, of course, participles; and consequently their construction with a genitive is probably an instance of the genitive absolute (or in the phrase *dem ungeachtet* of the dative absolute). Thus, *meines Widerstandes ungeachtet* would mean, literally translated, *my resistance being disregarded*; *während des Proceffes*, *the lawsuit pending, pendente lite*. Luther writes :—

*Ungeacht, ob Besserung oder Mergerung daraus folgt,*

*i. e. It not being considered, whether the result is to make things better or worse.*

There are traces of the same usage in English :—

*Nathelesse, considered his distresse,*

*Thus to him spake she of his jelousie.* (Chaucer.)

The usage being misunderstood, it is customary now to write *considering* instead of *considered*.

Phrases with *during, notwithstanding, &c.*, are similarly traced to an absolute case, probably, according to its Anglo-Saxon antecedents, the dative. See Adams' *English Language*, p. 178.

## THE CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

101. ORIGINAL MEANING.—Prepositions were originally adverbs of place. Many of them are still used as such, both alone and as the prefixes of compound verbs. Thus *auf!* means *up and be doing!* *Die Sonne ist aufgegangen, the sun is gone up, risen.* It has been mentioned, in speaking of the different cases, that they also, or at least the Dative and Accusative, once referred to locality. In some languages, in fact, the case-endings can be identified with words expressing something to do with place. As might be expected, only the most general notions of the kind have been embodied in the permanent inflexions; the more precise ideas are expressed by the adverbs of place which we call prepositions. In English we use nothing but prepositions, and do not inflect our nouns at all, except in the possessive; we can easily imagine a language in which a simple noun (*fire*, for example) should have twenty or thirty different inflexions to express *above the fire, beside the fire, from beside the fire, &c., &c.\** In many cultivated languages, especially in Greek, and to a less extent in Latin and German, a middle course is adopted. The Greek genitive, among other meanings, denotes *from a place*, the dative *at*, the accusative *to*. The word *παρά* means *beside*, and may be connected with any one of the three cases. We thus obtain phrases meaning *from beside ... , beside ... , to the side of ...*. So again by using *ἐπί* (*up, upon*) we have phrases meaning *upon ... , to upon ...*. This contrivance of expressing the more indefinite relations of place by cases, the more precise by prepositions, seems to have suggested itself as the necessity for accurate description came to be felt. Modern Greek and the Romance languages have gone still further, and prepositions have nearly superseded cases; † in German the middle course of the classical languages has

---

\* This is in fact the case in Basque and Greenlandic, and other less civilised languages. Farrar l. c.

† See Farrar, *Greek Syntax*, pp. 86, 87, who quotes from the biography of Augustus his habit of using prepositions in order to be more perspicuous. He would say, for instance, *impendere in rem*, rather than *rei*, as his contemporaries. In Dutch, case-inflexions are being superseded by the use of *van* and *aan*.

been adopted, and that language is consequently able to express with ease shades of meaning that require a circumlocution in English or French.

102. METAPHORICAL.—From the local meanings of the cases and the prepositions a variety of metaphors have been drawn. It is scarcely possible to write a sentence in English without using some such metaphors, and in German their use is almost equally frequent. It is generally easy to show how any such usage is derived from the first meaning of the preposition, but more difficult to say why that preposition should have been selected rather than any other. In English and German, verbs of the same origin and meaning often take different prepositions. In the following sections, the more easily explained metaphors are simply enumerated, the more difficult have often comments attached.

103. PLACE OF PREPOSITION AND CASE IN SENTENCE.—The question will be naturally asked—What place do cases with prepositions fill in a sentence? After what has been said, that all the meanings expressed by prepositions could be rendered by case-endings, it is natural to look for an answer in the usage of the simple oblique cases. A preposition and its case may then be used (1) to complete or define the meaning of a verb, or to play the part (2) of an adverb or adjective forming a distinct member of a sentence, or (3) of an attribute to a noun. Thus—

- (1.) I confide *in* you.
- (2.) He was *in* earnest; he spoke *in* jest.
- (3.) A dog *in* the manger.

The use (3) is especially English; it is pretty frequent in German, but avoided in Latin and French.

---

#### PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

104. GENERAL.—The following prepositions are found with the dative or accusative, according to the meaning to be expressed. Generally speaking, with the dative, they answer

the question *where?*, with the accusative, the question *whither?*

*an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen.*

105. *An* denotes contact with the surface (not generally the upper surface); and answers to English *on*, when not synonymous with *upon*. The opposite to it is *ab*, now used only as adverb or prefix.

It is most carefully to be distinguished from *auf*. The following are its chief uses:—

(1.) Of place.—A picture is said to hang *an der Wand*, *on or against the wall*; a ring is worn *am Finger*, a town stands *am Rhein* (a ship floats *auf dem Rhein*), because in each case there is contact, but not with the upper surface. Again with the accusative: *das Wasser reichte ihm bis an den Mund*, *the water reached up to his mouth*.

(2.) Metaphors closely connected with juxtaposition. *Lehrer an einem Gymnasium*, *teacher at a public school*; *Diener am Worte*, *preacher of the Word, the Gospel*; *die Reihe ist an mir*, *it is my turn*; *es liegt an mir*, *it rests with me*; *an Jemand's Stelle*, *in some one's place*; *am Leben*, *in life, alive*; *am Tode*, *at death's door*. When a word is repeated, *an* is used to express *closeness or rapid succession*: *Wo Bank an Bank gedrängt sitzen der Griechen Völker wartend da*, *bench after bench*; *Pfeiler an Pfeiler zerbrach*, *buttress after buttress gave way*. Notice the idiom *es ist an dem, daß er ...*, *he is on the point of*. With accusative we have: *an den Tag kommen*, *to come to light*; *es geht an dich*, *they are at you (attacking you)*; *er greift mir an die Ehre*, *he assails my honour*; *schreiben an Einen*, *to write to*; *ein Brief an mich*, *a letter to me*.

(3.) Of time.—With a dative, equivalent to *on*: *am ersten Juli*, *on the first of July*; *am folgenden Tage*, *on the next day*. With accusative only with *bis*: *bis an den Morgen tanzen*, *to dance till morning*.

(4.) To denote the point of contact, when anything is touched or grasped, in English *by*: *am Kleide halten*, *to hold by the cloak*. Hence applied very frequently to intellectual grasping, as: *den Baum an seinen Früchten erkennen*, *to know the tree by its fruits*; *ich höre am Geläute, daß heute Sonntag ist*, *I hear by the bells that to-day is Sunday*.

(5.) With verbs denoting thought, feeling, or any sort of activity, to denote that to which the thought, &c., attaches itself, and hence its *cause*. In this use the dative with *an* has to a great extent superseded the simple genitive. Thus *leiden an*, *suffer from (a malady)*; *sterben an*, *die of*; *zweifeln an*, *doubt about*; *sich freuen an*, *Lust haben an*, *take pleasure in*; *altern an*, *grow old in contemplating*; *sich rächen an*, *to be revenged on*. Somewhat similar are phrases like *ich habe an dir einen rechten Freund*, *I have a true friend in you*.\* With a few verbs: *glauben*, *believe*; *denken*, *think*; *erinnern*, *remind*; *gewöhnen*, *accustom*, where the idea of turning the thought towards predominates, *an* takes an accusative.

(6.) *In respect of*, with adjectives like *arm*, *reich*, *ähnlich*, *stark*, *jung*, *fruchtbar*, *überlegen*, &c., nouns like *Mangel*, *Ueberfluß*, and verbs of *resemblance*, *gain*, *loss*, *want*, &c., especially the impersonals *es fehlt*, *es gebricht*. Thus—*Arm am Beutel*, *krank am Herzen*, *poor in purse*, *sick at heart*. *Was er an Geld gewinnt*, *verliert er an Ehre*, *what he gains in money*, *he loses in honour*. *Es fehlt nicht an Kühnheit*, *there is no lack of boldness*. Notice *an sich*, *an und für sich*, *in itself*, *of itself*, *zwölf an der Zahl*, *twelve in number*.

(7.) With numerals, *an* (with acc.) means *about*; *an die zehn Thaler*, *about ten dollars*.

(8.) For the use of *an* to form the superlative, see Syntax § 30, *Accidence* § 128.

106. *Auf*, with dative *upon*, in contact with the upper surface of; with accusative *to upon*, *on to*. Cognate with English *up*; as prefix and adverb used in that sense.

(1.) Of place.—*Auf dem Boden liegen*, *to lie on the ground*; *auf einem Pferde sitzen*, *to sit on horseback*; *auf einem Fuß stehen*, *to stand on one foot*, &c.; *auf den Tisch stellen*, *legen*, &c., exactly like the English *upon*. It is further used when we should prefer *in* or *at*—(α) *auf dem Schloß*, *auf der Kanzel*, *auf der Stube*,† &c., where the idea is *up at*; (β) *auf dem Markt*, *auf*

\* Notice the difference between *ich habe viel an ihn verloren*, *I lost a great deal to him* (at cards, &c.), and *ich habe viel an ihm verloren*, *I feel his loss deeply*.

† Especially in speaking of the women's apartments up-stairs in older German.



dem Lande, auf dem Felde,\* auf seinem Gut, &c., sein, auf dem Schloßplatz wohnen, where the notion is of being in an open space. Hence auf der Börse, auf der Realschule, auf dem Gymnasium, auf dem Rathhaus, auf der Post, auf der Straße (*in the open street*), because these are public establishments, accessible to all. But directly the notion of *enclosing* or of *privacy* appears, in must be used, as in seinem Hause, im Walde, in der Stadt, ein Haus in unserer Straße. Sometimes both prepositions are used with the same noun, with a slight difference of meaning; thus in der Schule, opposed to zu Hause, *at home*; auf der Schule, opposed to im spätern Leben. With the accusative the same principles apply: auf den Markt, auf die Post, auf den Kirchhof (but in die Kirche) gehen. Notice ein Kind auf dem Arm, einen Korb an dem Arm tragen.

(2.) Simple metaphors.—Auf der Reise, auf der Jagd sein, *to be on a journey, hunting*; auf einer Hochzeit, einem Ball sein, *to be at a wedding, a ball*; † auf eine Hochzeit, einen Ball einladen; auf frischer That ertappen, *to catch in the act*; auf seiner Hut sein, *to be on one's guard*; auf der Stelle, *on the spot*; er ist auf meiner Seite, *he is on my side, my partizan* (but er geht an meiner Seite, *he walks by my side*); ‡ auf der Geige spielen, *to play on the fiddle*; auf einen Loß gehen, *to rush upon, attack*; was hat das auf sich? *what does that involve?*

Notice especially: es kommt auf mich an, *it depends upon me*; es kommt darauf an, zu wissen..., *it is most important to know.* §

(3.) Of time, with accusative only—(a) of duration, generally into the future: auf drei Jahre mietzen, *to rent for three years*; auf ewig, *for ever*. (β) of a future time, for which an appointment is made: auf den nächsten Landtag verweisen, *to adjourn to the next diet*; and especially where exactness is thought of: Sei

\* Er ist auf's Feld, &c., is common; supply gegangen. So, er muß auf's Land.

† It must be remembered that darauf, worauf are not used in all cases where auf is used with the nouns which da, wo represent. Thus—Er war auf der Realschule, und ich kam auch dahin. Wir gehen auf den Ball; mein Freund wird auch da (or dort) sein. Werden Sie nicht auch hingehen? (Sanders.)

‡ Notice this difference: in the one case *my side* is looked upon almost as a place, like der Markt, der Ball, in the other it is instance of simple contact.

§ The idea is that matters come to a crisis *at me, at that point*, and so everything depends upon me, upon that.

auf die Stunde da! *be there to the minute!* auf den Schlag kommen, *to arrive as the clock strikes.* (γ) Sometimes less rigorously, auf den Abend, meaning little more than *in the evening.*

(4.) Immediate succession (*close upon* or vulgarly *on the top of*) also with accusative—may often be translated *at.*

Auf blut'ge Schlachten folgt Gesang und Tanz. (Sch.)

*On bloody battles follows song and dance.*

Der Baum fällt nicht auf den ersten Hieb.

*The tree falls not at the first stroke.*

So Schlag auf Schlag; Mann auf Mann, where *rapid succession* is the prominent idea; in similar phrases with an *closeness* is rather thought of. Auf einmal, *at once, directly,* comes under this head.

(5.) The most fertile source of metaphors in connection with auf is its use with an accusative case to denote the direction of one's activity *on to* or *up to* something. This applies first to simple extension, as auf or bis auf einen gewissen Punkt, *up to a certain point,* and then to its employment with verbs and adjectives, denoting *aim, preparation, expectation, reliance, influence, &c.,* directly or indirectly. Some of the most obvious of such verbs and adjectives are trachten, zielen, *aim;* hoffen, *hope;* achten, *give heed;* Einfluß üben, *exercise influence;* rechnen, sich verlassen, *rely, gefaßt, vorbereitet, prepared.*

So kann ich auf Herzog Alba's Zeugniß mich berufen. (Sch.)

*Then I can appeal to the Duke of Alba's evidence.*

Ich bin ein Narr auf eig'ne Hand. (Goe.)

*I am a fool on my own responsibility.*

Der Gefangene ist stolz auf seine Unschuld. (Goe.)

*The prisoner is confident of his innocence.*

Schon wehte Meister Urian

Auf diesen Braten seinen Zahn. (Bürger.)

*Already old What's-his-name\* was whetting his teeth for this morsel.*

Es ist nun einmal meine Ansicht, und darauf lebe und sterbe ich.

*It's just my way of looking at things, and in that faith I will live and die.*

\* *i. e.*, the devil.

Among illustrations of this use of *auf* may be noticed *auf den Tod sitzen*, *to be in prison awaiting death*; *auf Christum taufen*, *to baptize in the name of Christ*; *auf das Evangelium sterben*, *to die in the faith of the Gospel*; *auf Wiedersehen*, *au revoir*; *auf Tod und Leben kämpfen*, *to be engaged in a life or death struggle*; *auf seine eigene Verantwortlichkeit*, *on one's own responsibility*. *Denken auf*, *to devise, excogitate*, differs from *denken* with an or a genitive, *to bear in mind*.

(6.) *Auf* with an accusative, forms adverbial expressions of manner with *Art*, *Weise*, as well as with the neuter of the superlative (Acc. § 128), *auf unsere Weise*, *in our way*; *auf Sklavenart*, *like a slave*. Notice also *auf Deutsch*, *auf gut(es) Griechisch*, *in German, in good Greek*. In the case of *Weg*, *auf* takes the dative; *auf diesem Wege*, *in this way*.

### 107. *Hinter*, *behind*.

(1.) Of place.—*Der Hund liegt hinter der Thüre*, *legt sich hinter die Thüre*.

(2.) Simple metaphors.—*Vier Wochen hinter einander*, *consecutively*; *hinter eine Sache kommen*, *to make out*; *hinter das Licht führen*, *to deceive*.

(3.) *From behind* may be rendered by *hinter*.....*hervor*, *herauf*, &c.

*Der Mond ging hinter einem Vorgebirge herauf.* (Goe.)  
*The moon rose from behind a promontory.*

When *her* alone follows, the meaning is *close behind*, as *wir waren hinter dem Feinde her*, *we were at the enemy's heels*.

### 108. *In*, *in* with dative, *into* with accusative.

(1.) Of place.—*Im Zimmer sitzen*, *lesen*, &c. &c.; *in die Stadt kommen*, *in den Fluß werfen*, *in die Erde vergraben*, *im Freien*, *in the open air*, &c.

*In* cannot be used of a single point of space; to translate for instance:—"One circle cannot cut another *in* more than two points."

There is one exception to the strict rule of the accusative being used when *in* means *into*, viz. with the verbs *ankommen*, *eintreffen*, it is correct to say: *der Fürst ist in der Residenz angekommen*, *eingetroffen*. *In* is more freely used than in English before the names of towns, as *die Peterkirche in Rom*, *St. Peter's at Rome*.

(2.) Simple metaphors—Just as in English, *surrounding circumstances* are treated like a place, and we find in *Gefahr sein*, *to be in danger*; in *Noth gerathen*, *to fall into distress*; *sich in alles finden, fügen*, *to adapt oneself to all circumstances*; in *Erfüllung gehen*, *to be fulfilled*. Hence after words denoting *change*, &c., *Wasser in Wein verwandeln*, *to change water into wine*; in *Stücke zertheilen*, *to divide into pieces*; in's Deutsche *übersetzen*, *to translate into German*.

Sie verkleideten sich in Helden des sagenhaften König Artus.  
*They disguised themselves as (into) heroes of King Arthur's court.*

Er ist im Begriffe zu sprechen, *he is just beginning to speak (in act to speak).*

(3.) Of time—generally like the English, to mean at some time or other within a period—as im Jahre 1879.

Wer im Sommer nicht mag schneiden,  
Muß im Winter Hunger leiden.  
*Whoso in summer will not reap,  
In wintertime a fast must keep.*

In negative sentences it cannot be rendered by *in* in English:—

Ich habe ihn in drei Jahren nicht gesehen.  
*I have not seen him for the last three years, at no time in the last three years.\**

In speaking of future time, *in* is used as in English—in zwei Stunden reise ich ab, *I start in two hours.*

With accusative—er geht in's zehnte Jahr, *he is entering his tenth year*; bis tief in die Nacht, *till late at night*; in den Tag hinein leben, *to take no thought for the morrow.*

(4.) *In* is often used very much as an (§ 105) to mean *in respect of* with verbs like *wetteifern*, *to vie*; *sich irren*, *to be mistaken*; and adjectives like *erfahren*, *experienced*; *ähnlich*, *similar*, *geübt*, *practised*, &c. A little reflection will often show which metaphor is more appropriate, and therefore which preposition is to be used; thus experience or practice takes you, as it were, inside a thing, and therefore it is right to

\* So the Latin use of *in* is more extensive than the English:—*In paucis diebus, quibus haec acta sunt, Chrysis moritur (Ter.)*, *Within the few days in which these transactions fell, i.e. a few days after these transactions.*

say erfahren in, geübt in; while a person who is rich or superior in anything, is only, so to speak, brought into contact with it, and so on must be used with reich, überlegen. See, however, the table in the Appendix.

(5.) In is also used to denote the *form* or *manner*, looked upon as a set of circumstances among which the action or thing spoken of finds a place. This occurs after verbs and in the formation of compound adverbs; in Silbern reden; in seinem Namen handeln; im Ernst, in der That, im höchsten Grade &c. The English *in* is used in exactly the same way.

(6.) With accusative, to express direction of measurement, as—Zehn Fuß in die Höhe, in's Gevierte, i.e. *extended into height, into squareness*. We say *ten feet in height, square, &c.* The dative is also used in this way:—zehn Fuß in der Höhe.

109. **Neben** (properly in eben, *on a level with*) expresses nearness without contact; as contrasted with bei, it expresses *at or to the side of* (not before or behind), while bei denotes nearness generally.

(1.) Of place.—Er sitzt, wohnt, geht &c., neben mir, setzt sich neben mich &c.

(2.) Simple metaphors.—Neben der Wahrheit vorbeigehen, *to be beside the mark*. Also often in the sense of *besides, in addition to*, as—

Du sollst keine anderen Götter neben mir haben.  
*Thou shalt have no other gods beside me.*

*Obs.* As a prefix to nouns, it conveys an idea of *inferiority* as well as *addition*, as Nebensatz, *subordinate sentence*; Neben-sonne, *parhelion, mock sun*. But Nebenmensch, *fellow-man*.

110. **Ueber**, *over* or *above*, not denoting contact like auf, except when the notion of spreading over so as to cover comes in. It is used:—

(1.) Of place—

With dative, denoting either—

(a) *rest above*, as über der Thüre hängt ein Gemälde, *a picture is hanging over the door*;

(β) less frequently *rest on the other side of*. Er wohnt über der Grenze, *he lives on the other side of the frontier*.

With accusative, denoting—

(a) *motion to a place above.* Hänge das Gemälde über die Thüre, *hang the picture over the door* ;

(β) *motion over anything so as to cross it.* Ueber einen Graben springen, *to jump over a ditch.* This accusative is used even when the verb of motion is omitted, and can be easily supplied. Er ist schon über die Brücke, *he is already over the bridge* (supply mentally gegangen). Er ist schon über alle Berge, *he is far away by this time.* Notice nach Petersburg über Hamburg reisen, *via Hamburg.*

(γ) *motion so as to cover.* Der Fluß ergoß sich über die Ebene, *the river spread over the plain* ; ein Tuch über den Tisch breiten, *to lay a cloth over the table.*

It is important to distinguish the use of the cases. Thus ein Vogel fliegt über dem Hause, *is flying above the house*, but not so as to pass from one side to the other, but über das Haus would mean that it crossed the house in its flight. So again compare :—

Der Berg ragt über die Wolken empor, *rises above the clouds*,  
with—

Der Berg ragt über den Wolken hervor, *stands out above the clouds.*

(2.) Of time, denoting duration, with an accusative:—

Ueber Nacht bleiben, *to stay over the night*, &c. In this sense generally after its noun :—

Ich werde den Sommer über hier bleiben.  
*I will stay here over the summer.*

More frequently to denote *at the end of*, *after* a certain time :—heute über acht Tage, *this day week* ; wenn ich über's Jahr lebe, *if I live over the year.*

(3.) Simple metaphors.—Etwas über sich nehmen, *to take upon oneself* ; das geht über meinen Verstand, *that passes my comprehension* ; über die Schnur hauen, *to overstep due limits* ; über alle Beschreibung schön, *beautiful beyond description* ; über die Gebühr, *beyond what is due* (acc. because previous motion is thought of), über der Arbeit liegen, *to stick to one's work*, über seinen Büchern liegen, *to pore over one's books* ; über einem Buche einschlafen, *to go to sleep over a book* ; über die Klinge springen lassen, *to put to the sword* ; über's Ohr hauen, *to cheat, take in.*

(4.) From phrases like those last quoted, we easily pass to the idea of *during*, *while occupied with*, as *über der Mahlzeit sprechen*, to talk at dinner-time, especially with verbs meaning *to forget*, *to neglect*, &c.:—

Das stille Schloß zu Hadamar ward über diesen Herrlichkeiten ganz vergessen. (Riehl.)

*These grand doings quite drove the quiet country-house at Hadamar out of his head.*

(5.) The commonest metaphorical use of *über* is with an accusative after verbs, &c., denoting *pleasure*,  *vexation*, *astonishment* and other emotions, as well as after verbs of *speaking* and *thinking*.\* The idea is that of making one's thoughts or emotions pass over the object which excites them. It will be remembered that many similar verbs take an, from rather a different point of view. Perhaps it may be said that the use of *über* is the more general, that of an being limited to cases where it has become idiomatic.

Sernach mußst' ich lachen über den holzgeschnittenen Egmont. (Goe.)  
*After this I could not help laughing at the wooden model of Egmont.*

Ich erschreckte über eure Unverschämtheit. (Goe.)  
*I am astounded at your impudence.*

Das Mitleiden, welches das Geschrei über körperliche Schmerzen hervorbringen sollte. (Lessing.)  
*The sympathy which the cries of (lit. about, over) physical agony were intended to produce.*

Note the elliptical use in the titles of books (Latin *de*):—

Laocoon, oder über die Grenzen der Malerei und Poesie.

In connexion with this meaning it is important to distinguish the dative or accusative, as *die Gäste plauderten über dem Essen*, *over their dinner*, *at dinner*, but *über das Essen*, *about the dinner*. Again *die Räuber geriethen in Streit über der Theilung des Raubes*, *while dividing the spoil*, but *über die Theilung des Raubes*, *about the division of the spoil*.

---

\* We have already seen the difference between *denken an* and *denken auf*. *Denken über* means *to have such and such an opinion of a person*, and does not express, like the other phrases, merely a single act of thought.

(6.) To denote *mastery or superiority*, *über* takes an accusative:—

Die Sonne wird über die Wolken Herr.  
*The sun gets the better of the clouds.*

Unstreitig müssen sich die Geseze über die Wissenschaft keine Gewalt anmaßen. (Lessing.)

*Undoubtedly law must not arrogate to itself any authority over science.*

Der Jünger ist nicht über seinen Meister.  
*The disciple is not above his master.*

So der Aufseher über die Arbeiter, &c.

(7.) Ueber with accusative also means *upon, after*, in the sense of one thing heaped upon another, *on the top of*, as Ausnahmen über Ausnahmen, *exceptions upon exceptions*; Hiob bekam eine traurige Botschaft über die andere, *Job received the news of disaster after disaster.*

111. **Unter** is used in the senses both of *under* and *among*, with both cases.

(a) Meaning *under*.

(1.) Of place—unter einem Baume sitzen, *to sit under a tree*; unter einen Baum sich setzen, *to sit down under a tree*; er tauchte unter das Wasser, *he dived under water.*

Notice unter dem Tische hervor, *from under the table*; er hat mir das Betttuch unter dem Leibe weggezogen, *he drew the sheet from under me.*

(2.) Simple metaphors, especially *under the authority of*, or *under the disguise of*—unter dem Joche eines Tyrannen, *under the yoke of a tyrant*; unter der Larve der Freundschaft, *under the mask of friendship*; unter dem Siegel der Verschwiegenheit, *under seal of secrecy*; unter der Hand, *underhand, secretly*; but Arbeit unter Händen haben, *to have work in hand*; unter vier Augen, *tête-à-tête*; sich unter den Schutz der Geseze begeben, *to put oneself under protection of the laws*; unter dieser Bedingung, *on this condition.*

(3.) Meaning *below, less than*—ein Kind unter zehn Jahren, *a child under ten*; das ist unter aller Kritik, *that is beneath criticism.*



( $\beta$ ) Meaning *among*, and to be distinguished from *zwischen*, which, as its derivation shows, refers to two things, and is translated *between*. *Unter*, however, may be used for *zwischen*, but not *zwischen* for *unter*.

(1.) Of place—*unter den Zuschauern sitzen*, to sit among the spectators; *sich unter die Tänzer einschleichen*, to creep in among the dancers; *unter Räuber gerathen*, to fall among thieves; *es ist Wasser unter dem Weine*, there is water in the wine; and passing easily to simple metaphors—*unter streitenden Parteien Frieden stiften*, to make peace among contending parties, &c. Notice the tendency to the accusative where possible—*er gehört unter die wenigen Rechtschaffenen*, he is one of the few righteous; *ich rechne ihn unter meine Freunde*, I count him as one of my friends.

(2.) Of accompanying circumstances, with dative, as *unter der Predigt*, during the sermon; *unter vielen Thränen*, with many tears.

*Obs.* In *unterdessen*, *meanwhile*, *unterweg*, *on the way*, it seems as if *unter* sometimes took a genitive. More probably these are adverbial forms.

112. *Vor*.—This word and *für* were originally identical, and had a local meaning, and of course others derived from it. About the sixteenth century a distinction began to be made, and *vor* retains that part of the common signification which relates to place and time; *für* is limited to certain derived senses.

(1.) Of place—*in front of*, with dative; *to the front of*, with accusative. *Lailsefer ritt vor den Herzog*, before the duke, into the duke's presence, but *vor dem Herr*, at the head of the army; *Perlen vor die Säue werfen*, to cast pearls before swine.

(2.) Of time—

(a) *vor sieben Uhr aufstehen*, to rise before seven o'clock; *vor Morgen kann er nicht hier sein*, he cannot be here before morning; *es geschah vor deiner Geburt*, it happened before you were born; *vor dem*, formerly. In these instances *vor* stands before a word denoting a point of time.

( $\beta$ ) With words denoting a space of time it is rendered *ago*, as *das geschah vor acht Tagen*, *vor Kurzem*, a week ago, a short time ago. These expressions mean literally *before (the last)*

*week, (the last) short time.* Distinguish carefully from *seit acht Tagen, for the last week.* Notice with a genitive termination *vor Alters, a long while ago.*

(3.) Simple metaphors, as *in the presence of, in preference to.* Vor Gericht (dat.) erscheinen, *to appear before the court;* vor Gericht (acc.) fordern, *to summon before the court;* vor Anker liegen, *to lie at anchor;* vor Gott und der Welt strafbar, *guilty in the sight of God and the world;* das ist mir vor vielen andern Dingen lieb, *dear above many other things;* vor den Kopf stoßen, schlagen, *bewilder, insult,\** vor sich (acc.) hin sprechen, *to talk to oneself (whence vor sich hin, morose, taciturn);* das geht vor sich, *that is going on.*

(4.) As a person who runs away from another is *before his pursuer,* vor einem fliehen, davonlaufen is a natural expression. The metaphor is transferred to cases of *shrinking from, fear,* and the like; erschrecken, einen Abscheu haben vor einer Sache, *to be frightened, horrified at;* vor einem etwas verbergen, *to hide from;* das Herz verschließen vor, *to shut one's heart against;* einen vor der Gefahr warnen, *to warn of danger.*

(5.) Like the Latin *prae,* vor often denotes *cause;* especially in negative sentences the hindering cause:—

Er sieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht. †  
*He cannot see the wood for trees.*

Er ist vor Liebe krank geworden.  
*He is sick for love.*

but—

Er hat sich aus Liebe für sie aufgeopfert.  
*He sacrificed himself for love of her.*

The last two examples show the kind of cause denoted by vor, a cause, namely, *in the presence of which* we are passive. If a *motive* to action be spoken of, aus must be used. Hence we have phrases with vor, like vor Freude springen, *to jump for joy;* vor Hunger sterben, *to die of hunger;* er kann vor Lachen nicht zu Worte kommen, *he cannot speak for laughing.* It should be observed that after vor and aus in this sense the article is omitted.

\* Properly *strike at the face.*

† A proverb, meaning that a person cannot take a general view of a subject because he is too much absorbed in the details.

113. **Zwischen**, *between*, see remarks on *unter*:—*ſie ſiſt zwischen mir und meinem Bruder*; *ſetzt ſich zwischen mich und meinen Bruder*.

Of time—*eſ geſchah zwischen Weihnachten und Oſtern*, *between Christmas and Eaſter*.

Simple metaphors—*Streit, Frieden, Unterſchied zwischen*, *quarrel, peace, difference between*.

### PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE ONLY.

114. **Auſ**, *out of*, opposite of *in*, *into*, denotes motion out of an enclosed ſpace. *Von*, which moſt nearly reſembles it in meaning, is oppoſed to *an* or *auf*.

(1.) Of place—*auſ dem Waſſer ſteigen*, *auſ dem Wald, dem Garten, dem Bette* &c. *kommen*, becauſe we ſay *im Waſſer ſchwimmen*, *im Bette* &c. *ſein*. But *vom Tiſche aufſtehen*, *vom Pferde ſteigen* &c., becauſe we ſay *am Tiſche*, *auf dem Pferde ſiſen*. Again, as we ſay *nach Paris gehen*, we ſay *von Paris kommen*, unleſs we ſpecially mean *out of Paris*, *from within the walls of Paris*.

(2.) Simple metaphors—*auſ dem Elfaß gebürtig* (but *von Straßburg*); *ein Märchen auſ alten Zeiten*, *a tale of olden times*; *auſ dem Schlummer wecken*, *to wake out of ſleep*; *auſ vollem Halſe ſchreien*, *to ſcream with all one's might*; *auſ einer Krankheit Kräfte ſammeln*, *to gather ſtrength after ſickneſs*.

(3.) Of material—with or without verbs of forming, but more generally with:—

Die Form, *auſ Lehm gebrannt*. (Sch.)

*The mould, fire-hardened out of clay*.

*Von* in a ſimilar ſenſe reminds us leſs ſtrongly of the proceſs of manufacture. It means merely *derived from* in a general way. But *auſ* gives us the picturesque idea of a ſtatue, for example, being *in* the marble, before it is *brought out* by the artiſt. Notice *waſ wird auſ dir werden?* *what will become of you?* (lit. *be made out of you*).

(4.) As *in* is uſed after verbs of *changing*, to expreſs the new ſtate, ſo *auſ* may be uſed to denote the original condition:—

*Auſ Freunden können Feinde werden*.

*Friends may turn to foes*.

(5.) Of the motive of an action, in which sense it must be distinguished from *vor*, see § 112; *aus Liebe, aus Mangel an Geld etwas thun, for love, for want of money.* We use *out of* in the same sense.

(6.) Instead of the partitive genitive; but *von* or *unter* is generally preferred in modern German. See § 83.

115. **Außer**, *outside, out of* (old English *without*), denoting *rest*. It is opposed to *in* with a dative, as *aus* generally is to *in* with an accusative.

(1.) Of place—*außer den Mauern, outside the walls; außer dem Lager, without the camp* (Bib.). In this literal sense *außerhalb* is now more usually employed.

(2.) Simple metaphors—*der Kranke ist außer Gefahr, out of danger; außer Stande sein, to be unable; außer Frage,\* Zweifel u. setzen u., to put beyond dispute, doubt; außer der Reihe, out of turn; außer Athem, out of breath; außer sich sein, kommen, setzen, to be, etc. beside oneself.*

(3.) Meaning *except, besides*—

*Ich verkaufe, außer dem Garten, alle meine Grundstücke.*  
*I sell all my lands, except the garden.*

*Außer dem Lohne verlangt er auch gute Behandlung.*  
*Besides his pay he demands good treatment.*

*Obs.* *Außer* is often used in this sense as a conjunction, and then takes the same case after it as before it:—

*Niemand kam mir entgegen außer ein Unverschämter. (Lessing.)*  
*No one came to meet me but an impudent fellow.*

*Ich fand Niemand, außer einen Unbekannten.*  
*I found no one but a stranger.*

In the single expression *außer Landes*, it takes a genitive, and occasionally it is found with an accusative, as *außer alle Mäßen* (Lessing) [in modern German *über alle Mäßen*]; *außer allen Zweifel setzen, to put beyond doubt.*

116. **Bei** † denotes nearness without actual contact, and is used especially to denote proximity to persons. In its ordinary

\* But *davon kann keine Rede sein, it is out of the question.*

† *Bei*, *be*, are generally connected with the Greek  $\epsilon\pi\iota$ , and the Latin *ob*. In Grimm's Dictionary *bei* is derived from the root of *bauen, to build*, and, if he is right, its primary signification, like that of the French *chez*, the Italian *in casa*, and the Danish *hos*, is *at the house of*.

use with a dative, it denotes *rest* only; to express motion, *zu*, *an*, etc., must be used. It is used far more in its metaphorical senses than in its strictly local meaning.

(1.) Of place—bei Schmidt wohnen, etwas kaufen, &c., *to live, to purchase something at Schmidt's*; der Arzt sitzt bei dem Kranken, *the doctor sits by the patient*. Especially used in speaking of the sites of battles, die Schlacht bei Lützen, Roßbach, &c.

*Obs.* In older German, e.g., in Luther's Bible, bei with an accusative, meaning motion, is not uncommon, as man begrub ihn bei seine Väter, *they buried him with his fathers*. Goethe has it occasionally: Ich bitte mich bei Sie zu Gaste, Filangieris kommen diese Tage bei mich zu Tisch. The phrases bei Seite setzen, rufen, &c., are relics of this use.

(2.) Simple metaphors—bei sich haben, *to have about one, in one's pocket, at hand, &c.*; du bist bei' dir, *to be in your senses, master of your faculties* (but bei dir', *at home*); bei sich behalten, *to keep secret*; beim Spiel verlieren, *to lose at play*; es steht bei ihm, *it rests with him*; bei Goethe, *in Goethe's works*; bei Gott ist Erbarmen, *there is mercy with God*; bei Zeiten, *betimes*; bei Seite setzen, *to set aside*.

Bei dem Barbaren war der Heroismus eine helle fressende Flamme.

(Lessing.)

*With the barbarian (in the mind of) heroism was a bright devouring flame.*

(3.) One of the commonest uses of bei is in speaking of contemporaneous events or circumstances. Thus it may be used either of a single event coincidently with which a thing happens, as—

Beim Aufgang der Sonne erbleichen die Sterne.

*At sunrise the stars grow dim.*

Or of the general circumstances, as in the phrases bei Nacht, bei schönem Wetter, bei Licht, *by candlelight*.

This leads to its use in many sentences to express some circumstance that is a help, or a hindrance, or in some way accessory to the principal action mentioned. It must be variously translated in English, as the examples will show:—

Da es nun fast allen Höfen bei dem besten Willen an Geld fehlte.

(Archenholz.)

*As now, in spite of the best intentions, nearly all the courts were short of money.*

Swar hatte schon Philipp der Gütige, bei zunehmender Bevölkerung dieser Länder, auf eine Erweiterung der Hierarchie gedacht. (Sch.)  
*It is true that even Philip the Good, as the population of these countries increased, had thought of extending the hierarchy.*

Das Betreten dieser Wiesenwege ist bei zwei Franken Strafe verboten.  
*Trespassing in these field-paths is forbidden under a penalty of two francs.*

(4.) Just as we say *in good voice, in luck, &c.*, where we mean to denote that *good voice, luck, &c.*, are part of the circumstances about us, so in German they use *bei Stimme, bei guter Gesundheit, bei Athem, &c.* Compare—

Und wär' ich bei Geld,  
 So wär' ich bei Sinnen. (Goe.)  
*And were I in cash,  
 I should be in my senses.*

(5.) Bei is used, much as an is, to denote the exact point of contact by which we grasp any thing either physically or intellectually; *bei den Ohren halten, to hold by the ears; beim Halse fassen, to seize by the neck; beim Namen nennen, to call by name; bei der langen Nase erkennen, to recognise by his long nose.* In the metaphorical sense an is more usual.

(6.) With verbs of swearing, *bei*, like the English *by*, meant originally *in the presence of* the person or thing by which one swears.

(7.) It forms adverbs of manner, with words of number: *bei Haufen, bei Tausenden, bei Tropfen (= tropfenweise).*

Fieber, welche die Fremden bei Tausenden wegrafften. (Niebuhr.)  
*Fevers which carried off the foreigners by thousands.*

(8.) So with repeated nouns: *Mann bei Mann, man after man; Pfeiler bei Pfeiler zerborst und brach, buttress after buttress gave way, &c.*

*Bei weitem* means *by far*; *bei weitem nicht*, *by no means*.

(9.) In one or two expressions: *bei Heller und Pfennig bezahlen to pay to the last farthing, bei* seems to mean the same as *bis auf, bis zu*: *er wurde bei Haut und Haar gestraft, he was punished within an inch of his life.*

(10.) *Bei* is used very frequently in approximate estimates of number; it seems, in that case, to hover between the meanings of a preposition and an adverb, as the Latin *circiter*.

Dann traten *bei* dreißig Seminaristen nach und nach auf. (Goe.)  
Then some thirty seminarists gradually made their appearance.

Die Zeichnung ist *bei* sieben Fuß lang. (Goe.)  
The drawing is upwards of seven feet long.

117. **Binnen**, *within, between prescribed limits*, used only of time. Its local meaning is retained in compounds, *Binnensee, an inland lake; Binnenverkehr, internal communication* (distinguished from communication with foreign countries).

118. **Entgegen**, generally after its case, *to meet; hence, in opposition to*, a frequent but not necessary meaning.

Ihr steigt hinauf, dem Strom der Reuß entgegen. (Sch.)  
You ascend the valley, to meet the Reuss.

Auf, dem Feind entgegen!  
Up and face the foe!

119. **Gegenüber**, after its case, *opposite to, over against*. Hence also *in the presence of*. It conveys, in speaking of rest, the same idea as *entgegen* in speaking of motion. It is occasionally divided:—

Gegen Frankfurt liegt ein Dorf über, heißt Sachsenhausen. (Goe.)  
There lies a village opposite Frankfort, it is called Sachsenhausen.

120. **Gemäß**, after its case, *according to, agreeably to*, as its derivation (from *messen, Maß*) implies.

121. **Mit**\* refers in the first instance to companionship, association, &c., with persons: *mit Einem kommen, essen, arbeiten, &c.*, a slight prominence being given to the person who *kommt, ist, &c.*, *mit Einem*. Hence, in speaking of actions in which more than one person must take part, even when the idea of co-operation is dropped: *mit Einem sprechen, streiten, einen Vertrag machen, &c.*, *to talk, strive, make an agreement with*.

So too *Mitleid mit Einem haben, to have compassion on; mit ihm gleichen Alters sein, to be of the same age with; mit Tagesanbruch aufstehen, to rise at daybreak*.

\* Like *μετα*, from the root of *medius, μεσος, middle*.

Other idiomatic uses :—

(2.) To denote the instrument (like our *with*), because the instrument may be looked upon as cooperating with the agent. Its use is often with difficulty distinguished from that of *durch*, which, for a different reason, also denotes the instrument :—

Durch diese (*i.e.* unsere Schwerter) erwarben wir unsere Landesbestimmungen, und mit diesen werden wir sie vertheidigen.

*By these swords we won our lands, and with these swords we will defend them.*

In this passage the change of the preposition seems to give the idea of trusting in their swords for the future, of something like a friendship with them, after they have served so well as mere instruments. Notice *mit* Namen nennen, *to call by name*; *mit* der Post schicken, *mit* der Eisenbahn reisen.

Nearly akin is its use to form adverbial expressions: *mit* Würde (= würdig) etwas ertragen; *mit* Fleiß (= fleißig) arbeiten, &c.

(3.) From the idea of association, *mit* often comes to mean little more than *in relation to*. Thus, *mit* einer Sache fertig sein, *to have finished off with*; *mit* einer Sache zufrieden, *satisfied with*; es ist aus *mit* ihm, *it's all up with him*.

122. **Nach** is the same word as *nahe*, *near*, and is used especially of motion to a place :—

(1.) Of place, either (a) *to*, of motion to places, not to persons: *nach* Hause gehen, *to go home*; *nach* Berlin reisen (but *zu* dem Kaiser); or (β) *towards*, of implied or suggested motion: das Haus liegt *nach* Süden, *the house has a southerly aspect*. In this sense it is often followed by *hin* or *zu*: *nach* dem Meere *hin* wird das Land flach, *towards the sea the land becomes level*; *nach* der Straße *zu*, *towards the street*.

(2.) It is very frequently used to denote the *aim*, or *direction*, of an effort, and is then rendered by *at* or *after*: *nach* Einem schlagen, stechen, *strike at, stab at*; *nach* einer Sache greifen, fragen, forschen, sich sehnen, *grasp at, ask after, search after, long after*; *nach* dem Arzte schicken, *send for the doctor* (but *zu* dem Arzte gehen); Einem *nach* dem Leben trachten, *to aim at a man's life*; *nach* Brod schreien, *to cry for bread*.



3.) Of time or order, *after*—nach Tisch, *after dinner*; nach fünf Uhr, *after five*; nach dem Kaiser ist er der erste, *he is next to the emperor*.

4.) Hence, just as we speak of shaping our conduct *after* a model, &c., nach naturally means *according to*. In this sense it sometimes follows its case: nach Belieben, *as you please*; meiner Meinung nach, *in my opinion*; nach der Vorschrift schreiben *to write according to directions*; nach Noten singen, *to sing by notes*; die Tochter artet nach der Mutter, *takes after her mother*, or *literally forms her character according to*; nach Wein schmecken, *to taste of wine*; Einen nach seinen Thaten beurtheilen, *to judge by his deeds*; ich kenne ihn nur dem Namen nach, *I only know him by name*.

In this connection an elliptical use is common, *to judge by, considering*—

Seinem Alter nach sollte er klüger handeln.

*Considering his age he ought to act more sensibly.*

123. **Nebst, sammt**, *with*; nebst, from neben, denotes simply companionship, and may be replaced by the conjunction *and*. If we say, der Vater geht nebst seinen Kindern spazieren, we simply state that both father and children go; if mit seinen Kindern, we at once begin to think of the father going to take care of the children. Again, ich habe einen Brief nebst Päckchen auf die Post geschickt, means that a letter and parcels were sent together, but implies no connection between them, except their temporary companionship on the way to the post-office. But einen Brief mit Päckchen would imply that the letter had something to do with the parcels, containing an invoice of them, for instance. Still another word might have been used, viz., sammt, which would have meant that letters and parcels were to be considered as one. So den Baum sammt der Wurzel auströten, *root and all*. Mitsammt, which is but rarely used, is still stronger than sammt:—

Das Schiff mitsammt dem Steuermann verderben. (Sch.)

*To destroy the ship, steersman, and all.*

*Obs.* Neither nebst nor sammt has any of the derived meanings of mit, of the instrument, &c. For these mit is indebted to the notion of subordination it involves on the part of the noun governed by it.

124. **Seit**, *since*,\* denotes the whole duration from a certain epoch till the point of time we are speaking or thinking of. It is distinguished from *nach*, which does not fix any such limit. Thus—

Napoleon's Gewalt war *nach* der Schlacht bei Waterloo völlig gebrochen,

*i.e.*, after the battle of Waterloo, and at any subsequent time you like to name. But had it been *seit* der Schlacht, we should have had some other date mentioned just before, such as the occupation of Paris, or the death of Napoleon, and the sentence would mean, paraphrased, that Napoleon's power was broken after the battle of Waterloo, and remained broken till the time thought of.

*Obs.* Hence *seit* and its case, like *schon lange*, *jam dudum*, are often put with a present tense, where in English we should put a perfect. See the chapter on the Tenses.

Seit diesem Tage schweigt mein Mund. (Sch.)  
*Since that day my lips have been sealed.*

125. **Von**, *from*, originally of motion from a place, without any idea of starting from a closed space; it is, in fact, opposed to *zu* and *nach*, and not to *in*.

(1.) Of place—*von Paris nach London reisen*, *vom Dache fallen*, *to fall from the roof*; *vom Pferde steigen*, *to dismount*; *von Einem sich entfernen*, *to withdraw from*; *von Haus zu Haus*, *from house to house*, &c.

(2.) Simple metaphors—*von Worten zu Schlägen kommen*, *to come from words to blows*; *von Sinnen kommen*, *to lose one's wits*; *von einer Sache befreien*, *to deliver from*; *ein Brief von meinem Bruder*, *a letter from my brother*; *etwas von Einem hören, lernen, erhalten*, *to hear, learn, receive, etc., from*; *vom Herzen lieben*, *to love heartily*; *er spricht von der Leber weg*, *he speaks out of the fulness of his heart*.

(3.) Of time—*von Ostern bis Pfingsten*, *from Easter to Whitsuntide*; *von Tag zu Tag*, *from day to day*.

(4.) The most common use of *von* is as a substitute for the genitive. This is fully discussed in the Chapter on the Genitive.

---

\* Identical with the English *sith*, so that *since* = *sithence* = *seitſter*.

(5.) Von is also the regular preposition for expressing the *agent* after passive verbs. The agent is, in fact, the source of the action. The agent is generally a person or animal; but it is not unusual to personify inanimate objects or abstractions. In cases where an agent is named or implied, the *instrument* is expressed by a noun with *mit* or *durch*. Thus we speak of being *praised, blamed, educated, loved, &c.*, von Einem, of a tree being struck von Blitze, *by the lightning*; of plants being killed vom Frost, *by the frost*; of a person being attacked von einem Fieber, *by a fever*. See also *mit* and *durch*.

The *agent* is rendered by von after an active infinitive with *lassen*, translated by a passive in English, as: sich von einem Künstler malen lassen, *to have oneself painted by an artist*. Notice also phrases like das versteht sich von selbst, *it is self-evident, &c.*; and ein Gedicht von Schiller, *a poem by Schiller*.

(6.) Like *of* in English, to describe the subject of conversation, thoughts, &c.—von einer Sache sprechen, überzeugt sein, Bericht erstatten, *to talk of, be convinced of, give an account of*.

(7.) The use of von as a title of nobility dates from the time when all great families took their names from their estates, as is now more or less the case with Earls, &c., in England. Herr von Falkenstein, for example, meant Lord (or owner) of Falkenstein. It is now often used without any historical reference, and has been prefixed, as a compliment, to family names, von Schiller, von Goethe, &c.

(8.) *In respect of*, klein von Gestalt, *small of stature*; ein Preuße von Geburt, *a Prussian by birth*; ein Philolog von Fach, *a philologist (by profession)*.

*Obs.* Von is often used with some word like *auf*, *aus*, &c., following the noun—von Kindheit auf, *from childhood* (from my youth up); von diesem Standpunkt aus, *from this point of view*; von vorn herein, von da an, *thenceforth*; von heute an, *from this day forward, &c.* Notice especially the odd expression von Alters her, *from of old*, where *is* is probably the genitive or adverbial termination so common in adverbs of time.

126. **Zu** means *to* or *at*, with many idiomatic uses.

(1.) Of place—(a) *to* before the names of persons, or nouns, or pronouns denoting persons, nach being used before the names of places and nouns and pronouns denoting places;

we say nach Berlin, nach diesem Schlosse, but zu mir, zu dem Kaiser.

There remain, however, a great many cases in which the place to which is not accurately defined and in many of these zu is used. Thus: zu Felde ziehen, *to take the field* (in a campaign); zu Grunde gehen, *to be ruined*; zur Kirche gehen, *to go to church*; zu Bette gehen, *to go to bed*. It should be borne in mind that this use of zu to denote motion to places is limited to a number of standing recognized phrases. It is also used in expressions like von Haus zu Haus, *from house to house*.

(β) *at, on, by*, in a limited number of common expressions; zu Hause, *at home*,\* zu Tisch, *at table*; zu Land, *by land*; zur See, *on the sea*; zur Seite, *at the side of*; zur Rechten, *on the right hand*, zur Hand, *at hand*, &c. It was formerly used before the names of towns, but in is now preferred in prose, zu being still often found in poetry. Hence its employment in naming inns (*at the sign of*):—Der Gasthof zum rothen Ross, *the Red Horse Hotel*; der Wirth zur Krone, *the landlord of the Crown*.

(2.) Of time—to denote a point of time. Chiefly limited to phrases in which Zeit or Mal occurs, and to a few other familiar expressions—zur rechten Zeit, *at the right time*; zum ersten Male *for the first time*; zu Mittag essen, *to dine*.

(3.) Simple metaphors—zur Rechenenschaft ziehen, *to call to account*; zur Rede stellen, *to call to account*; zu Rathe ziehen, *to take into counsel*; zu Werke gehen, *to set to work*; zu Schaden, Ehren kommen, *to come to grief, to honour*; mit Einem zu Worte kommen, *to get to speech of*; and where direction only, rather than actual motion is thought of—zu Einem sprechen, sich wenden, *to speak to, apply to*.

(4.) As anything added to another is thought of as brought to it, we have phrases like Brod zum Fleische essen, *to eat bread with meat*; Wasser zu Wein gießen, *to mix water with wine*; gehören zu, *to belong to*, &c., and the compounds hinzuthun, dazuthun, *to add*. As relations between things imply addition, verbs like sich verhalten are often followed by zu; vergleichen, &c., take on the other hand, the simple dative.

(5.) To denote the *purpose* or result of any action or occurrence, the *destination* in fact, to employ an English word

---

\* Notice zu Hause, *at home*—nach Hau'e, *home*, of motion.

applicable both to motion and to intention. Thus *Du* zu einem Kleide, *cloth for a gown*; bestimmen zu Etwas, *to intend for*; ihr zu Liebe etwas thun, *to do something for love of her*; zu nichts taugen, *to be good for nothing*; zur Lehre dienen, *to serve as a lesson*; zu allgemeiner Zufriedenheit, *to the general satisfaction*; zum Narren haben, *to make a fool of*;\* das steht dir zu Diensten, † *it is at your service*.

The most common use of *zu* in this way is *werden*, *machen*, &c., where an appositive complement stands in English. (See §§ 20, 22.) Notice too *zu eigen machen*, *to make one's own*; *zu Etwas verwandeln*, *to change into*.

(6.) To form adverbial expressions, *zu Fuß*, *on foot*; *zu Tausenden*, *by thousands*; *zur Hälfte*, *half*; *zum Theil*, *partly*; *zum Glück*, *fortunately*; *zum Beispiel* (3. B.) *for instance*; and very often in defining the price—*ein Brod zu zehn Pfennigen*, *a penny loaf*.

(7.) With or without *bis*, of extent—*bis zur Raserei lieben*, *to be desperately in love with*; *zum Tode betrübt*, *sad even to death*; *bis zum Verwecheln ähnlich*, *as like as two peas (so as to be mistaken for each other)*.

### PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

126a. **Durch**, identical with English *through*, *thorough*, also an adverb, as in *durch und durch*.

(1.) Of place:—

(a) *through*, in at one side and out at the other; er stieß ein Loch durch die Wand, *he drove a hole through the wall*; er drängte sich durch die Dornenhecke, *he made his way through the hedge*. Hence the simple metaphors *durch das Fenster sehen*, *to look through the window*; *Einem durch die Finger sehen*, *to connive at*, &c.

(β) Like its English equivalent, *durch* passes from the meaning of *diametrically through*, to that of *all about*.

Du willst

Durch ganz Europa diese Meinung pflanzen. (Sch.)

*You want to spread this opinion over all Europe.*

\* A phrase with the same meaning, *zum Besten haben*, denotes originally *to treat as for the public benefit* and so *to make a butt of*.

† The old dative singular feminine.

(2.) Of time—to denote duration, mostly placed after its case : die ganze Nacht durch or hindurch, *the whole night through*; unsere durch zehn Jahre geführte Correspondenz, *our correspondence carried on for ten years*.

(3.) Like the Latin *per*, it is used after verbs to denote the instrument or means, and differs slightly from *mit*. (See § 121.)

Durch drei Linien läßt sich ein Triangel zeichnen. (Kant.)  
*A triangle can be described by means of three lines.*

Herrscht er nur erst durch mich, so herrsch' ich bald durch ihn.  
 (Lessing.)  
*If he only first rules by my help, I will soon rule by his.*

127. **Für** referred originally to place, and was identical with *vor*. It is now confined to certain derived meanings, and is very like the English *for*.

(1.) The nearest approach to a local meaning\* is in phrases like Schritt für Schritt, *step by step (one step before another)*; Mann für Mann, *man by man*; Wort für Wort, *word by word*.

Its meanings are :—

(2.) *Instead of*, with an implied notion of advantage, by which it is distinguished from *statt*, *anstatt*; für Jemanden bezahlen, arbeiten, *to pay for, work for, &c.* Hence in speaking of price, für zehn Mark kaufen, *to buy for ten marks*.

(3.) Hence with verbs of *esteeming*, &c., nearly equivalent to *as*; Jemanden für einen Narren halten, *to think a person a fool*; sich für einen Künstler ausgeben, *to give oneself out as an artist, &c.* See also § 21. Under this head comes was für, in which, however, für governs no case.

(4.) *For the benefit of, on behalf of*; für das Vaterland streiten, *to fight for one's country*; Futter für das Vieh, *fodder for cattle*;

\* The local meaning of für is retained in the word fürbaß = *vorwärts*, and in the phrase für und für.

Das Mühlrad, von der Fluth getafft,  
 Umwälzt sich für und für. (Sch.)

für Jemanden sprechen, beten, *to speak for, pray for, &c.* Hence often meaning little more than *in relation to*: Sorgen für die Zukunft, *anxiety for the future*; ich für meinen Theil, *I for my part*; für's erste, *in the first place*; für seine Jahre, *for his age, considering his age, &c.*

128. **Gegen** AND **wider**, *against* :—

(1.) Both are used, both literally and metaphorically of motion or action in an opposite direction to a thing or person; *wider* implying an active resistance which is not involved in *gegen*. Thus *gegen den Strom schwimmen* is simply *up stream*, *wider den Strom* adds the idea of struggling with it, making head against it.

Of course there are cases in which they are used indifferently. Thus :—

*Wider* der Bögte harten Druck zu klagen. (Sch.)

*To complain against the cruel oppression of the governors.*

compared with :—

Ich rufe die Klage gegen die Missethäter. (Goe.)

*I the crier cry the accusation against the evildoers.*

*Gegen* has other meanings, with which *wider* has nothing in common, viz. :—

(2.) *Towards*, of place and time; das Haus liegt gegen Westen, (or Abend), *the house faces the West*; gegen zwanzig Jahre alt, *getting on for twenty*.

(3.) With words denoting relations such as love, friendship, duty, &c.; Liebe gegen, *love for*; freundlich gestimmt gegen, *friendly towards*; Pflichten gegen Gott, *duties towards God, &c.*

(4.) Denoting *exchange*. Gegen einen Schein Geld erhalten, *to receive money for a bill (of exchange)*; gegen Bezahlung, *for payment*.

(5.) *In comparison with*—er ist gegen dich ein Riese, *he is a giant compared to you*.

129. **Ohne**, **sonder**.—*Ohne* is opposed to *mit*, *sonder* to *sammt*. Besides the difference thus implied, it should be observed, that *sonder* is almost obsolete, except in poetry.

*Ohne* used to govern a dative, as is seen in the adverb *ohne*dem.

130. Um akin to Greek  $\alpha\mu\phi\iota$ , Latin *amb*:—

(1.) Of place—*about, round*, so as to encompass. Used indifferently of rest or motion, though, as motion is implied in the very idea of encircling, it takes the accusative: um den Tisch sitzen, sich setzen, *to sit, sit down round the table*; ein Tuch um den Hals haben, binden, *to have, to tie a handkerchief round one's neck*. Hence um sich haben, *to have about one, in one's company*.

(2.) Of time when—*about*, um Mitternacht, um dieselbe Zeit, &c.; in speaking of the hours of the day *at*, without any idea of inexactness, um drei Uhr.

(3.) *In reference to*, expressing the object about which thought, feeling or action busies itself. Wie steht es um ihn, *how is it with him?* es ist um ihn geschehen, *it's all up with him*; um etwas fragen, streiten, werben, *to ask, fight, sue for, &c.* It may often be rendered by *for*, especially with bitten, bewerben, spielen, &c. It denotes less distinctly than für an interest in the thing in question.

(4.) With comparatives (or in implied comparisons) to denote by how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another. Thus er ist um einen Kopf größer als ich, *he is a head taller than I*; ich habe mich um zwei Thaler verrechnet, *I have made a mistake of two thalers*; um so viel besser, *so much the better*; um ein Haar wäre ich gefallen, *I was within an ace of falling* (lit. *I should have fallen in respect of a hair's breadth*).

(5.) It denotes *exchange* and is nearly equivalent to für in phrases like um Lohn dinge, *to bargain for wages*; um Brod arbeiten, *to work for bread*; Aug' um Auge, Zahn um Zahn, *an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth*.

(6.) With kommen, bringen, ein there are some curious phrases: um's Leben bringen, *to deprive of life*; er ist um seinen guten Stuf (gekommen), *he has forfeited his honour*. Possibly the idea is all round about, without ever reaching.

(7.) Einen Tag um den andern means *every other day*, i.e. one day going round or omitting the second.



## PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

131. PRONOUNS OF ADDRESS.—The three pronouns *Du*, *ſhr*, *Sie*, and under certain circumstances *Er*, are used in addressing a single person under various conditions. The following are the chief rules :—

**Du** (the grammatical 2nd singular) is used (1) In the Bible, and in the most elevated lyric and dramatic poetry, in Goethe's *Tasso*, and Schiller's *Braut von Messina*, for instance; in fables, and in conversations between personages very far removed from modern life. (2) In addresses to the Supreme Being. (3) In familiar conversation between members of the same family and intimate friends and sometimes to servants; also in addressing children and animals. (4) If addressed to persons with whom one is not on familiar terms, *du* becomes contemptuous.

**ſhr** was formerly the pronoun used in courteous intercourse.\* Hence the characters of plays like *Götz von Berlichingen*, *Wilhelm Tell*, &c., use *ſhr* in speaking to each other, unless they are on such terms as to warrant the use of *Du*.† *ſhr*, as a proper plural, is used in speaking collectively to persons who would be addressed individually as *du*. Thus *ihr* is used in sermons, and in talking to the junior classes of a school. *Sie*, on the other, is used in addressing Parliament, a public meeting, &c.

**Sie** (literally *they*, i.e., *your graces*) is now used in ordinary intercourse between all persons not entitled to say *Du* to each other.

**Er** (or **Sie**, singular, if addressed to a woman) was formerly often used in addressing inferiors, or by the lower classes among themselves. In *Minna von Barnhelm*, the host of the inn and Just (von Tellheim's servant) call each other *Er*, and both use *ſie* (singular) in speaking to Minna's attendant. It is nearly obsolete. Frederic the Great called even his generals *Er*.

---

\* Luther's father usually called him *ſhr* after he had taken his master's degree. When he heard of his son's having become a monk, he wrote a severe letter to him, in which he styled him *Du*. (Guesses at Truth.)

† On the other hand, *tu* and *ihr* are used indiscriminately in Goethe's *Egmont* between Machiavelli and the Regent, *Egmont* and *Alba*, &c. In *Don Carlos*, Carlos asks Posa to call him *tu* and to drop the more formal *Sie*,

In English we have not gone to the extreme of respect implied in *Sie*, nor have we, on the other hand, retained the familiar *Du* in friendly intercourse. In Shakespeare, the use of *thou*, both in familiarity and in contempt, may be noticed. In the *Tempest*, Prospero constantly says *thou* to Miranda; while she replies with the more respectful *you*. In *Twelfth-night*, Sir Toby Belch, urging Sir Andrew Aguecheek to send a challenge to Viola, says: If thou *thou'st* him some thrice, it shall not be amiss.

*Thou* is also used in several recorded conversations of the same century by parents to their children, and superiors to inferiors, e.g. by Sir Thomas More to his daughter:—Dost thou not see, Megg, &c.;—and by Fisher to his executioner:—I forgive thee with all my heart.

The use of *tu* in French is very like that of *Du* in German (*tutoyer* = *duzen*). For its use as a term of contempt, notice Jean Valjean's reflections in *Les Misérables*, when he is about to give himself up to justice, and become a convict again. *Etre tutoyé par le premier venu* is one of the miseries he pictures to himself.\*

132. **ES** REPRESENTING A NOUN, &c.—The neuter pronoun *es* is used in answering questions or in referring to a foregoing sentence, to represent a noun of any gender, an adjective, or any expression equivalent to a noun, such as the infinitive of a verb.

Me p h i s t o. Wollte nach Frau Martha Schwerdtlein fragen.

Ma r t h a. Ich bin's. (Goe.)

Me. I wished to ask for Mrs. Martha Schwerdtlein.

Ma. I am Mrs. Martha Schwerdtlein.

Ich habe verdient zu sterben, und ich will's. (Sch.)

I have deserved to die and I will die.

Red i n g. Und nicht fürwahr in Friede wird er weichen.

Sta u f f a c h e r. Er wird's, wenn er in Waffen uns erblickt. (Sch.)

Red. And assuredly he will not yield peacefully.

Sta. He will (yield), when he sees us in arms.

\* In Spanish, *vos*, the 2nd plural, is used as a term of contempt. When Philip II. left the Netherlands, he said angrily to Orange: "No los estados, mas vos, vos, vos," Not the States but you (are the cause of trouble.) For further discussion see *Guesses at Truth*, vol. 1, pp. 163—190, whence several of these examples are taken.

*Obs.* The French *le*, which is really a neuter, is similarly used.

*Lucile.* Je ne veux point me marier.

*Jourdain.* Je le veux, moi, qui suis votre père. (Molière.)

133. **Es** INTRODUCTORY. — **Es** is sometimes used after transitive verbs, with a sentence or an infinitive in apposition to it, and cannot be translated in English.

Du magst's, dein Antlitz einem guten Menschen  
Zu zeigen. (Sch.)

*You dare to show your face to an honest man.*

Die That bewährt es, daß sie Wahrheit spricht. (Sch.)

*The fact proves that she speaks the truth.*

134. **Sich** RECIPROCAL.—**Sich**, the reflexive pronoun is sometimes used as a reciprocal pronoun, and must then be translated *one another*.

Seht ihr die altergrauen  
Schlösser sich entgegenschauen. (Sch.)

*Do you see the venerable castles facing each other?*

*Obs.* Many French reflexive verbs supply instances of the same transposition, *se battre, se disputer, &c.*

135. **HIS**.—Ambiguities in the use of *his*, which are of frequent occurrence in English, may be avoided in German by adding *eigen* to *sein* when it refers to the subject of the sentence, and by substituting *dessen* for it when it refers to something else. Thus instead of saying—

Karl rief den Vater und seinen Sohn

we should say either *seinen eigenen Sohn* or *dessen Sohn*, according as we meant Charles' son or the father's.

Lavater, sagte Göthe, glaubte an Cagliostro und dessen Wunder.  
(Eckermann.)

*Lavater, said Goethe, believed in Cagliostro and his miracles.*

*Dessen* may represent either the objective or possessive genitive; *sein* only the possessive.

136. **Dieser, jener**.—When the demonstratives *dieser, jener*, are contrasted with each other, *dieser* denotes the nearer of two objects to the speaker, *jener* the more remote from him. If they refer to things already mentioned, *dieser* denotes the latter, *jener* the former.

137. RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.—The relative agrees with its antecedent (the noun or pronoun to which it refers) in gender, number, and sometimes in person; its case is determined by the requirements of its own clause.

Der Eindruck, den ich auf ihn machte, kam zu schnell.  
*The impression which I made on him, came too quickly.*

Es giebt Unthaten, über welche kein Gras wächst.  
*There are misdeeds, over which no grass grows.*

And less common :—

Mann mit der scharfen Sense, der den Säugling  
 An der weinenden Mutter Busen mähest. (Stolberg.)  
*Man with the sharp scythe, who dost slay the suckling at the weeping mother's breast.*

138. ANTECEDENT A PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a personal pronoun of the first or second person, (or such a pronoun implied in a vocative) and the relative is in the nominative case, *der* is used, not *welcher*, and two constructions are possible, besides the simple concord of the relative with the antecedent in person.

(1.) The personal pronoun is repeated after *der*, and the verb agrees with it.

Du, die du alle Wunden heilest,  
 Der Freundschaft leise zarte Hand. (Sch.)  
*Thou who healest all wounds, the gentle tender hand of friendship.*

Er wird uns alle, die wir an sein Glück befestigt sind, in seinen Fall herabziehen. (Sch.)  
*He will involve in his ruin all of us who are attached to his fortunes.*

(2.) The relative stands alone, as in other languages, but is followed by a verb in the third person.

Seid mir begrüßt, befreundte Schaaren  
 Die mir zur See Begleiter waren. (Sch.)  
*I bid you welcome, friendly companies, who attended my course by sea.*

Was kann ich thun, der selber hilflos ist? (Sch.)  
*What can I do who am myself in need of help?*

*Obs. 1.* The construction in the last example of § 137 does exist, but is not now used.

*Obs. 2.* If the relative be not in the nominative, *der* is still used, not *welcher*, but of course the personal pronoun is repeated.

*Obs. 3.* After *ich bin es*, &c., the second construction is used, *i.e.* *der* or *welcher* with the third person.

*Obs. 4.* In oblique oration, the pronoun of the 3rd person is repeated after the relative, when it represents a pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person in direct oration.

Thus

Wie kannst du, die du es selbst gesehen hast, das bezweifeln ?

becomes

Er wunderte sich wie sie, die sie es selbst gesehen habe, das bezweifeln könne.

*Obs. 5.* There are a few instances of *welcher* used with a pronoun as antecedent, but it is rare.

139. **Der IN GENITIVE.**—In the genitive, the relative *der* is used, and if dependent on a noun, always precedes it. The noun is then without article.

Das ist derselbe

Aus dessen Hand ich diesen Brief empfangen. (Less.)

*That is the man from whose hand I received this letter.*

*Obs.* It is important to remember that the German construction in this case is like English and not like French. The reason why an article is inserted in French after *dont*, is that *dont* is really a relative adverb, and connects the two sentences without affecting any particular word; *dessen* on the other hand is attached to the word as *mein* or *sein* would be, and therefore an article would be superfluous.

140. **Der AND welcher.**—In many cases it is indifferent whether *der* or *welcher* is used, but

(A.) *welcher* is used, not *der* :—

1. When *which* is an adjective,

Zu Widerlegung welcher groben Rüge

Des Waffenrechtes Wohlthat ich begehre. (Schlegel.)

2. Generally after *als*, when *als welcher*, &c., means *inasmuch as it...*

3. When the proximity of an article or demonstrative would involve the repetition of the same word; thus, *die, welche die That begangen*, not *die, die die That begangen*; *bei, welcher der That verdächtig ist*, not *der, der der That verdächtig ist*. So too, *der* should be avoided before a noun without article, to which it might at first sight, seem to belong.

(B.) *der* must be used :—

1. In the genitive masculine and neuter singular under all circumstances. In the genitive feminine singular, and the genitive plural, as the possessive or objective genitive. But *welcher* may be used in dependence on prepositions, sometimes in dependence on adjectives and verbs.

2. When the antecedent follows or is omitted (see § 141).

3. When the antecedent is a personal pronoun of the first or second person. § 138.

4. When the antecedent is the interrogative *welcher* or *wer*, *der* is nearly always used; it is generally used when the antecedent is *wie viele*, *wie wenige*, or an indefinite word like *jemand*, *mancher*, &c.—After *Alles*, *was* is used—

*Wer erfreute sich des Lebens,  
Der in seine Tiefen blickt?* (Sch.)

*Who would take pleasure in life, who looks into its depths?*

*Obs.* It should be borne in mind that *welcher* is strictly the correlative of *solcher* (*of which like, of such like*) and that therefore it is naturally to be preferred after an indefinite antecedent, where the relative may mean of such a kind *that it*, and not merely *which*. But this principle is not very strictly carried out.

141. ANTECEDENT OMITTED. *Der, wer*.—When the antecedent is omitted or follows, *he who, they who, &c.*, are represented by *der* or *wer*, not by *welcher*. *Der* then generally means *the known person who*; *wer*, *any one who*; *was*, *anything which*.

*Wer weiß? der diesen Nathan besser kenne.* (Less.)

*Who can tell? he who knows this Nathan better (the definite person who, in this case, is the speaker himself).*

*Wer dazu stimmt, erhebe seine Hände.* (Sch.)

*Whoever agrees, let him hold up his hands.*

*Den du hier siehst, das ist der Karl nicht mehr  
Der in Alcalá von dir Abschied nahm.* (Sch.)

*He whom you see here is no longer the Carlos, who parted from you at Alcalá.*

*Was schmückt den Jüngling, ehrt den Mann.*

*What adorns the youth, does honour to the man.*

*Obs.* 1. *Was* is also used with (1) the word *alles*, or (2) *das* used indefinitely, or (3) a sentence as its antecedent (see § 142).

Er rieth mir, zu Hause zu bleiben, was ich nicht that.  
*He advised me to stay at home, which I did not do.*

Nur muß man durchaus auf das Verzicht thun, was man gewöhnlich  
 Verstehen nennt. (Goe.)

*Only one must quite give up what is commonly called under-  
 standing.*

Obs. 2. Occasionally in poetry, *wer* is used after an antecedent.

Den schreckt der Berg nicht, *wer* darauf geboren. (Sch.)  
*The mountains have no terror for him who was born on them.*

142. ADJECTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSE.—The genitive of an adjective is often inserted in clauses beginning with *was*, in cases where in English we should prefer to put it in the antecedent clause.\*

Ich werde Alles, was der Mangel Hartes und Eindringendes hat,  
 zeitig genug empfinden. (Less.)

*I shall feel betimes all the cruel piercing sorrows which poverty  
 involves.*

143. **SUCH AS**—is often rendered by *wie* followed by a pronoun of the third person. If *solcher* is expressed, *wie* alone answers to it.

...sollten auch die kürzern und sichern Landstraßen darüber zu Pfaden  
 eingehen, *wie* sie durch Wildnisse führen. (Less.)

*Even though the shorter and safer highroads should in the  
 process degenerate into tracks such as lead through deserts.*

144. **Wer** INTERROGATIVE.—*Wer*, both as an independent and dependent interrogative, is used in the singular only. When, as is frequently the case, it is the appositive complement of the verb *to be*, it stands with a plural verb.

Ich möchte wissen *wer* die Damen sind.

*I should like to know who the ladies are.*

Obs. Notice the phrase *wer* Alles, *wen* Alles, &c., as:

*Wer* kommt denn Alles? *Who* are all the people coming?

Ich weiß nicht, *wem* er Alles eingeladen hat.

*I don't know who all the people are whom he has invited.*

---

\* Like the Latin.

## THE TENSES.

145. CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.—A complete verb has in the indicative mood three past, three present, and three future tenses. There is in each class an *indefinite* or *aorist* tense, an *imperfect* or *progressive* tense, and a *perfect* or *finished* tense. The tenses in English, German, and Latin which approach most nearly to these meanings are shown in the following table.

## a. Three present tenses.

<i>Indefinite.</i>	I dine	Ich esse	cœno
<i>Imperfect.</i>	I am dining	Ich esse (eben)	cœno
<i>Perfect.</i>	I have dined	Ich habe gegessen	cœnavi

## β. Three past tenses.

<i>Indefinite.</i>	I dined	Ich aß or ich habe gegessen	wanting
<i>Imperfect.</i>	I was dining	Ich aß	cœnabam
<i>Perfect.</i>	I had dined	Ich hatte gegessen	cœnaveram

## γ. Three future tenses.

<i>Aorist.</i>	I shall dine	Ich werde essen	cœnabo
<i>Imperfect.</i>	I shall be dining		wanting
<i>Perfect.</i>	I shall have dined	Ich werde gegessen haben	cœnavero.

In most languages, one or other of these tenses has no distinct inflexion or periphrasis corresponding to it; the tenses in use frequently oscillate between two meanings. Hence it becomes necessary to lay down some rules for the translation of the tenses of one language into those of another.

146. PRESENT.—The German *present* is generally a *present indefinite*, unless other words in the sentence show that it is a *present imperfect*. Hence to render the English *I am writing* it is necessary to say *ich schreibe eben*, *ich bin (eben) daran zu schreiben*, *ich bin im Schreiben begriffen*, or some similar expression, generally a little stronger than the English.

There are several idiomatic uses of the German present.

147. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—In descriptions and narrations a present is used instead of a past tense to bring the scene more vividly before the reader. This is called the *historical present*. In passages of this kind the compound of the present (*ich habe gelobt*) is used for the pluperfect.



Der eig'nen Rettung denkt jetzt Keiner mehr,  
 Gleich wilden Tigern fechten sie; es reizt  
 Ihr starrer Widerstand die Unfrigen,  
 Und eher nicht erfolgt des Kampfes Ende,  
 Als bis der letzte Mann gefallen ist. (Sch.)

*Now none thinks of saving himself; they fight like wild tigers; our soldiers are enraged by their stubborn resistance, and the fight lasts on, till the last man has fallen.*

The same idiom is found in French, and may there, as in German, be introduced in the middle of narration in past tenses, e.g.

Coligny languissait dans les bras du repos,  
 Et le sommeil trompeur lui versait ses pavots.  
 Soudain de mille cris le bruit épouvantable  
 Vient arracher ses sens à ce calme agréable;  
 Il se lève; il regarde.... (Voltaire.)

In English it is not so common. Carlyle often uses it.

Prompt to the request of Barbaroux, the Marseilles municipality has got these men together; on the fifth morning of July, the Townhall says: March, strike down the Tyrant, and they with grim appropriate *Marchons* are marching.

148. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The present is used for the future in cases where the future event is regarded as certain, or as about to happen at once. It is often accompanied by an adverbial expression denoting the time.

Morgen stößt ein Heer zu uns von 20,000 Schweden. (Sch.)  
*To-morrow an army of 20,000 Swedes joins (will join) us.*

In English the present indefinite is often used in the same way; *I start to-morrow at 5 o'clock.* Milton has it

If from this hour  
 Within those hallowed precincts thou appear,  
 Back to the infernal pit I drag thee chained,  
 And seal thee so.

149. PRESENT INDICATIVE FOR IMPERATIVE.—As in English, the present indicative is often used as an imperative; we however, rather prefer the future.

Heute Nacht in aller Stille brecht ihr auf mit allen leichten Truppen. (Sch.)

*To-night you will start in perfect silence with all the light troops.*

150. PRESENT IMPERFECT FOR PRESENT PERFECT.—In describing an action which has been going on for some time, and is still continuing, the German present is used, though in English we should employ the present perfect. The word *schon* frequently occurs in such sentences.

Fünf Jahre trag' ich schon den glüh'nden Haß. (Sch.)  
*For five years I have cherished that burning hatred.*

Der Gedankenaustausch ist ungemein lebhaft, seit die Buchdrucker-kunst erfunden worden ist.

*The interchange of thought has been remarkably brisk since the invention of printing.*

In the first of these examples, we wish to express two things; *I still cherish hatred*, and *I have cherished hatred for five years*. In English we express the latter and leave the former to be inferred by the reader; in German exactly the opposite is done.

Obs.—The same idiom is found in French.

Depuis trente hivers il languit. (Boileau.)  
*He has languished for thirty winters past.*

151. PAST IMPERFECT FOR PAST PERFECT. — In the same way a German past with *schon*, &c., must be translated by the English pluperfect:—

Ein Volk, das seit Jahrhunderten zu siegen mußte.  
*A nation that for years had known how to conquer.*

152. IMPERFECT AND PERFECT.—The scheme of tenses being incompletely filled up in German, it is necessary that some tenses should do double duty. Thus the imperfect is used in its proper sense as an imperfect, to denote a past action going on contemporaneously with another; as, *I was writing, when you came in*. The perfect, again, is used as a present perfect, to denote a past action whose effects still continue; as, *I have finished my work*. But there is no past indefinite in German, and therefore both imperfect and perfect have to do duty for it. The difference between them, when thus representing a past indefinite, or aorist, is exactly like that between the two French tenses known as *passé défini* and *passé indéfini*. The tense of history, the tense used in describing a series of past events in order, with dates, &c., is the imperfect; the tense used to speak of them, as all alike past to the

narrator, but without any desire to fix their date, is the perfect. Thus the prevailing tense of historical composition is the imperfect, that of conversation the perfect.

For example, in v. Treitschke's „Deutsche Geschichte im 19ten Jahrhundert," after several pages of narrative, in which the prevailing tense is the imperfect, with occasional historical presents introduced, we find a paragraph beginning:—

Erst diese Kirchenpolitik der Hohenzollern hat das Zeitalter der Religionskriege abgeschlossen; sie zwang schließlich die besseren weltlichen Fürsten zur Nachahmung.....

The first sentence of this paragraph is an interruption of the thread of the narrative, a fact which the author wishes to speak of as past to himself, but which he deliberately separates from the even current of his story.

Similarly in the following, from Schiller's „Abfall der Niederlande," the perfect interrupts a series of imperfects proper:—

Kein Staat durfte sich mit ihr auf den Kampfboden wagen. Frankreich.... ging schon mit schnellen Schritten der unglücklichen Epoche entgegen, die es, beinahe ein halbes Jahrhundert lang, zu einem Schauplatz der Abscheulichkeit und des Elends gemacht hat.

Take again the following conversation.\* *A.* meets *B.* coming out of the theatre.

*A.*—Wo kommen Sie her? Waren Sie auch im Theater? (or, Sind Sie auch im Theater gewesen?) Wie lange sind Sie überhaupt schon hier in Berlin?

*B.*—Ich bin erst heute Nachmittag angekommen, aber ich habe mir gleich ein Billet besorgen lassen, habe nur eine Kleinigkeit genossen, und bin dann sofort hergeeilt, um doch auch das vielbesprochene Stück zu sehen.

*A.*—Und wie finden Sie es?

*B.*—Das Stück hat mir sehr gut gefallen; auch an dem vielgetadelten Schluß des zweiten Aufzugs habe ich keinen Anstoß genommen.....

When *B.* goes home and relates his experiences, he says, in the course of conversation:—

Schäm erst des Nachmittags an, aber ich ließ mir gleich ein Billet besorgen, genoß nur eine Kleinigkeit und eilte dann sofort in's Theater, um das vielbesprochene Stück zu sehen.

He might then continue in the same tense, or more likely, become a little animated:—

Allerbings habe ich nach dem einmaligen Sehen kein sicheres Urtheil bilden können, aber das Stück hat mir sehr gut gefallen.....

Thus the imperfect is used wherever there is any wish to represent what has happened as one's own impression or experience; the perfect when it is desired simply to relate facts in order. Dr. Sanders says in the same article (187), that the use of the imperfect in conversation gives the impression of talking wie gedruckt, *like a book*. It should be added that this use of the tenses is strictly logical; the perfect is strictly a present perfect, and

\* From Sanders' „Deutsche Sprachbriefe."

represents the effect of the action as continuing. To a matter-of-fact nation like ourselves, the past is past, unless its results have an *objective* reality (the house *has been* built, and is standing); our neighbours, with livelier imaginations, like to represent past events as present, even though they have now only a *subjective* reality (das Stüd hat mir gefallen).

153. FUTURE.—There is an idiomatic use of the futures, especially of the future perfect, to express one's belief that an action is taking place, or has taken place. It is generally rendered in English by *probably*, though we sometimes use our first future in the same way:—

Sie werden sich erinnern, daß Sie mich mit Ihrer Fräulein Tochter allein gelassen haben. (Sch.)

*You will remember (you probably remember) that you left me alone with your daughter.*

154. DOUBLE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.—Occasionally the perfect and pluperfect of haben (or of sein for certain intransitive verbs) are used as auxiliaries, to emphasize still more the completion of an action.

Er hatte Alles vergessen, weit weggesetzt gehabt; jetzt erschaute er es als neuer Mensch. (Auerbach.)

*He had long since forgotten everything, and put it quite out of sight; now he began to see it as a new being.*

This is easily understood by thinking of the real meaning of ich habe vergessen, *I possess or hold it as a forgotten thing*. The above example would then be literally *he had possessed it as a forgotten thing; he had forgotten it, and kept it in that state*.

Der cinige Monate verrißt gewesen war. (Heyse.)  
*Who had been gone some months.*

For the same tense in the passive see § 178, Obs. 2.

155. IMPERATIVE.—The imperative has really only two persons, the second persons singular and plural. For the third person, either the subjunctive (er schweige, schweigen sie) is used, especially in the courteous substitute for the second person (schweigen Sie), or else a periphrasis with sollen (er soll bleiben, *let him remain*). To form the first person plural, the same artifice is used as in English. Laß uns gehen, or laffet uns gehen. The form borrowed from the subjunctive, bleiben wir, is now but little used in the first person.

Obs. 1.—The second person of the present indicative is sometimes, as in English, used with an imperative sense. Du bleibst hier &c. See § 149.

Obs. 2.—The past participle is also used elliptically for an imperative. Thus—

Nicht geplaudert = es soll nicht geplaudert werden. *Don't chatter.*

It may be combined with the accusative absolute (§ 44):—

Die Trommel gerührt, das Pfeifchen gespielt. (Goe.)

*Beat the drum, play the fife.*

## INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

156. INFINITIVE A VERBAL NOUN.—The infinitive is best described as a verbal substantive, that is, something which possesses the properties both of a verb and of a substantive. In common with a substantive it has the power of being the subject or object or appositive complement of a verb; in common with a verb the property of governing a case, and of being qualified by an adverb:—

Noch einmal ein Wunder hoffen, hieße Gott versuchen. (Sch.)

*To hope for another miracle, would be as it were to tempt God.*

Where *hoffen* (1) is the subject of *hieße*, (2) governs *ein Wunder*, (3) is qualified by *noch einmal*, and *versuchen* (1) governs *Gott*, and (2) is the appositive complement after *hieße*.

157. INFINITIVE CONVERTED INTO A NOUN.—It often happens in German that the infinitive becomes a genuine noun capable of declension, qualified by an article or adjective, and followed by a genitive, not by the case it would require as a verb. Such infinitives are written, like nouns, with a capital letter.\* They differ from ordinary nouns only in having no plural:—

Ich bin des Tanzens müde.

*I am tired of dancing.*

Der Erben Weinen ist ein heimlich Lachen.

*The weeping of heirs is a secret laughter.*

*Obs.*—There is not a great deal of difference between English and German in the use of the infinitive as a noun. For the English inflexion *ing* is really an infinitive as well as a present participle; or to speak more correctly, it represents two different derivatives of a verb, namely the infinitive, which in Anglo-Saxon ended in *an* or *en*, and a verbal noun similar to those formed in German by the termination *ung*.

\* Notice also with a capital letter a phrase like *das Mit-sich-selbst-Leben hat er sein Leben lang behalten.*

158. INFINITIVE WITH *zu*, OR SUPINE.—The infinitive with *zu*, like the corresponding English form with *to*, is by far the most common. It is used as the object of all but a few verbs, as the subject of verbs, after prepositions, and in other ways.

*Obs.*—It has been shown that the infinitive (for example the Greek infinitive ending in *μεναι*) was originally a dative case, probable like the phrase *to eat in good to eat*. It is curious to notice how modern tongues, after the dative inflexion has completely disappeared, repeat the process by prefixing the prepositions, which, in analytic languages, replace the dative.

159. INFINITIVE AND SUPINE AS SUBJECT.—The infinitive generally stands without *zu* if used as the subject of a verb; *zu* may be inserted when the sentence suggests a notion of *duty, necessity, possibility, &c.*

Verplandern ist schädlich, verschweigen ist gut. (Goe.)  
*To tell secrets is harmful, to keep them is good.*

Die Beleidigung verschmerzen ist das Merkmal höherer Seelen, ob sie sie gleich tief gefühlt. (Herder.)

*Not to resent an insult, even when they have felt it deeply, is the characteristic of nobler natures.*

Einen Verlorenen zu beweinen, ist auch männlich. (Goe.)  
*To mourn for a lost friend is not unmanly.*

Mit Euch, Herr Doctor, zu spazieren, ist ehrenvoll. (Goe.)  
*To walk with you, Doctor, is an honour.*

160. SUPINE IN APPOSITION.—An infinitive with *zu* often stands in apposition to *es*, or *das*, used as the subject to *sein* or similar verbs:—

Gefährlich ist's, den Leu zu wecken. (Sch.)  
*It is dangerous to rouse the lion.*

Das Haupt zu heißen eines freien Volkes  
 Das sei dein Stolz. (Sch.)

*To be called the chief of a free people, be that thy pride.*

Es ziemt dem edeln Mann, der Frauen Wort zu achten. (Sch.)  
*It becomes a noble-minded man, to respect a lady's word.*

161. INFINITIVE OR SUPINE AS APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT.—An infinitive without *zu* is used as the appositive complement with the verb *heißen*, *to be called*, *to be equivalent to*:—

Noch einmal ein Wunder hoffen, hieße Gott versuchen. (Sch.)

After the verb *to be*, the supine is so used:—

Eine schöne Menschenseele finden  
Ist Gewinn; ein schönerer Gewinn ist  
Sie erhalten, und der schönst' und schwerste,  
Sie, die schon verloren ist, zu retten. (Herder.)

*To find a noble human soul is a gain indeed; to keep it yours a nobler gain; and the noblest and the hardest of all, to save a soul already lost.*

162. INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—An infinitive without *zu* is used as the object of several classes of verbs, viz. :—

(1.) With the ordinary verbs of mood dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen (and werden).

Wer könnte euren Thränen widersteh'n? (Sch.)  
*Who can withstand your tears?*

(2.) With the verbs hören, sehen, fühlen, lernen, lehren, heißen (*bid*), helfen, machen, lassen. These verbs govern at the same time an accusative (helfen a dative).

Ich sah ihn sterben. (Sch.)  
*I saw him die.*

Ich drück' an meine Seele dich, ich fühle  
Die deinige allmächtig an mir schlagen. (Sch.)  
*I press thee to my soul, I feel thy soul throbbing mightily in unison with mine.*

See also examples to § 55.

*Obs.* When the infinitive is separated from *lehren* by a good many words, *zu* is often inserted. Thus *Er lehrte den Knaben tanzen*, but *Er lehrte den Knaben, der bis dahin sich nur sehr kindisch bewegt hatte, mit Anstand und mit Anmuth zu tanzen.* (Sanders.)

(3.) With the verbs *lassen*, *hören*, accompanied by a transitive infinitive, which must be rendered by a passive in English.

Was man gewöhnlich behaupten hört. (Sch.)  
*What we commonly hear asserted*  
(literally, *the asserting which one hears*).

(4.) The verb *bleiben* is accompanied by the infinitives *sitzen*, *liegen*, *stehen*; *gehen* by various infinitives, as *schlafen gehen*, *betteln gehen*; and the verbs *reiten*, *fahren*, *gehen* by the infinitive

spazieren. In all these cases we should use a present participle in English:—

Um ein Uhr mit Goethe spazieren gefahren. (Eckermann.)  
*At one o'clock I went for a drive (driving) with Goethe.*

163. SUPINE AS OBJECT.—The supine or infinitive with *zu* is used as the object of ordinary transitive verbs, and of many verbs which could not take a noun as their object. It frequently stands as a second object, where the verb governs a noun or pronoun as well. It plays, in fact, the part both of an accusative and of a dative:—

Morgen fangen wir an zu schneiden die reichliche Ernte. (Goe.)  
*To-morrow we begin to reap the bounteous harvest.*

Sehr habe ich gewünscht, Sie zu besuchen.  
*I have very much wished to visit you.*

Pflegt sie so zu sein? (Sch.)  
*Is she generally (accustomed to be) like this?*

Er warnte mich, auf meiner Hut zu sein. (Sch.)  
*He warned me to be on my guard.*

Obs. 1. This use of the supine corresponds almost exactly to that of the English infinitive with *zu*. Notice, however, *er glaubt es gethan zu haben*, *he believes he has done it*. So with *behaupten*, *sich einbilden*, *vergeben*, &c.

Obs. 2. As in English, the supine is used with the verbs *scheinen*, *dünken*, *to seem*.

164. SUPINE DEPENDING ON NOUNS.—An infinitive with *zu* often takes the place of the English gerundive in *ing*, preceded by *of*, and depending on a noun:—

So weit ging die Begierde, dir zu dienen. (Goe.)  
*So far did the desire of serving you go.*

Dies ist die Art, mit Hexen umzugehen. (Goe.)  
*This is the way to deal (of dealing) with witches.*

165. SUPINE DENOTING PURPOSE.—The supine often denotes a purpose, as might be expected from its really being a dative:—

Ich komme, Lady Stuart, eure letzten  
 Befehle zu empfangen. (Sch.)  
*I come, Lady Stuart, to receive your last commands.*



More frequently *um . . . zu* is used :—

Was habt Ihr denn gethan, um sie zu retten? (Sch.)  
*What have you done then to save her?*

*Obs.* 1. For the use of *um . . . zu* after *genug*, *von der Art*, &c., see on Consecutive Sentences.

*Obs.* 2. Notice the use of the supine after *haben* :—

Du hast Nichts mehr zu schenken. (Sch.)  
*You have nothing more to give.*

Occasionally also without an object :—

Ich habe mit der Königin zu reden. (Sch.)  
*I have to speak with the queen.*

which is not, however, the ordinary way of rendering *I have to*.

Lastly, there are cases like—

Was hast du hier zu hören und zu hüten? (Sch.)  
*What business have you to be listening and watching here?*

166. SUPINE DEPENDING ON ADJECTIVES.—The infinitive with *zu* is used with adjectives, either—

(1.) Actively, with those denoting *purpose*, *hope*, &c.

Ich bin, spricht Jener, zu sterben bereit. (Sch.)  
*I am, said the other, ready to die.*

Das Weib ist geschickt, auf Mittel zu denken. (Goe.)  
*Woman is clever in devising expedients.*

(2.) Apparently, but not really, passively with adjectives like *easy*, *difficult*, &c. :—

Geflügelt ist das Glück, und schwer zu binden. (Sch.)  
*Fortune has wings, and is hard to bind.*

See § 169.

167. SUPINE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The prepositions *ohne*, *um*, *statt*, *anstatt\** are followed by *zu* and an infinitive :—

Die Franzosen warfen ihre Gewehre weg, um sich desto geschwinde  
 retten zu können. (Archenholz.)  
*The French threw their muskets away, in order to be able to  
 escape the more quickly.*

Die Feinde zogen sich ohne zu schlagen zurück. (Archenholz.)  
*The enemy retired without fighting.*

\* Really falls under § 164, *statt* being a noun.

*Obs.* The same construction is found in English after *for* (not modern). Compare also from Spenser:—

For not to have been dipped in Lethe's stream  
Could save the son of Thetis *from to die*.

168. ENGLISH GERUNDIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.—There are several ways of rendering the English gerundive in *ing*.

(1.) By a verbal noun (generally ending in *ung*), or by the infinitive used as a substantive (and written with a capital letter). It should be remembered that German lends itself far more readily than English to the formation of such nouns:—

Durch Abschneidung der Zufuhr. (Sch.)  
*By cutting off their supplies.*

Beim Uebersetzen muß man bis an's Unübersetzbliche herangehen. (Goe.)  
*In translating you must attack even the untranslatable.*

(2.) When it depends on a noun, by the supine, § 164.

(3.) After *without*, *instead of*, by the supine, § 167.

(4.) With other prepositions it is necessary to use one of the compounds of *da*, as *dadurch*, *daran*, followed either by an infinitive or a clause beginning with *daß*, according to circumstances:—

Mein guter Stern bewahrte mich davor,  
Die Natter an den Busen mir zu legen. (Sch.)  
*My lucky star saved me from taking the serpent to my bosom.*

Den Mangel an Reiterei mußte er dadurch zu ersetzen, daß er Fußgänger zwischen die Reiterei stellte. (Sch.)

*He succeeded in making up for the deficiency of cavalry by placing foot-soldiers between the horsemen.*

Ich bestehe darauf, daß der Lord sich entferne. (Sch.)  
*I insist on the lord's withdrawing.*

169. SUPINE AS COMPLEMENT IN PASSIVE SENSE.—After the verb *to be*, the German supine must often be rendered by the English passive infinitive:—

Das ist nicht zu ertragen.  
*That is not to be borne, literally not (fitted) for bearing.*

Das Volk ist länger nicht zu händigen.  
*The people is no longer to be controlled.*

*Obs.* We have the same idiom in phrases like *that is easy to understand*, *das ist leicht zu verstehen*. The difference only comes out when there is no adjective present. The fact that the infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such really neither active nor passive, explains the construction.

170. CORRESPONDING PARTICIPIAL FORM.—From this use of the infinitive is formed a participial form, corresponding to the commonest use of the Latin participle in *dus*. Thus from *eine reiche Erndte ist zu hoffen* is formed *die zu hoffende Erndte*, *the to-be-hoped-for harvest, the harvest to be looked for*. So *die zu lösende Aufgabe*, *the problem to be solved*.

*Obs.* If it be necessary to compare this participle, *mehr* is used, as, *ich kenne keinen mehr zu verachtenden Menschen*.

171. ELLIPSIS.—Sometimes an infinitive or supine is used elliptically, as in English:—

Jetzt weiß ich ja auch, wer Sie sind. — O! solch einen Menschen einsperren!

(Auerbach.)

*Now I know who you are—to think of putting such a man in prison!*

172. PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES.—The participles, either alone, or accompanied by words depending upon them, are used exactly like adjectives, both as epithets and as parts of the predicate. They can also, like adjectives, be used for substantives, and follow the same rules of inflexion. If retaining their form as participles, they should be compared by using *mehr*, *am meisten*.

173. PAST PARTICIPLE OF NEUTER VERBS.—Only those neuter verbs that are conjugated with *sein* (see § 175), such as *ankommen*, *wachsen*, possess a past participle active. Thus *ungegessen zu Bett gehen* ought not to mean *to go supperless to bed*, though it is sometimes used colloquially in that sense. But we can say *die eben angekommenen Gäste*, *the guests who have just arrived*; *ein gut gewachsener Baum*, *a tree that has grown well*, or *a well-grown tree*.

The past participle of all other neuter verbs, of reflexive and of impersonal verbs, cannot be used like an adjective, but is

simply employed in the conjugation of the verb from which it comes.

Usage has made some exceptions to this and the preceding section, as *ein ausgeübter Soldat*, a soldier who has served his time; *ein abgelebter Greis*, an old man who has lived too long; *Berschworene*, conspirators, &c.

#### 174. PAST PARTICIPLE WITH VERBS OF MOTION.

—With *kommen*, rarely with *bringen*, a past participle is used where we should use a present participle in English:—

Als Kaiser Rothbart lobesam  
Zum heil'gen Land gezogen kam.

*When Emperor Barbarossa the Good came marching to the  
Holy Land.*

#### AUXILIARIES—PASSIVE VOICE.

175. INTRANSITIVES WITH *sein*.—The following classes of intransitive verbs are conjugated with *sein*:—(1) verbs of motion, as *gehen*, *kommen*, *fahren*; (2) verbs denoting a change of state, as *wachsen*, *grow*; *genesen*, *recover*; *werden*, *become*; (3) *sein*, *to be*; *bleiben*, *remain*. We think, in fact, of the subject being in the state resulting from the action rather than of the performance of the action. Thus *er ist angekommen* suggests *he is here*; *er ist gewachsen*, *he is bigger than he was*.

*Obs.* Notice especially the following, which might not be thought at first sight to belong to this group:—*geschehen*, *happen*; *gelingen*, *succeed*; *gedeihen*, *thrive*; *gerathen*, *fall (into)*; *gelingen*, *succeed*; *mißgelingen*, *fail*; *sterben*, *die*; *rinnen*, *become liquid*; *schmelzen*, *melt*; *scheitern*, *go to pieces, be ruined*; *verunglücken*, *meet with an accident*; *schlagen* (in its intransitive sense). Also many compounds of *ent*, *er*, *ver*, like *entbrennen*, *catch fire*; *ergrauen*, *turn grey*; *verderben*, *get spoilt*. Compare *er hat geschlafen*, *he slept*, and *er ist eingeschlafen*, *he went to sleep*.

176. VARIABLE AUXILIARY.—Many verbs of motion, as *reiten*, *springen*, are often used without any idea of having reached one's destination. In such cases the auxiliary *haben* is used. Thus:—

Er hat in seiner Jugend sehr gut geritten.  
*As a young man he rode well (was a good rider).*

But in answering the question: "How did you get here, did you walk or drive?" we must say *Nein, ich bin geritten.* So again:—

Wie euch die Stirne brennt!  
 Ihr habt gelaufen und ihr habt gesprungen. (Freiligrath.)  
*How hot your forehead is!*  
*You have been running and jumping.*

but—

Der Knabe ist über den Graben gesprungen.  
*The boy jumped over the ditch (and is on the other side).*

*Obs. 1.* Occasionally one of these verbs takes an accusative even when conjugated with *sein*, as *ich bin diesen Weg noch nie geritten*, but the accusative is rather one of *extent* than a direct object.

*Obs. 2.* The occasional use of *verba* like *gehen* with *haben* in phrases like *er hat sich (den Fuß) wund gegangen*, *he made himself footsore with walking*, is worth notice.

177. ELLIPSIS OF AUXILIARIES.—The auxiliaries *haben* and *sein* (not *werden*) are often omitted when they come at the end of subordinate sentences. This is especially the case in poetry:—

Sieh, Herr, den Ring, den du getragen. (Schiller's Ged.)  
*See, my lord, the ring you wore,*

where *hast* is omitted.

178. AUXILIARIES OF PASSIVE.—It is essential to distinguish from each other the present and imperfect passive, and the two forms of the perfect and pluperfect passive. Thus:—

- (1.) Die Thüre wird um sechs Uhr geschlossen.  
*The gate is closed at six (i.e., the porter shuts it at six).*
- (2.) Die Thüre ist um sechs Uhr geschlossen worden.  
*The gate was closed at six (i.e., the porter shut it at six).*
- (3.) Die Thüre ist um sechs Uhr geschlossen.  
*The gate is closed at six (i.e., not open, having been shut before six).*
- (4.) Die Thüre wurde um sechs Uhr geschlossen.  
*The gate was closed at six o'clock (i.e., the porter shut it at six).*

- (5.) Die Thüre war um sechs Uhr geschlossen worden.  
*The gate had been closed at six (i.e., the porter had shut it at six).*
- (6.) Die Thüre war um sechs Uhr geschlossen.  
*The gate was closed at six (i.e., not open, the porter had shut it before six).*

(3) and (6) denote a state only, the other forms call attention to the action by which the state was produced. The following passage of Schiller's "Maid of Orleans" shows this very clearly:\*

Ihr seid vereinigt, Fürsten . . . .

Doch, die das Opfer Eures Zwists gefallen,  
 Die Todten stehen nicht mehr auf; die Thränen  
 Die Eurem Streit geflossen, sind und bleiben  
 Geweint.

where *sind geweint* associated with *bleiben geweint* expresses quite a different idea from *sind geweint worden*. The latter expression would be exactly equivalent to the *geflossen sind* of the text.

*Obs. 1.* Take care not to confound the forms *sind geweint*, *sind vereinigt*, which come from *transitive* verbs, with *sind gewachsen*, *sind geschietert*, which come from *neuter* verbs.

*Obs. 2.* Occasionally the perfect and pluperfect of *sein* are used as auxiliaries in the passive voice to express more strongly than the ordinary perfect and pluperfect (formed with *werten*) the completion of the action:—

Nach ihm ist Niemand wieder auf diesen Grad begnadigt gewesen. (Goë.)

*Since his time no one has been so completely re-established in favour.*

(referring not merely to the act of pardoning, but to the permanent condition of reconciliation resulting from it).

Mit dem vor einem halben Jahre verloren gewesenem und seltsamerweise erst jetzt gefundenen Armband. (Gutzkow.)

*With the bracelet which had been missing six months ago, and strangely enough only just found* (meaning not that the bracelet had been actually lost at that time, but that it was lost at some time unknown, and that six months ago it was missing). See § 154.

179. PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVES.—Only transitive verbs can be used *personally* in the passive. But intransitive

\* Quoted by Sanders, "Deutsche Sprachbriefe," p. 213.

verbs have an impersonal passive form, which, if derived from a verb governing the genitive or dative, or followed by a preposition, retains the same construction, cf. § 53:—

In diesem Coupé wird nicht geraucht.  
*No smoking allowed in this carriage.*

Ein Jeder trachtet\*  
 Sich also zu gebärden, daß seiner wird geachtet.\* (Logau.)  
*Each one aims so to behave himself that he may be esteemed.*

Die Marquise hatte  
 Nicht mehr gethan, als ihr befohlen worden. (Sch.)  
*The marchioness had done no more than she had been bidden to do.*

The Latin constructions—*Ventum erat ad limen*,—*Vix deorum opibus resisti poterat*, &c., are exactly similar.

180. MIDDLE VOICE.—Many English verbs, as *to move*, *to break*, are used indifferently in an active and a middle sense. If we say *the table moves*, we mean that the table is moved, but we do not care to inquire by whom, and therefore we use a form which leaves the question open, or rather, to save further trouble, refers the action to the table itself. Some German verbs, as *brennen*, *ziehen*, are used in exactly the same way as such English verbs; more frequently, the pronoun *sich* is added, and the action is thus *distinctly* referred to the subject. Thus:—

Die Erde bewegt sich.  
*The earth moves.*

Das Schicksal des Carlos hat sich entschieden. (Sch.)  
*The fate of Carlos has been decided.*

The last example will show that the German reflexive form is used not only where the English middle is found, but also in many cases where we prefer the passive.

French is very like German in this respect. The verb *tourner*, for example, is used both as an active and a middle verb; the middle of *mouvoir* is *se mouvoir*; and in translating

---

\* For *trachtet*, *geachtet*.

the last of the examples given above, one would use the reflexive form *se décider*. In both languages the substitution of the reflexive form for the passive, *where no agent is mentioned*, is very common.

181. IMPERATIVE PASSIVE is always formed with *sein* :—

Seid mir begrüßt, befreundte Schaaren. (Sch.)  
*I bid you welcome, friendly hosts.*

---

### THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

182. OMISSION OF *zu*.—The verbs *müssen*, *sollen*, *dürfen*, *fönnen*, *mögen*, *wollen*, *lassen* take, like their English equivalents *would*, *can*, *should*, &c., and like the auxiliaries *sein*, *haben*, and *werden*, an infinitive without *zu* :—

Wer könnte euren Thränen widersteh'n ? (Sch.)  
*Who could resist your tears ?*

183. COMPOUND TENSES.—The compound tenses of these verbs, when attached to an infinitive mood, are formed with the infinitives *müssen*, *mögen*, &c., instead of the past participles *gewußt*, *gemacht*, &c. :—

Wie elend hättet ihr werden können. (Lessing.)  
*How wretched you might have become.*

But *gemacht*, *gekonnt*, &c., are used when no infinitive follows the auxiliaries of mood :—

Er hätte gern kommen mögen, aber er hat nicht gedurft.  
*He would have liked to come, but he was not allowed to.*

Ein Zufall that, was Carlos nie gekonnt. (Sch.)  
*Chance did what Carlos never could do.*

184. *COULD HAVE*, *SHOULD HAVE*.—The English verbs of mood have no compound tenses; for instance, the perfect of *can* can only be expressed by the periphrasis *I have been able*. Hence care must be taken in translating *I could have done it*, *I should have done it*.



*I could have done it* means either (1) *I was able to do it*, *ich konnte es thun* or *ich habe es thun können*; or (2), and more commonly, *I should have been able to do it* (*facere potuissem*), *ich hätte es thun können*.

Similarly *you should have done it* is generally *du hättest es thun sollen*; but *du hast es thun sollen*, meaning *it was expected of you to do it*, may also be translated *you should have done it*.

185. PERFECT INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF MOOD.—There is, however, a case in which the perfect infinitive is used as in English, and that is when a *logical* possibility or obligation is to be expressed. Thus:—

*Ich kann es gethan haben,*  
means,— *I may have done it,*

i.e., *it is possible that I did do it*; when the possibility is a feeling or inference in the mind of the speaker that he has done it, not a genuine possibility of doing it. So again:—

*Er muß es gethan haben,*  
*He must have done it,*

implies a *logical* necessity, i.e. a certainty in the speaker's mind that he did do it, not any obligation to do it.

186. VERBS TREATED LIKE AUXILIARIES.—The verbs *heißen* (*to bid*), *helfen*, *hören*, *sehen*, *machen* are treated like the auxiliary verbs of mood:—

*Sie habt sie unter euch aufwachsen sehen.* (Sch.)  
*You have seen her grow up among you.*

*Ich habe es oftmals rühmen hören.*  
*I have often heard it praised.*

*Lehren* and *lernen*, when accompanied by another infinitive, are more generally used in the past participle than in the infinitive; even with respect to the other verbs above mentioned the usage is not uniform.

*Seitdem habe ich vom Reich ganz anders denken lernen.* (Sch.)  
*Since then I have learnt to think quite differently of the empire.*

*Ohne meine Bemühungen in den Naturwissenschaften hätte ich die Menschen nie kennen lernen, wie sie sind.* (Goe.)

*Had it not been for my efforts in natural science, I should never have learnt to know men as they are.*

187. **Müssen** is the equivalent of the English *must*, and implies that the subject is compelled by physical force or a law of nature. It is thus distinguished from *sollen*, which denotes *moral* constraint. It is important to remember that in English *must* is present only, and that consequently *mußte, habe... müssen, &c.*, must be rendered by a periphrasis, *it was necessary that, I had to, could not fail to, &c.* The same applies to the subjunctive and to the compound tenses.

Die Vollkommenheit des Gegenstandes selbst mußte in seinen Werken entzücken.

(Lessing.)

*It was necessary that the perfection of the object itself should give pleasure in his work.*

188. **Sollen**,\* *ought, am to*, denotes *moral constraint*, that of some one's will, a law, public opinion, &c.

(1.) It means, especially in the conditional, *ought to*, independently of the context.

Die Kinder sollen ihren Eltern gehorchen.

*Children ought to obey their parents.*

Ein Schauspieler, sagte Goethe, sollte eigentlich auch bei einem Bildhauer und Maler in die Lehre gehen. (Eckermann.)

*An actor, said Goethe, ought really to go to school to a sculptor and painter, besides studying his own profession.*

(2.) In many cases the obligation, instead of being a general one, is implied in the context.

Schiller trieb sich auch an solchen Tagen und Wochen zu arbeiten, in denen er nicht wohl war; sein Talent sollte ihm zu jeder Stunde gehorchen und zu Gebote stehen.

(Eckermann.)

*..he expected his powers to be at his beck and call.*

Bei diesem Sujet war die Aufgabe ganz einfach; nämlich den Philoktetes nebst dem Bogen von der Insel Lemnos zu holen. Ueber die Art wie dieses geschieht, das war die Sache des Dichters... der Ulysses soll ihn holen; aber soll er von Philoktetes erkannt werden oder nicht... (Eckermann.)

(3.) It often means simply *is said, is supposed*,

Er soll krank sein, *they say he is ill.*

Er soll es gethan haben, *he is said to have done it.*

to be distinguished from

Er hätte es thun sollen, *he ought to have done it.*

(4.) It is used as a periphrasis for the imperative,

Du sollst nicht stehlen, *thou shalt not steal.*

Er soll gehen, *let him go.*

(5.) In many dependent sentences *sollen* (especially the imperfect subjunctive) often does little more than form a substitute for the subjunctive, like the English *should*.

---

\* *Sollen* is said, like the English *shall*, to be really the past tense of a verb meaning *to kill*. Its first meaning then would be *I killed*; next, *I have to pay the atonement for killing*; and then *I owe* in general.

Die Geseze fordern, daß er es thun soll.  
*The laws require that he should do it.*

(6.) It is used elliptically with an infinitive like *bebeuten, dienen, helfen, &c.*, understood.

Was soll ihnen Reichthum? *Of what use is wealth to them?*

Was aber soll der Kelch da auf der Fahne? (Sch.)

*But what does the chalice there on the banner mean?*

189. **Können** corresponds to *müssen*, as *dürfen* to *sollen*, and means that there is no physical obstacle in the way to the accomplishment of something. It is equivalent to the English *can, could, may, might*. It may denote either an actual, or a logical possibility.

Er kann tanzen, *he can dance.*

Es kann regnen, *it may rain.*

Er hätte es thun können, *he could have done it, might have done it.*

Er kann es gethan haben, *he may have done it; it is possible he did it.*

*Obs.* Können is used elliptically of knowing a language:—

Können Sie Deutsch? *Do you speak German? do you understand German?*

190. **Dürfen** originally meant *to need*, and is used as an ordinary transitive verb in that sense in older German, for example, in Luther's Bible. *Bedürfen* is now used in that sense, and the common meaning of *dürfen* is *to be allowed, to venture*.

(1.) *To need*. In this sense it is found in a few conversational expressions, but in ordinary prose writing not later than Lessing or the earlier works of Kant.

Sch habe das Unnütze nicht unnützlich gelesen, wenn es von nun an dieser oder jener nicht weiter lesen darf. (Lessing.)

*It has not been useless for us to read useless matter, if hereafter some one else need not read it.*

Er darf nur kommen; es ist alles bereit.

*He need only come; it is all ready.*

(2.) *To be permitted, may*, corresponds to *sollen*, as *können* to *müssen*, implying that there is no moral obstacle in the way.

Wohl darf Liebe werden um die Liebe; doch solchem Glanz darf nur ein König nahen.

*Love may indeed ask for love; but to seek beauty only a king may approach.*

(3.) *To dare*.

Wie darfst du frecher, ungerechter Schurke einen so großen und herrlichen Ritter zum Tode verurtheilen? (von Raumer.)

*How dare a shameless, unrighteous villain like you condemn to death such a great and glorious knight?*

(4.) In the imperfect subjunctive, implying possibility or probability *may, might, will probably*.

Die Untersuchung dürfte bald zu Ende sein. (Grimm.)

*The enquiry will probably (may) soon be over.*

Der Herzog überlegte, daß eine so schöne Gelegenheit nicht zum zweiten Male wieder kommen dürfte.

*The duke reflected that such a good opportunity might not recur.*

191. **Mögen** is distinguished from *wollen*, by expressing rather *adaptation* (Geignetsein), and hence inclination, to an action, while *wollen* denotes will or intention (Selbstbestimmung). It is identical with the English *may, might*, and is the root of *Macht, power*.

(1.) It denotes, like *may* in English, a logical possibility.

Gebichte, von denen noch manche hier und dort im Privatbesitz verborgen sein mögen. (Eckermana.)

*Poems, many of which may still be hidden here and there in private collections.*

passing sometimes into little more than a periphrasis for the subjunctive.

Wie bedeutend und groß Byron als Talent auch sein mag, so möchte ich doch sehr zweifeln, daß aus seinen Schriften für reine Menschenbildung ein entschiedener Gewinn zu schöpfen. (Eckermann.)

*Great and characteristic as Byron may be as a genius, I should be inclined to doubt, &c.*

which also gives an example of (3).

(2.) Closely connected with this is the use of *mögen*, to make a concession, generally with *auch*, or simply to introduce a parenthetical *whether*.

So wie die Tiefe des Meeres allezeit ruhig bleibt, die Oberfläche mag auch noch so wüthen.... (Winckelmann.)

*Just as the depths of the sea always remain at peace, be the surface never so ruffled....*

So viel ist gewiß, daß eine starke Säule von rothem Porphyre und eine darüber erbaute Kapelle—mögen sie nun später von reuigen Königen oder theilnehmenden Bürgern, oder auf Kosten Elisabeth's aufgerichtet worden sein—Jahrhunderte lang die Stelle bezeichnen. (v. Raumer.)

*whether erected by repentant sovereigns or.....*

(3.) Perhaps the commonest meaning of *mögen* is *to like, to be inclined to* (see example above). The imperfect subjunctive is especially used in this sense. The adverb *gern* is often added.

Was sich verträgt mit meiner Pflicht, mag ich ihr gern gewähren. (Sch.)

*I will gladly give her what is compatible with my duty.*

Also einen Pfeil haben Sie sich aus Brabant mitgebracht. Ich möchte ihn sehen.

(Goe. in Eck.)

*So you brought home an arrow from Brabant; I should like to see it.*

(4.) In poetry *mögen* is often nearly equivalent sometimes to *können*, sometimes to *müssen*:—

Ruhig kann ich euch erscheinen,

Ruhig gehen sehn. (Sch.)

*Unmoved I can see you appear, unmoved I can see you go.*

Sch lasse den Freund dir als Bürgen,  
Ihn magst du, entrinn' ich, erwürgen.

*I leave you my friend as a surety; if I escape you may slay him.*

(5.) The subjunctive of *mügen* is often used in wishes:—

Möge ein besserer Rath Sie führen!  
*May better counsels guide you!*

192. **Lassen**, properly to *leave*, has as an auxiliary three meanings:—  
(1) to *allow*, (2) to *cause* or *order*, (3) to *represent as doing*. In all three senses it is followed by an infinitive capable of being rendered in English either by an active or a passive infinitive according to circumstances.

I. Actively:—

(1.) Man ließ ihn nicht einmal zu Worte kommen. (Sch.)  
*He was not even allowed to speak.*

Läßt's gut sein, Vater Arc, laßt sie gewähren. (Sch.)  
*Let it alone (let it be good), father Arc, let her have her will.*

Wer dieser Mann gewesen,  
Läßt, Wanderer, dich sein Grabmal lesen. (Gellert.)  
*Who this man was, his tombstone, traveller, lets thee read.*

(2.) Laß, Herr, des Opfers Düste steigen.  
*Bid, sire, the fragrance of sacrifice ascend to heaven.*

(3.) Und auch diesen (den sterbenden Hercules) läßt Sophocles klagen, winseln, weinen und schreien  
*And Hercules, too, Sophocles represents as complaining, moaning, weeping, and shrieking.* (Lessing.)

Chateaubrun läßt ihn bloß von dem vergifteten Pfeile eines Trojaners verwundet sein.  
(Lessing.)

*Chateaubrun represents him as merely wounded by the poisoned arrow of a Trojan.*

*Obs.* Occasionally, when the infinitive with *lassen* is transitive, the object of *lassen* is put in the dative, probably in imitation of the French construction.

Wenn Sie mir gegen Weihnachten wissen lassen, wie weit Sie damit gekommen sind.  
(Lessing.)

But this usage is obsolete.

II. Passively:—

(1.) Sie folgten dem Dichter, ohne sich in der geringsten Kleinigkeit von ihm verführen zu lassen.  
*They followed the poet, without allowing themselves to be misled by him in the smallest trifle.* (Lessing.)

(2.) Der Gouverneur ließ mich in sein Zimmer rufen. (Goe.)  
*The governor ordered me to be summoned to his room.*

So ließ Karl mehreren Römern die Füße abhauen. (von Raumer.)  
*Accordingly Charles had the feet of several Romans cut off.*

*Obs. 1.* The real object of *lassen* in Class II. is the infinitive—thus—*without allowing the misleading themselves—ordered the summoning me—caused the cutting off.*

*Obs. 2.* Sometimes an ambiguity arises, as in :—

Lafß deinen Zorn die Klugheit überwinden. (Lessing.)  
*Let wisdom get the better of your wrath.*

which might also be rendered :—

*Let your wrath get the better of wisdom.*

Such ambiguity can easily be avoided by writing :—

Lafß deinen Zorn von der Klugheit überwinden,  
 or Lafß die Klugheit von deinem Zorn überwinden ;

according as the first or the second is meant.

*Obs. 3.* *Lassen* has also an intransitive meaning :—

Ein weißer Hut ließ lächerlich ;  
 Schwarz, Bruder, schwarz, so schickt es sich. (Gellert.)

*A white hat would look ridiculous—black, brother, black is the thing.*

193. *Wollen*, *will*, *wish*, is used first like the English *will*, when not a mere sign of the future. It has two idiomatic uses :—

(1.) With a past infinitive, *to assert, maintain.*

Die Leute wollen es in den Zeitungen gelesen haben.  
*People declare they have seen it in the papers.*

(2.) As an optative :—

Wollte Gott, es gäbe keine unruhige Köpfe in ganz Deutschland. (Goe.)  
*Would to God, there were no unruly spirits in all Germany.*

## ORDER OF WORDS.

194. PARTS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE.—To arrange a sentence correctly it is necessary to remember its division into the subject and predicate ; and the further division of the predicate into the verb, which is always present ; and the appositive complement, the object, or objects, and adverbial additions, which may or may not be there. Further, the essential part of the predicate, if not contained in a single finite verb (*i. e.*, a part of the verb which has number and person-endings), consists of such a finite verb together with (1) an appositive complement ; (2) a separable prefix ; or (3) the participles, etc., which are used with auxiliaries to form the compound tenses. In the last-named case the finite verb is an auxiliary or an auxiliary verb of mood. The words described by (1) (2) (3) may be conveniently grouped under the name *complement*. More than one of them may be present in the same sentence.

195. DECLARATORY SENTENCE.—The natural order, then in a declaratory sentence is (1) the nominative or subject; (2) the finite verb or auxiliary; (3) objects and adverbial additions; (4) the complement:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Finite Verb.</i>	<i>Objects and Adverbial Additions.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>
Die Idee	war	für sie	empörend.
Der Knabe	hat	gestern seinem Freunde ein Buch	gegeben.
Sein Flehen	bringt	zu keinem Retter.	
Du	wirst	ihn seiner Freude	beraubt haben.
Er	wird	es dir leicht	überlassen können.
Man	gab	mir dieselben	zurück.
Das Wort	ist		frei.

In sentences beginning with *es*, the logical subject immediately follows the verb. So does the appositive complement of the verb *to be*.

*Es* | zogen | drei Burfchen.....

Comparing this with the next rule, it will be seen that the verb stands *second* in every principal declaratory sentence. But it must be clearly understood that the subject is considered to include not only the noun or pronoun which is the nominative to the verb together with (1) an epithet or genitive preceding it; or (2) a genitive or a noun with a preposition depending upon it; but also (3) an adverb like *allein*, *erst*, *für meinen Theil* belonging to it, and not to the sentence; (4) another noun in apposition to it; (5) a relative clause qualifying it; (6) a participle with words depending on it, forming a secondary predicate:—

Der kluge Mann	baut		vor.
Die Art im Haus.	erspart	den Zimmermann.	
Ich allein	muß	einsam	trauern.
Pfingsten, das liebliche Fest,	war		gekommen.
Ein Mann, der recht zu wirken denkt,	muß	auf das rechte Werkzeug	halten.
Die französische Garde, dem allseitigen Sturm erliegend,	geräth	in Unordnung.	

196. VERB ALWAYS SECOND.—It may be desirable, for the sake of emphasis, to begin the sentence with one of the objects or with an adverbial addition. In this case the finite verb remains *second*, and the nominative is placed immediately after it. The rest of the order remains as before:—

Neapel	habe	ich	nach seiner eignen Art	behandelt.
Bei der Wiederkehr	sell	manches		nachgeholt werden.
Setzt	trat	ich		vor.

*Obs. 1.*—Sometimes a reflexive pronoun or even the oblique case of another pronoun precedes the nominative:—

Aber eben dieser Landstraße hatte sich Wallenstein am Abend vor der Schlacht zum großen Nachtheil seines Gegners bemächtigt.

*Obs. 2.*—Notice that when *he said, said he*, is put after some words of a speech, it is *sagte er*, not *er sagte*.

197. INTERROGATIVE, &c., SENTENCES.—In interrogative, optative, and imperative sentences the finite verb is placed first, the nominative second; or if the sentence begins with an interrogative adverb or pronoun (*wo? wann? was? ic.*) the verb stands second, and the nominative third:—

	Werten	Sie	mit uns heute in's Theater	gehen?
	Möge	er		glücklich werden!
	Schreiben	Sie	täglich an uns.	
Wo	haben	Sie	ihn	gesehen?

In wishes, the nominative often stands first:—

Gott sei dir gnädig!—Es lebe die Freiheit!

Wer ein holdes Weib errungen,

Mische seinen Jubel ein!

*Obs. 1.*—Vocatives, and the word *o!* do not affect the order:—

Frommer Stab, o hätt' ich nimmer

Mit dem Schwerte dich getauscht!



*Obs. 2.*—In sentences with *noch*, the verb is sometimes placed first as in an interrogative sentence, where the real object is to affirm more strongly.

Seit lange war die Kunst aus dem Leben getreten, und war ein Artifel des Luxus geworden. . . . . Weiß ich noch die Zeit noch, wo man in den Gallerieen die schönsten Werke eines Leonardo nur als merkwürdige und sonderbare Altstücker vorwies . . . . . (Tieck.)

*Why I remember the time well enough, when. . . . .*

Sat die Königin noch nichts voraus vor dem gemeinen Bürgerweib. (Schiller.)

198. PLACE OF COMPLEMENT.—With reference to the arrangement of the infinitives and participles in a compound tense, it is enough to observe that past participles precede infinitives, and the past participles of the principal verbs those of their auxiliaries. Thus, er wird gelobt worden sein; ich würde gelobt werden.

Some nouns and adverbial expressions are so closely connected with verbs as to form a single idea with them; such are—zu Theil, in zu Theil werden; Trotz, in Trotz bieten; ein Ende, in ein Ende machen, etc. Such expressions naturally take their place as far on as possible in the sentence. So does the adjective serving as the complement of sein. Thus:—

Des Lebens ungemischte Freude  
Ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil. (Sch.)

Die Nacht brach herein, und machte dem Gefecht ein Ende.

(Varnhagen von Ense.)

199. OBJECTS AND ADVERBIAL ADDITIONS.—The general principles on which these parts of a sentence are arranged are, first, that words closely connected with the verb are placed as near the end as possible, and next that, of other words, the less important are placed first. Thus:—

(1.) The oblique cases of pronouns stand as early as possible. As to their relative order, the following is generally adopted:—

1. reflexive pronoun;
2. *es*;
3. accusative of personal pronoun;
4. dative or genitive of personal pronoun;
5. demonstrative *das*, *dieses*, &c.

(2.) When there are two objects, one direct and the other indirect, and both are nouns, the indirect object precedes, as being less closely connected with the verb. If one of the objects be a pronoun, it precedes the other. The second accusative, with verbs of naming, is essential to the verb, and goes as late as possible.

(3.) Unemphatic adverbs (adverbiale Formwörter), like *oft*, *heute*, *hier*, *nirgendß*, precede everything except pronouns.

(4.) But adverbs, and nouns with prepositions equivalent to adverbs, are placed as late as possible in the sentence when they are in any way necessary to complete the sense of the verb. Should there be nothing else to go by, a long adverbial expression follows a short object, and *vice versa*.

(5.) Adverbs and adverbial expressions of *time* precede those of *place*, and those of *place* precede those of *manner*.

(6.) If an adverb like *nicht*, *schon*, *noch*, qualifies a particular word in a sentence, it must, of course, immediately precede that word.

It is, of course, impossible to lay down rules applying to every case, but it is not easy to go wrong, if the two principles enumerated above are borne in mind, viz., that insignificant words come directly after the finite verb, and that words essential to make up the sense of the verb are placed as late as possible.

200. PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES.—Participles and infinitives often have words depending on them. They are then placed at the end of the phrase of which they form part, and the words depending on them are arranged as they would be in a simple sentence:—

Wie glücklich ist der, der, um sich mit dem Schicksal in Einigkeit zu setzen, nicht sein ganzes vorhergehendes Leben wegzuverfen braucht.

(Goe.)

Er nannte seinen Namen, den der Major, mit Wohlgefallen die stattliche Gestalt betrachtend, niederzuschreiben im Begriff war.

(Heyse.)

201. COORDINATE SENTENCES.—Two independent sentences, formed by *and*, *therefore*, *for*, &c., are said to be coordinate. The second of such sentences retains its usual order, provided the conjunction connecting it with the preceding be *und*, *oder*, *allein*, *sondern*, *denn*, *aber*, *nämlich*. If, however, the connecting word be a real adverb, *auch*, *desßhalb*, *dennoch*, *zwar*, *indessen*, &c., inversion takes place, that is, the nominative follows the verb. *Entweder*, *either*; *doch*, *yet*, sometimes cause inversion, and sometimes not:—

Wir lachen, wenn wir hören, daß bei den Alten auch die Künste bürgerlichen Gesetzen unterworfen gewesen. Aber wir haben nicht immer Recht, wenn wir lachen. Unstreitig müssen sich die Gesetze über die Wissenschaften keine Gewalt anmaßen, denn der Endzweck der Wissenschaften ist Wahrheit. Wahrheit ist der Seele nothwendig; und es wird Tyrannei, ihr in Befriedigung dieses wesentlichen Bedürfnisses den geringsten Zwang anzuthun. Der Endzweck der Künste hingegen ist Vergnügen; und das Vergnügen ist entbehrlich. Also darf es allerdings von dem Gesetzgeber abhängen.....

(Lessing.)

Doch ihr redet zu viel von allerlei Dingen. (Goe.)

Doch will ich fallen, doch! geräthet oder nicht. (Sch.)

*Obs.* Even with words like *indef*, it is possible to avoid inversion by putting them after the subject, in which case they almost form part of it, and therefore do not affect the order:—

Bücher *indef* sandte allen Truppentheilen.....

.....den Befehl.....

(Varnhagen von Ense.)

202. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.—In all subordinate sentences introduced by a subordinate conjunction, or a relative or interrogative pronoun, the finite verb or auxiliary is placed at the end, all other words remaining in the same order as in principal sentences.

There are, however, two cases in which the introductory conjunction is omitted, and the order is that of a principal sentence:—

(1.) in oblique oration, *daß* being left out; as, er sagte, es sei unmöglich.

(2.) in hypothetical and concessive sentences, *if*, *although* are omitted, and the clause assumes an interrogative form:—

Und wär' ich bei Geld, so wär' ich bei Sinnen.

203. VERBS OF MOOD.—Verbs of mood, however, in their compound tenses, deviate from this rule, and place the auxiliary immediately before the governed infinitive, instead of at the end of the sentence. Sometimes it even precedes a verb very closely connected with the infinitive:—

Doch hoffte man, die Stadt wenigstens so lange hinzuhalten, bis man das Getreide würde einerten können. (Sch.)

Ich war zu sehr gewohnt, mich mit mir selbst zu beschäftigen, als daß ich mit Aufmerksamkeit hätte ein Kunstwerk betrachten sollen. (Goe.)

204. APPARENT EXCEPTION AFTER *als*.—There is an apparent exception to the ordinary rule after *als*, rendered in English *as if*.

Es ist mir immer, als hätte ich ihn irgendwo gesehen.  
*I always felt as though I had seen him somewhere.*

The explanation is easily seen by supplying the ellipsis—

Es ist mir, als es sein würde, hätte ich.....  
*I feel as I should feel, had I.....*

205. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.—Should a complex sentence begin with an adverbial clause, the same inversion takes place in the principal sentence as if it began with an adverb:—

Wenn das die Sternkunst ist,	will	ich	froh zu diesem heitern Glauben mich	bekennen.
Als er ankam,	fand	er	Niemand da.	

206. IRREGULARITIES.—The strict rules of order are often violated by the poets, occasionally by prose writers. Heine, who spent most of his life in France, is particularly fond of deviating.

Doch, als er's wog in freier Hand,  
Das Schwert er viel zu schwer erfand.  
Der alte Schmied den Bart sich streicht. (Uhland.)

Er war dein Gast und hatte sich gesetzt an deinen Herd. (Heine.)  
Und er wollte noch einmal nachträumen die Träume seiner Jugend.  
(Heine.)

Nur eine schmale Gasse öffnete sich zwischen den Kirchenstühlen, durch welche die freiwilligen Kämpfer, einer hinter dem andern, dem Altar zuschritten, um dort ihre Namen aufzeichnen und sich mit einem Handschlag von dem Officier anwerben zu lassen für den heiligen Krieg.  
(Heyse.)

## SYNTAX OF COMPLEX SENTENCES.

### INTRODUCTORY.

207. SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCE.—In writing or speaking, we must necessarily use one of three forms of speech; we make a statement, we ask a question, or we express a desire in the form of a command, petition, or wish. Any one of these may, *like a noun*, occur in a sentence as the *object* of a verb of believing, saying, asking, &c.; as the *subject* of a verb; as the *appositive complement* after verbs like *is*, *seems*, &c.; or lastly, it may depend on various prepositions. Thus we have three forms of substantival sentences:—

- I. Oblique Enunciation.
- II. Oblique Interrogation.
- III. Oblique Petition.

Each of which may occur:—

- ( $\alpha$ ) as object;
- ( $\beta$ ) as subject;
- ( $\gamma$ ) as apposition;
- ( $\delta$ ) as appositive complement.

To illustrate this classification, let us take a simple sentence, having for its theme “the triumph of good over evil.”

There are three forms of such a simple sentence:—

Enunciation: *Good will triumph over evil.*

Interrogation: *Will good triumph over evil?*

Petition: *Let (or may) good triumph over evil.*

The next step is to introduce one or other of these forms into a sentence in the place of a noun. We shall begin with the first form—Enunciation.

208. ENUNCIATION.—( $\alpha$ ) In the sentence—

*I anticipate the triumph of good over evil,*

write for the noun “the triumph,” &c., the sentence “that good will triumph over evil,” and we have—

*I anticipate that good will triumph over evil,”*

where “that good,” &c., is therefore the *object* of *I anticipate*.

(β) Again in the sentence—

*The triumph of good over evil is certain,*

perform the same operation, and we have—

*That good will triumph over evil is certain,*

an illustration of the Oblique Enunciation as subject.

(γ) A far commoner way of turning the last phrase both in English and German is—

*It is certain that good will triumph over evil,*

where the sentence “that good,” &c., is in apposition to the grammatical subject *it*. Strictly speaking this sentence represents—

*It (the triumph of good over evil) is certain.*

In German the noun sentence is frequently in apposition to a compound of *da*, such as *darauf*, *daran*. Thus—

*He grieves over the triumph of good over evil*

may be rendered—

*Er ist darüber betrübt, daß das Gute über das Böse siegt.*

(δ) Lastly, the Oblique Enunciation may form the *appositive complement*, as in—

*The most reasonable of all creeds is that good will triumph over evil,*

compared with—

*The most reasonable of all creeds is the certain triumph of good over evil.*

209. INTERROGATION.—It will now be easy to see how the noun sentence plays the part of a noun in the following instances of Oblique Interrogation:—

*I wish to know whether good will triumph over evil.*

*Whether good will triumph over evil is uncertain.*

*It has often been asked whether good will triumph over evil.*

*The gravest of all questions is whether good will triumph over evil.*

210. PETITION.—And in Oblique Petition—

*All men wish that good may triumph over evil.*

*That good may triumph over evil is the earnest desire of all good men.*

*It is feared by bad men that good will triumph over evil (let good not triumph...).*

*The anxiety of the wicked is lest good should triumph over evil (let good not triumph...).*

211. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.—Sentences beginning with the relative are attached to nouns and qualify them like adjectives. Thus

Der Mann, der neulich angekommen ist  
is the exact equivalent of

Der neulich angekommene Mann.

As to the construction of adjectival sentences, there are two things to be observed, (1) the finite verb is placed at the end of the sentence; (2) the indicative mood is used, unless the sentence is something more than a simple adjectival sentence. See §§ 240, 248.

212. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES WITH ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—It often happens that a sentence beginning with a relative, especially *wer*, *was*, is the subject of a verb, or otherwise takes the place of a noun. Such a sentence may be considered a substantival sentence. It is, however, perhaps better to look upon it as an adjectival sentence, serving as epithet to a noun or pronoun understood. Thus in

Wer dazu stimmt, erhebe seine Hände ;

*wer dazu stimmt* may be looked upon as an epithet of *der* understood, the subject to *erhebe*.

213. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.—Adverbial sentences are divided into several classes, according to the kind of adverb which they replace in a sentence. The classes are as follows :—

(I.) Consecutive sentences, beginning with *so that*, or with *that*, preceded by some such word as *such*, *so*.

(II.) Final sentences, denoting a purpose, and introduced by *in order that*, or by *that*, meaning *in order that*.

(III.) Sentences, beginning with *when*, *until*, *where*, &c., and serving instead of an adverb of time or place.

(IV.) Causal sentences, answering the question *why* ?

(V.) Comparative sentences, beginning with *than*, or answering the question *how* ?

(VI.) Conditional sentences, beginning with *if*, or an equivalent word.

(VII.) Concessive sentences, beginning with *though*.

The following are instances, the sentences in italics being subordinate :

- (I.) He practises *so often that he will be in the eleven.*  
 (II.) - - - *in order that he may be in the eleven.*  
 (III.) - - - *when he ought to be at work.*  
 - - - *wherever he can find a net.*  
 (IV.) - - - *because he cannot help it.*  
 (V.) - - - *more than he ought to practise, as much as he likes.*  
 (VI.) He will practise, *if he has time.*  
 (VII.) - - - *even though it rains.*

---

### SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCES.

214. DECLARATORY SENTENCES appear in three forms :—

(1.) Introduced by the conjunction *daß*, with indicative or subjunctive, according to circumstances. § 227, &c.

(2.) Expressed by a dependent sentence in the order of a principal sentence with no introductory conjunctive, and the verb in the subjunctive. (See chapter on Oblique Oration.)

(3.) In an abridged form, expressed by the infinitive § 218.

In the examples to be given in this chapter the use of the subjunctive will be avoided. Its employment will be fully discussed in the next chapter, headed Oblique Oration. The object here is to show what part substantival sentences may play in a complex sentence.

215. DECLARATORY SENTENCES AS SUBJECT, OBJECT, &c.—A declaratory sentence introduced by *daß* may stand exactly as in English.

(1.) As subject—

*Daß Unterdrücker nichts zu fürchten haben, ist weder nöthig noch gut.*  
 (J. Müller.)

*That oppressors should have nothing to fear, is neither necessary nor desirable.*

(2.) As object of a verb—

*Ich weiß, daß alle Länder gute Menschen tragen.* (Lessing.)  
*I know that all countries produce good men.*



## (3.) As appositive complement—

Die schönste Antwort auf Verleumdung ist, daß man sie stillschweigend verachtet. (Goe.)

*The best answer to calumny is contemptuous silence.*

(4.) In apposition to the subject, especially when the subject is a pronoun, daß or es. In this case the substantival sentence may be considered the true subject of the verb.

Daß die Wogen sich senken und heben,  
Das ist eben des Meeres Leben.

*The rising and falling of the waves is the life of the sea.*

(5.) In apposition to the object of a verb, in whatever case—

Daß unser Gott uns Leben gab,  
Deß wollen wir uns freuen. (Stolberg.)

*We will rejoice that our God has given us life.*

Ich fand es schrecklich, daß ich Schlaf und Ruhe und Gesundheit geopfert hatte. (Goe.)

*I thought it terrible that I had sacrificed sleep and rest and health.*

It may also stand—

(6.) In apposition to a noun—

Zur Gewähr, daß ich euch sende, bring' ihm dies Schreiben. (Sch.)

*As a guarantee that I send you, take him this paper.*

216. IN APPOSITION TO COMPOUNDS OF **da**.—A sentence beginning with daß may also stand in apposition to compounds of da with prepositions. Such substantival sentences in German are not represented by substantival sentences in English, but by prepositions with verbal nouns, &c.

Er rettete sich dadurch, daß er durch das Fenster sprang.

*He saved himself by jumping out of the window. (thereby that he jumped.)*

Vielleicht trägt der Gram um ihn dazu bei, daß mein Vater seit einiger Zeit unkenntlich wird.

*Perhaps grief for him has tended to make my father unlike himself for some time past (has contributed thereto, that my father has become...)*

Mein eigentlichster Vortheil bestand darin, daß die Liebe zur Stille herrschend war. (Goe.)

*My most real advantage consisted in the prevalence of the love of quiet.*

In some cases the German usage approaches nearer to English, and the compound of *da* is suppressed.

217. SUPINE IN APPOSITION.—A substantival sentence in apposition to *es*, *daß* and compounds of *der*, is often replaced by an infinitive with *zu* (supine).

*Es ist ein großes Ergötzen, sich in den Geist der Zeiten zu versetzen.*

*It is a great delight, to enter into the spirit of the times,*

which might be rendered *daß man.....sich versetzt.*

Mein guter Stern bewahrte mich davor,

Die Natter an den Busen mir zu legen. (Sch.)

*My good star saved me from taking the serpent into my bosom.*

Alle deine Berrichtungen werden darin bestehen, den Homer bei meinem Tische vorzulesen. (Wieland)

*All your duties will consist in reading Homer aloud at my table.*

Also frequently when the compound of *da* is omitted—

Die Tyranei begnügt sich nicht (damit), ihr Werk nur halb zu thun. (Sch.)

*Tyranny is not satisfied with doing its work by halves.*

218. SUPINE AS OBJECT.—The infinitive with *zu* as object represents a substantival sentence after verbs of *thinking*, *hoping*, *fearing*, and also after *behaupten*, but not after ordinary verbs of *saying*, &c.

Ich hoffte mit der Fichte Kranz,

Des Sängers Schläfe zu umwinden. (Sch.)

*I hoped to wreath the minstrel's brow with the crown of pine.*

Tilly konnte sich rühmen, noch keine Schlacht verloren zu haben. (Sch.)

*Tilly could boast that he had never yet lost a battle.*

219. SUBJECT OF SUPINE.—It is important to observe that when the supine represents a substantival sentence, its subject is the same as that of the principal sentence, unless the principal sentence is impersonal, or as in the case of the 3rd example of § 217, readily suggests, the subject of the supine.

220. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES are introduced by the conjunction *ob, whether*, or by interrogative pronouns or adverbs, *wer, was, wo, wie, woher, &c.* The verb in them is either in the indicative or the subjunctive mood § 233. Such sentences are generally the object or in apposition to the object of verbs of *asking, denoting, &c.*

Läßt seh'n, ob sie ihn zweimal retten wird. (Sch.)

*Let us see whether she will save him twice.*

The *independent* question of which this is the oblique form is

Wird sie ihn zweimal retten?

Läß uns Eins nur wissen, was wir sind. (Herder.)

*Let us know only one thing, what we are.*

### OBLIQUE ORATION.

221. MEANING OF OBLIQUE ORATION.—In reporting Parliamentary debates, &c., and in history, speeches are given in two different ways; either the exact words of the speaker are given, or the third person is substituted for the first, and the speech thus embodied in a continuous narrative. For instance, a speech of the Duke of Wellington in 1830 is thus reported.

“Under these circumstances he was not prepared to bring forward any measure of the description alluded to by the noble lord. He was not only not prepared to bring forward any measure of this nature, but he would at once declare that, as far as he was concerned, as long as he held any station in the government of the country, he should always feel it his duty to resist such measures when proposed by others.”

This is the second way of reporting a speech, and is what is called oblique oration. The whole of the speech is a series of *subordinate* sentences, depending on some such principal clause as “The Duke of Wellington said.” Had the first method of reporting been used, we should have read:

“Under these circumstances, I am not prepared to bring forward any measure of the description alluded to by the noble lord. Not only am I not prepared to bring forward any measure of this nature, but I will at once declare that, as far as I am concerned, as long as I hold any station in the government of the country, I shall always feel it my duty to resist such measures when proposed by others.”

It will be observed that in this first passage, compared with the second, not only is the third person used where the Duke employed the first, but the tenses are changed, not only in the principal clauses of the speech, but also in the subordinate ones. The same idiom, which is most clearly brought out in examples like the above, is constantly occurring in narratives, whenever a statement or question is introduced as representing not the opinion of the author, but that of the person he is speaking of.

222. MOOD AND TENSE.—Verbs, both in the principal and the subordinate clauses of oblique oration, are put in the subjunctive mood, and, except in the cases mentioned above, in the primary tenses. Thus the

Present indicative	.. ..	.. becomes the	present subjunctive.
Imperfect indicative (as aorist)	.. ..	.. ..	perfect subjunctive.
Imperfect indicative (as imperfect)	.. ..	.. ..	present subjunctive.
Perfect indicative .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	perfect subjunctive.
Pluperfect indicative .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	perfect subjunctive.
Future indicative .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	future subjunctive.
Future perfect indicative .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	future perfect subjunctive.
Conditional .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	future subj. (or remains).

Thus compare :

Einmal sagte Nothfuß ganz deutlich hinter mir : „Jetzt weiß ich ja auch, wer Sie sind. Sie sind ja der Sohn des Bezirksförsters, da sind wir ja aus einer Gegend. Ich habe oft bei Ihrem Vater im Walde gearbeitet. War ein strenger, fadengrader Mann. (Auerbach.)

and the following (from Sanders)

Nothfuß sagte zu dem Gefangenen, jetzt wisse er auch, wer dieser sei ; er sei ja der Sohn der Bezirksförsters, sie seien ja Beide aus einer Gegend, er habe oft bei dem Vater des Gefangenen im Walde gearbeitet. Daß sei ein strenger, fadengrader Mann gewesen.

Again :

Als bester Trost erschien es, daß Canning einem solchen supponirten Widerstand gegenüber sich nicht den Whigs und Radicalen in die Arme werfen könne, daß er an allseitiger Verlegenheit baldigst scheitern werde. (Pauli.)

The original of which in direct oration would be Canning kann...sich nicht...werfen, er wird...scheitern.

223. FORM AND ORDER.—A sentence in oblique oration may either depend on daß, and consequently have its verb at

the end, or it may be put in its natural order without an introductory conjunction, its oblique character being marked solely by the mood of the verbs.

Wellingtons Freunde frohlockten, daß es nun endlich reine Bahn gebe zwischen zwei Parteten, wie in diesen Tagen das Tory-Stichwort lautete. Die Aufforderung Canning's an den Herzog, unter ihm Minister zu bleiben, sei eine Insolenz; eines Helden würdig habe der Sieger von Waterloo damit geantwortet, daß er sammt dem Feldzeugmeisteramt nun auch sofort den Oberbefehl der Armee niedergelegt habe. (Pauli.)

In this passage the first sentence (es...gebe) is introduced by daß; the following sentences, die Aufforderung.....Insolenz and eines Helden.....geantwortet, have their verbs in the subjunctive, but stand in the same order as principal sentences. Finally the concluding clause daß er.....niedergelegt habe is a dependent clause in oblique oration, and, as such, it has also its verb in the subjunctive.

224. APPOSITION.—An oblique statement often stands in apposition to a noun or a compound of *der*.

Der englische Hof machte dem Streit durch die Erklärung ein Ende, daß er sich von dem ferneren Unterhalt der hessischen Truppen gänzlich lössage, wenn der Landgraf sie nicht der Verwendung des Königs von Großbritannien sofort überlassen wolle. (Archenholz.)

225. IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—As the third person plural of the present subjunctive is the same as that of the present indicative, the imperfect subjunctive is preferred to the present in that person. The same applies to tenses formed with the present of an auxiliary, i. e., the perfect and the two futures. Thus:—

Man sagte, er lese, but sie läßen.

Man sagte, er habe gelesen, but sie hätten gelesen.

Should the first singular or plural occur, as it sometimes does in oblique oration, the same rule applies. It should be added that, though *sein* has a distinct form for the present subjunctive, *waren* is often used:—

Das wären die Planeten, sagte mir  
Der Führer, sie regierten das Geschick;  
Drum seien sie als Könige gebildet. (Sch.)

The following passage from Paul Heyse, who is a very accurate writer, illustrates the use of the tenses. It is from an account of a sermon preached when the Germans were rallying to the Befreiungskrieg:—

Seid unerschrocken, lautet der Ruf, und haltet fest ob dem Geseß, dann erst wird euch Gott wiederum herrlich machen. Denn ein heiliger Krieg sei es, in den sie ausziehen, und heiligen müsse sich, wer des Sieges theilhaftig werden wolle. Nicht gottloser Troß werde den Troß der Gottlosen niederwerfen, sondern ein reiner demüthiger Sinn, der unter den Gräueln des Krieges festhalte ob dem Geseß, und sich nicht mit dem Roth beflecke, der die Herrlichkeit Jener gewesen sei.

Notice in this passage (1) the transition from direct to oblique; (2) the present subjunctive, except in *ausziehen*, which is used because *ausziehen* is like the indicative; (3) *gewesen sei*, to represent a past tense in a dependent clause.

*Obs.* It should be added that usage is not quite uniform. Some authors use an imperfect, &c., subjunctive whenever a past tense precedes.

226. UNTRUE STATEMENTS.—The imperfect, &c., are used where the oblique statement is made merely to be contradicted, or is, by the nature of things, untrue:—

Mir meldet er aus Linz, er läge krank;  
Doch hab' ich sich're Nachricht, daß er sich  
Zu Frauenberg versteckt beim Grafen Gallas. (Sch.)

Verede dich, ich wär' ein Waisenkind. (Sch.)  
(but *I am not an orphan.*)

227. TRUE STATEMENTS.—When the oblique statement is vouched for by the speaker, the indicative is used. In such case the reader's attention is to be fixed chiefly on the oblique statement, not on the fact of its having been made by such and such a person.

Ihr sagtet selbst, daß er von Sinnen war. (Sch.)  
*He is out of his mind, and you said so yourself.*

Hence the indicative is the natural tense of an oblique statement after verbs like *wissen*, *bekennen*, *sehen*, *erfahren*, &c.

228. NO SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—As the use of the present and imperfect subjunctive in oblique statements is in German determined by other considerations, the ordinary rule of other languages, that a past tense is followed by a past tense, a present by a present, does not hold good.

229. IMPERATIVE.—An imperative occurring in direct oration is represented in oblique by an auxiliary, generally mögen, with the infinitive. This applies only when the imperative comes in the course of a piece of oblique oration, or depends on a verb like sagen:—

Goethe sagte: „Sehe Jeder, wie er's treibe.“

Goethe sagte: „Jeder möge sehen, wie er's treibe.“

Die Antwort war: Thut, was ihr am rathsamsten findet.

Die Antwort war: Sie möchten thun, was sie am rathsamsten fänden.

230. OBLIQUE PETITION.—There are a great number of cases in which an imperative would stand were the sentence actually in direct oration, but where its true character is a little disguised, and it depends upon verbs and expressions denoting or implying a wish, a command, or requirement, permission. In such cases daß with a subjunctive is used to introduce a substantival sentence, which is the object of the verb. The rule of tenses is the same as in oblique statement:—

Erlauben Sie, daß dieser fremde Mann

Gerufen werde. (Sch.)

*Permit this stranger to be called.*

Nimm dich in Acht, daß dich die Rache nicht verderbe. (Sch.)

*Take care lest revenge destroy you.*

Sie ist ein Weib, und die möchten immer gern, daß sich alles unter ihr sanftes Joch gelassen schmiegte. (Goe.)

*She is a woman, and women would always be glad that everything should bend beneath their gentle yoke.*

Er ist nicht werth, daß man sich um ihn bekümmere.

*He is not worth troubling about.*

In the last sentence, ist ... werth is equivalent to a verb expressing requirement. “His character does not demand that one should, &c. ...”

Such sentences may also stand in apposition as appositive complements, or as subjects to verbs:—

Ich bestehe darauf, daß der Lord sich entferne. (Sch.)

*I insist upon his Lordship's going away.*

Die Hauptsache ist, daß man ihm ruhig entgegengehe.  
*The chief thing is that we should encounter him quietly.*

Ich bin nicht gewohnt, daß mich der Zufall,  
 Blind waltend, finster herrschend, mit sich führe.  
*I am not accustomed to let chance lead me whither it will in its  
 blind government and dark supremacy.*

Were this last sentence put into direct oration, it would run—

*Let not chance lead me, chance shall not lead me.*

There is some tendency, however, to use an indicative in such sentences:—

Fortre nicht von ihm, daß er dich jetzt verlassen soll. (Goe).  
*Do not insist on his leaving you now.*

Ist nur der Saracen es werth,  
 Daß ihn bekämpft der Christen Schwert? (Sch.)  
*Is only the Saracen worthy to be conquered by the sword of Christians?*

231. INFINITIVE IN OBLIQUE PETITION.—It often happens that a verb of *entreating, commanding, &c.*, is followed by an infinitive, which would, in direct oration, be in the imperative. The subordinate clauses show that the laws of oblique oration are still recognised. Thus in the „Jungfrau von Orleans“ the King would have prayed:—

Wenn unrecht Gut an dieser Krone hastet, nimn mich zum  
 Opfer an.

Johanna relates his prayer, thus:—

Zum ersten flehstest du den Himmel an,  
 Wenn unrecht Gut an dieser Krone hafte,  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 Dich zum Opfer anzunehmen.

232. HOPING AND FEARING.—After *hoffen, erwarten, fürchten*, a subjunctive may be used, but the tendency is to prefer the indicative:—

Guebnant fürchtete, daß die Absicht der Schweten sei.... (Sch.)

Der König ist gut, und wir wollen hoffen, daß er gerecht ist. (Sch.)

Ich fürchte, wir sind alle betrogen. (Goe.)

Ich sagte dir vorher, daß Gretchen krank liege; ich hoffe, daß es kein Fieber ist.  
 (Niebuhr.)

Ich fürchte nicht, daß man dies Wort belächeln werde. (v. Treitschke.)



233. OBLIQUE INTERROGATION.—In dependent questions the normal construction is the same as in oblique statements, i.e., the subjunctive mood, generally in the present tense or one of the same group of tenses. It often happens, however, that the attention of the reader is to be fixed chiefly on the question itself, the words on which it depends being little more than parenthetical. In such cases the indicative is used. It is difficult, however, to lay down a precise rule:—

Unentschieden ist es, wo größere Lebensfülle verbreitet sei, ob auf dem Continent oder in dem unergründeten Meere.

(A. v. Humboldt.)

*It is an open question, where life is more abundant, on land or in the unfathomed depths of the sea.*

Ob sich wirklich Gold machen läßt, gilt mir gleich viel.

(Lessing.)

*I do not care whether gold can really be made or not.*

Gelernt haben wir endlich, jeden Mann zu fragen, ob er ein Vaterland habe.

(v. Treitschke.)

*We have at last learnt to ask every man whether he has a country.*

Du weißt so wenig, wer als wo du bist.

(Goe.)

*You know as little who you are as where you are.*

234. REPEATED QUESTIONS.—It often happens that a person, when asked a question, repeats it, before he gives an answer. This is generally done in German by the particle *ob*, unless the first question begins with an interrogative pronoun or adverb. Of course, in that case a principal sentence is suppressed. Thus—

A. Gehen Sie morgen auf's Land?—B. Ob ich morgen auf's Land gehe? versteht sich.

A. *Are you going into the country to-morrow?*—B. *Am I going into the country? of course I am.*

Somewhat similar is the case of an indignant or rhetorical question, in which the thought of the last speaker is taken up:—

Burleigh. Ihr wart mit Babington, dem Hochverräther,  
Und seinen Mordgefelln einverstanden.

Mary. Wann hätte ich das gethan? Man zeige mir  
Die Documente auf. (Sch.)

*When do you say that I was? when can I have been so?*

235. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES IN OBLIQUE ORATION.—In oblique oration, when the principal verb of the oblique statement stands in the subjunctive, the verbs of the dependent clauses are also in the subjunctive, and follow the same rule as to tenses. Examples will be found in § 222. The same principle applies when the principal verb of the oblique part of the sentence is in the infinitive, § 231.

It may happen, however, that the subordinate sentence is only a comment of the narrator. In that case its verb is in the indicative:—

Vor allen Dingen fordert er,  
Daß ihm zu Chatel ausgeliefert werde,  
Den er den Mörder seines Vaters nennt. (Sch.)

236. IMPLIED OBLIQUE ORATION.—Sometimes, instead of a complete sentence in oblique oration, only a subordinate clause appears. Thus the sentence—

Die Athener verurtheilten Sokrates zum Tode, weil er die Jugend verderbe  
differs from—

Die Athener verurtheilten Sokrates zum Tode, weil er die Jugend verlorb.

The latter means that Socrates actually corrupted the youth, and that therefore he was condemned. In the former, we must remember that *verurtheilten* implies, though it does not actually express, a *thought* of the Athenians. It might be paraphrased thus:—“The Athenians thought *that Socrates deserved to die, because he corrupted the youth*, and accordingly condemned him to death.” The words in italics give in oblique oration the thought of the Athenians, and it is for that reason that the subjunctive mood is used, even when part of the thought is suppressed. In translating we should say, “*because, in their opinion, he corrupted the youth.*”

---

### CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

237. DEPENDENT ON *so*, *derart*, &c.—The natural form of a consecutive sentence is that it should begin with *daß*, the previous clause containing a demonstrative adverb like *so*,

derart, or the adjective *ſolch*. In such sentences the indicative is generally used :—

Er hatte ſich bei dem großen Brande im Städtchen derart ausgezeichnet, daß er die Lebensrettungsmedaille erhielt.  
(Auerbach.)

*He had so distinguished himself at the great fire in the village that he received the medal of the Humane Society.*

Es iſt ſo weit gekommen, daß der Kaiſer vor ſeinen eigenen Armeen zittert.  
(Sch.)

*Things have come to such a pass, that the emperor trembles before his own armies.*

238. ELLIPSIS OF *ſo*.—Sometimes the adverb is omitted, so that *daß* by itself must be rendered *so that* :—

Geschrieben ſoll ſie werden, daß ſie vor Gericht für eure Hand gelten kann.  
(Goe.)

*It shall be written, so that it can pass for your handwriting in a court of law.*

Obs. 1. Compare in English, from Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar":—

Have ye not made an universal shout,  
That Tiber trembled underneath her banks?

Obs. 2. Sometimes *daß* with a negative represents the English *without* with a gerundive :—

Kannſt du von allem dieſen etwas brauchen, daß deine Epiſtel kein Buch wird.  
(Goe.)

*If you can use some of this, without your letter becoming a book.*

### 239. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

—When the sentence on which a consecutive clause depends is negative, or virtually negative, the consecutive clause denotes not an actual result, but one that is simply conceived. It is, in fact, conceived merely to be contradicted. In such consecutive clauses the subjunctive, and for the most part the pluperfect subjunctive, is used. In very many of them *daß*

nicht (= *quin*) occurs, and the English rendering is by *but* or *without* :—

Raum verging ein Tag, daß nicht irgend etwas Neues und Unerwartetes angestellt worden wäre. (Goe.)

*Scarcely a day passed, but something or other new and unexpected had been arranged (or without something.....having been arranged.)*

Es fehlte viel, daß die Länder der österreichischen Provinzen rein katholische Länder gewesen wären.

*The territories of the Austrian provinces were far from being purely Catholic.*

In these examples the statements of the subordinate clauses are "something new was not arranged," "the territories were purely Catholic." Both are brought forward merely to be contradicted.

240. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.—It is in this form that the consecutive adjectival sentence with a subjunctive mood appears in German, *i.e.*, after a negative principal sentence, to bring forward a statement only meant to be contradicted.

Wer ist unter uns, der nicht im Laufe eines Jahres hier und da eine Hoffnung bereitet gesehen hätte?

*Who of us is there, but has seen now and then in the course of a year a hope disappointed?*

Seit Roms Untergange ist in Europa kein kultivirtes Reich mehr entstanden, das seine ganze Einrichtung auf Kriege und Eroberungen gebauet hätte.

*Since the fall of Rome no civilised nation has arisen in Europe, which based its whole organisation in wars and conquests.*

241. **Als daß.**—After a principal sentence containing the adverb *zu*, als daß with an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used, especially with the pluperfect of the auxiliary *sollen*.

Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie dauerhaft hätte sein sollen. (Goe.)

*Your reconciliation was rather too speedily to be lasting.*

Der Name Cook ist zu allgemein bekannt, als daß jemand fragen könnte: Wer ist Cook?

*The name of Cook is too well known for any one to ask—"Who is Cook?"*

*Obs. 1.* As in the last two sections the subjunctive clause with *als daß* contains a statement brought forward only to be contradicted.

*Obs. 2.* Notice the close imitation of Latin in the following:—

Der Sänger des Messias hat überflüssige Schönheiten, als daß man ihm welche andichten müßte, die keine sind. (Lessing.)

242. **Ohne daß.**—Sentences beginning with *ohne daß* are really consecutive, the meaning being *in such a way that not*. The subjunctive, especially the pluperfect, is very common in such sentences, but the indicative is also used.

Dies geschah, ohne daß ich dadurch klüger gewesen wäre. (Goe.)

*This happened, without my being any the wiser for it.*

Ein Zweikampf war vorüber, ohne daß ich Etwas davon erfahren hatte. (Goe.)

*A duel was over, without my having heard anything about it.*

243. SUPINE.—The Supine with *um*, which is the natural way of turning *final* sentences, is often used in consecutive sentences, after *genug*, &c., and sometimes after *so*. The subject of the supine must be the same as that of the principal verb. The same remark applies to the supine with *ohne*.

Sie standen in dem verhältnißmäßigen Alter, um dereinst Gatten zu werden. (Goe.)

*There was just the right difference of age between them, for them to be married some day.*

Ich bin nicht tugendhaft genug, um jemals dieser Partei mich anschließen zu können. (Heine.)

*I am not virtuous enough, ever to join this party.*

Deine Leser sind schwerlich in der römischen Geschichte so bewandert, um über den Unterschied zwischen Tribun und Tribüne völlig klar zu sein. (Heyse.)

*Your readers are scarcely sufficiently versed in Roman History to be quite clear as to the difference between the two meanings of the word "tribune."*

## FINAL SENTENCES.

244. ADVERBIAL WITH **damit, daß**.—The normal construction of a final sentence is a subjunctive with the word *damit, in order that*. Its literal meaning, like that of the Latin *quo* (= *ut eo*), is *wherewith* or *that therewith*. *Daß* with a subjunctive is also used, and in older German *auf daß*.

Soll ich den gegenwärtigen Augenblick nicht genießen, damit ich des folgenden gewiß sei? (Goe.)

*Am I to forego the enjoyment of the present moment, in order that I may be certain of the next?*

Bleibt nicht in England, daß der Britte nicht  
Sein stolzes Herz an eurem Unglück weide. (Sch.)

*Stay not in England, lest the Briton gloat his proud heart on your misery.*

Der Tod seines Vaters hatte ihn heimgesufen, damit er das verwaiste  
Geschäft in die Hand nähme. (Heyse.)

*His father's death had called him home to undertake the deserted business.*

Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange  
lebest, und daß dir es wohlgehe in dem Lande, das dir der Herr dein  
Gott geben wird. (Luth. Bib.)

*Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.*

*Obs.* As in oblique oration, the present subjunctive is constantly used in final sentences after a past tense.

Da warf Konradin seinen Handschuh vom Blutgerüste herab, damit er dem Könige  
Peter von Aragonien gebracht werde. (v. Raumer.)

*Thereupon Conradin threw down his glove from the scaffold, in order that it might be conveyed to Peter of Aragon.*

245. INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL FINAL SENTENCES.—When the result is looked upon as practically certain, and not a mere conception, an indicative may be used after *damit* and *daß* final. The tendency to use an indicative, is, naturally enough, gaining ground.

Und daß sein kleines Horn die Nymphen nicht erschreckt  
Er's unter Rosen schlau versteckt. (Wieland.)

*And lest his little horn should terrify the nymphs, he cunningly hides  
it in roses.*

Sehen Sie nicht mit mir, damit sie nicht so deutlich sieht, daß ich Sie  
liebe. (Gellert.)

*Do not go with me, lest she should see too clearly that I love you.*

246. SUPINE.—When the subject of the final sentence is the same as that of the principal sentence, the infinitive with *zu* or *um*.....*zu* (supine) is frequently used.

Was habt ihr denn gethan, um sie zu retten? (Sch.)

*What have you done, then, to save her?*

which might be written damit ihr sie rettet.

Occasionally the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the principal sentence, but is clear from the context:—

Scheint mir die Sonne heute, um das zu überlegen was gestern war.  
(Goethe's Egm.)

*Does the sun shine on me to-day, that I may ponder over what  
happened yesterday?*

247. AUXILIARIES OF MOOD.—Instead of a simple subjunctive, an auxiliary of mood (especially *mögen*) is sometimes used in a final sentence, exactly as we use *may*.

Darum eben bin ich vorangeilt, damit ich euch in Fassung setzen möchte. (Sch.)  
*I hurried on before expressly that I might prepare you for the result.*

Sie entließ ihn gern, damit er für sich sorgen möge. (Goe.)  
*She willingly let him go that he might look after himself.*

248. ADJECTIVAL FINAL SENTENCES.—As in Latin, a relative pronoun with a subjunctive is often used to express a purpose:—

Schickt einen sichern Boten ihm entgegen, der auf geheimem Weg ihn  
zu mir führe. (Sch.)

*Send a trusty messenger to meet him, to bring (who may bring) him  
to me secretly.*

## SENTENCES OF TIME AND PLACE.

249. **Wenn** DISTINGUISHED FROM OTHER WORDS.

— *Als, da*, meaning *when*, are to be distinguished from *wenn*; they can then only refer to single events, mostly in past time; *wenn* may refer to any time, past, present, or future, and means *on any occasion when*. It is often said to express *indefinite frequency*.

Wir fahren zu Berg, wir kehren wieder

Wenn der Kuckuck ruft, wenn erwachen die Lieder. (Sch.)

*We go to the mountain, we come home again when the cuckoo calls, when songs awake.*

Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, da war ein Freuen, wenn er wiederkam. (Sch.)

*Formerly, when the father left home, there was a rejoicing when he came back again.*

*Obs.*—*Wann*, which was formerly used as the correlative of *dann*, and is still sometimes so used in poetry, has, in this sense, given place to *wenn*, and is mostly limited to its interrogative meaning. It is a conjunction of time in the following:—

Wann der Abend

Kühl und labend

Sich auf Thal und Walbung senkt;

.....

Bonnetträumend

Stann' ich säumend

Dann vom Damm die Gegen an. (Salis.)

250. *Als, da*, refer to definite events, *als* in the past only, *da* in the present as well.

Da noch Alles lag in weiter Ferne, da hattest du Entschluß und Muth; und jetzt, da der Erfolg da ist, da fängst du an zu zagen.

(Sch.)

*When everything was far ahead, you had courage and resolution; and now, when success is at hand, you begin to falter.*

251. *Wie*, as a conjunction of time, generally means *as soon as*; sometimes it corresponds almost exactly to the English *as*.



252. **Während, indem.**—Während denotes that an action is going on simultaneously with another; *indem*, though in older German and in poetry used interchangeably with *während*, generally adds to the idea of *while*, the notion of *inasmuch as, by, &c.*

Sie fassen ihren Feind mit Wuth,  
Indem ich nach des Thieres Lende  
Aus starker Faust das Speer versende. (Sch.)

*They grapple their foe furiously, while I with vigorous hand hurl my spear against the monster's loins.*

Wer lernt nicht, indem er lehrte? (Herder.)  
*Who does not learn by teaching?*

*Obs. 1.*—Während daß is often used. Inbeß, inbessen, are conjunctions meaning *while* as well as adverbs meaning *meanwhile*.

*Obs. 2.*—Weil, generally the equivalent of *because*, is also a temporal conjunction meaning *while* :—

Das Eisen muß geschmiedet werden, weil es glüht.  
*Iron must be forged while it is red-hot.*

253. **TENSES WITH seit, seitdem.**—A present with *seit*, *seitdem*, both in the dependent clause and in the clause on which it depends, is rendered in English by a perfect; an imperfect by a pluperfect.

Die Deutschen können erst über Literatur urtheilen, seitdem sie eine eigene Literatur haben.

*It is only since they have possessed a literature of their own, that the Germans have been able to pronounce an opinion on literature.*

Nimmer sang ich freud'ge Lieder  
Seit ich deine Stimme bin. (Sch.)

*Never have I sung joyous songs, since I have been thy mouthpiece.*

254. **SUBJUNCTIVE WITH bis, ehe.**—Bis, bis daß, ehe, occasionally take a subjunctive, when the clause introduced by them refers to a future and uncertain event. The sequence of tenses is in this case observed, an imperfect subjunctive being used after a past tense.

Melde ihm die Nachricht, ehe er sie durch Andere erfahre.  
*Tell him the news, before he hears it from others.*

Doch hoffte man, die Stadt wenigstens noch so lange hinzuhalten, bis man das Getreide würde einerten können. (Sch.)

*But they hoped to hold the town at least until they could get in the harvest.*

But these conjunctions are by far the most frequently used with an indicative. In French the tendency is to put a subjunctive after *jusqu'à ce que* wherever there is any excuse for it; in German it is just the opposite.

*Obs.*—Bis is often, as in the second example above, preceded by so lange.

255. **HARDLY... WHEN; NO SOONER... THAN.**—The English dependent sentence after *hardly, no sooner,* is rendered in German by another principal sentence beginning with so, occasionally da:—

Kaum war der Vater todt, so kommt ein Jeder  
Mit seinem Ring. (Lessing.)

*No sooner was the father dead, than each of them came with his ring.*

Sometimes so is omitted, and in excited passages, the order is unaffected:

Doch dem war kaum das Wort entfahren,  
Möcht' er's im Busen gern bewahren. (Sch.)

*Yet scarce had the word escaped his lips, than he would gladly have recalled it.*

Kaum ist ein großes Werk gethan,  
Ein neues ist schon ausgedacht. (Goethe.)

*No sooner is a great work done, than a new one is thought out.*

Sometimes the second clause is connected to that containing kaum by the conjunctive und.

256. **ONLY WHEN** is rendered either by nicht eher als bis or by erst als:—

Man erkannte sie nicht eher als bis sie ganz nahe herangetreten waren, or—Man erkannte sie erst als sie.....waren.

*They were only recognised when they came quite near.*

257. **ADJECTIVAL WHEN, WITH ANTECEDENT.**—If *when* has an antecedent, it is generally rendered by wo, sometimes by da:—

Es giebt im Menschenleben Augenblicke, wo er dem Weltgeist näher ist als sonst. (Sch.)

*There are moments in men's life, when he is nearer to the spirit of the universe than at ordinary times.*

Erinn're mich nicht jener schönen Tage, da mit dein Haus die freie Stätte gab. (Goe.)

*Do not remind me of those bright days when your house gave me free entertainment.*

258. WHEREVER, WHENEVER. — Wo auch (immer), wohin auch (immer), *wherever, whithersoever*, are sometimes followed by a subjunctive, oftener by the indicative of mögen or können:—

Es ist brav und löblich, einen Bösewicht, wo er auch stehe, anzugreifen. (Sch.)

*It is good and praiseworthy to attack a villain fearlessly, wherever he may be placed.*

*Whenever* is generally rendered by so oft als; *wherever*, when definite, by überall wo.

259. WHEN RENDERED BY **worauf**. — *When*, in the latter part of an English sentence, is often equivalent to *and thereupon*. It is then rendered by **worauf**.

---

### CAUSAL SENTENCES.

260. INDICATIVE USED. — The causal conjunctions *weil*, *da*, and *nun* when used, as it is occasionally is, as a conjunction, are followed by an indicative.

*Obs.* Occasionally *davon daß*, *daran daß*, *daraus daß* are practically equivalent to *because*, as

Einer stirbt nicht davon, daß er einen Tag fastet.

*A man does not die, because he fasts for a day.*

Ich erkannte ihn daran, daß er stammelte.

*I recognised him by his stammering.*

The difference between *weil* and *da* is this: *weil* gives the real cause of an action or fact (*Seinsgrund*), *da* the ground of an inference, the reason why we make the statement (*Erkenntnisgrund*). The one gives the real, the other the logical

ground. If correlative adverbs are used in the principal sentence, *darum*, *deswegen*, &c., correspond to *weil*, *folglich*, *also*, *so*, &c. to *da*. Compare:—

Da das Holz im Wasser schwimmt, so ist es leichter, als das Wasser (where *because wood swims in water* is not the reason why it is lighter than water, but the reason why we think so) with

Das Holz schwimmt im Wasser, weil es leichter als das Wasser ist (where *because it is lighter than water* is the real reason of its swimming).

Hence the use of *da* is very common when the principal clause does not merely state a fact, but at the same time implies an inference:—

Das Unternehmen war desto leichter, da Sachsen von Vertheidigern entblößt war. (Sch.)

*The undertaking was all the easier, as Saxony was entirely denuded of troops.*

Where not only the actual easiness of the undertaking, but the conclusion of some persons concerned that it was easier is suggested.

Thus *da* is very often used when the principal clause contains a question.

Warum noch länger abgesondert leben, da wir vereinigt Jeder reicher werden. (Sch.)

*Why live apart any longer, when union makes each of us richer.*

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

261. PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. — The statement made subject to a condition, in other words the principal sentence containing the conclusion, is called the *apodosis*, the adverbial sentence in which the condition is contained is called the *protasis* or *hypothetical sentence*. Thus in the proverb—

If wishes were horses, beggars would ride,

“Beggars would ride” is the *apodosis*, “if wishes were horses” the *protasis*.

The normal form of introducing a condition is by *wenn*—other forms will be discussed in § 265.

262. THREE FORMS.—There are two obvious forms which a conditional sentence may assume. (1) Both condition and conclusion may be real, as in the sentence—

If I receive anything, I will give it you,

where the speaker admits freely that he may receive something, and accordingly holds out a hope of giving something.

(2.) The condition and conclusion may be unreal, as in

If I had received anything, I would have given it you,

where the sole object of the speaker is to say what would have happened under supposed circumstances.

Between these two cases we have a case which is more marked in classical languages, but is still to be noticed in German, viz. (3) when the condition (and therefore the conclusion) is possible though improbable, as—

If I were to receive something, I would give it you,  
Should I receive anything, I would give it you,

where the speaker thinks he may receive something, but is doubtful about it.

263. CONDITION AND CONCLUSION REAL.—The indicative is used, and the tense is the same in both parts, except that, when future time is referred, a present is preferred to a future in the conditional clause.

Wenn euer Gewissen rein ist, so seid ihr frei. (Goe.)  
*If your conscience is clear, you are free.*

Warum duldete sie die Annäherung eines Fremden, wenn sie ihm keine Hoffnung zu machen hatte? (Heyse.)  
*Why did she permit the advance of a stranger, if she had no hope to offer him?*

264. CONDITION AND CONCLUSION UNREAL.—The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive (occasionally the conditional) is used in the protasis, the present or past conditional, or the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis.

Mancher wäre kein Bösewicht geworden, wenn man ihn nicht dafür gehalten hätte.  
*Many a man would never have become a reprobate, if he had been thought to be one.*

Zufrieden wäre ich, wenn mein Volk mich rühmte. (Goe.)  
*I should be contented, if my people praised me.*

265. POSSIBLE BUT NOT PROBABLE.—There is no distinct form as in Latin and Greek, but the impossibility expressed by the imperfect subjunctive is often softened down by using *solte*.

Ich bin ein verlorenes Waisenkind, und wenn ich auch einen Vater haben sollte, mich verlangt nicht vor sein Angesicht zu treten.  
(Heyse.)

*I am a desolate orphan, and if I still should have a father I have no desire to see his face.*

Ich höre Schritte draußen, sagte sie. Wenn es der Walter sein sollte, laßt die Nacht darüber nicht vergehen. (Heyse.)

*I hear footsteps outside, said she. If it should be Walter, do not let the night pass without speaking.*

266. OTHER CONJUNCTIONS MEANING IF.—Falls *in case*, wofern *literally in so far as*, are sometimes used instead of wenn, and with the same construction. Wo is chiefly used in the phrase *wo möglich, if possible*.

Denn Sicherheit ist nicht für euch, wofern

Der Landvogt lebend diesem Sturm entkommt. (Sch.)

*For safety is not for you, if but the governor escape this storm alive.*

Manches könnten sie thun, wofern sie es heimlich vollbrächten. (Goe.)  
*Many things they could do, did they but perform them secretly.*

Sie werden mich retten, und wo ich ohne Rettung verloren bin, theilnehmend um mich weinen. (Sch.)

*They will save me, and if I am irretrievably lost, they will weep compassionately for me.*

*Obs.* So, which stands regularly at the head of the apodosis, is occasionally used in the protasis, and then like other words, meaning *if*, throws the verb to the end.

267. ELLIPSIS OF IF.—The conjunction wenn is frequently omitted, and the protasis is then arranged like an interrogative sentence, which it really is; that is, the finite verb first, then the subject, and so on.

Willst du dich selber erkennen, so sieh, wie die Andern es treiben,

Willst du die Andern verstehen, blick' in dein eignes Herz. (Sch.)

*If you wish to know yourself, see how others act; if you wish to understand others, look into your own heart.*

Ach wüßtest du, wie's Fischlein ist  
 So wohligh auf dem Grund,  
 Du stiegst hinunter, wie du bist  
 Und würdest erst gesund. (Goe.)

*Ah! did you but know how happy little fishes are down here, you would come down to us without more ado, and then indeed be cured.*

268. CONDITION IN ANOTHER FORM.—It often happens that the protasis of a conditional sentence is not put in the shape of a subordinate, but implied by some words in the principal sentence.

Nicht um dies ganze, reiche Eiland, nicht  
 Um alle Länder, die das Meer umfaßt,  
 Möcht' ich vor euch so steh'n, wie ihr vor mir. (Sch.)

*Not for all this wealthy island, no, not for all the lands that the ocean encompassed, would I stand before you as you stand before me.*

Were the condition embodied in a clause, it would be

Wenn man mir dies...gäbe.

Ich hätte gern nur immer fortgewacht,  
 Um so gelehrt mit euch mich zu besprechen. (Goe.)

*Gladly would I have watched yet longer, to enjoy such learned conversation with you.*

So in English—

*I would outstare the sternest eyes that look  
 To win thee, lady;*

i. e. *if I might thereby win thee.*

269. MODEST STATEMENT.—Hence the conditional tense, or imperfect subjunctive is used, as in English, for making a statement modestly; some such protasis as, *if you would allow me to say so*, being understood.

Von den Menschen wüßte ich nur wenigß und wenig Erfreulichß zu sagen. (Goe.)

*Of the men I could not say much, nor would that be very satisfactory.*

270. APODOSIS IN ANOTHER FORM.—Sometimes the apodosis assumes a different form.

Der König schwört, die hinterlist'ge That  
Und wär' es auch an seinem eig'nen Sohn  
Auf's schrecklichste zu ahnden. (Sch.)

*The king swears that he will punish the trick most terribly, even were his own son the culprit,*

where zu ahnden implies, daß er ahnden werde. Notice further the ellipsis after und.

271. INCONSISTENCY OF TENSES.—The following example illustrates an idiom found in most languages—

Und käm' die Hölle selber in die Schranken  
Mir soll der Muth nicht weichen und nicht wanken. (Sch.)  
*And though hell itself should enter the lists, my spirit shall not falter.*

Instead of an imperfect subjunctive or a conditional in the apodosis to correspond to that in the protasis, instead, in fact, of saying *my courage would not yield*, he says *my courage shall not yield*. The explanation is easy. The writer having made the assumption that hell would appear in the lists against him, and having put that impossible supposition in the imperfect subjunctive, as grammar requires, is so struck with the vividness of the picture he has called up, that he goes on as if it were real, and concludes his sentence as if he had said "If hell appears in the lists against me."

So in English—

*I'll speak to it though hell itself should gape.*

And in Latin—

Me truncus illapsus cerebro  
Sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum  
Dextra levasset.

And in French—

S'il épousait la fille du duc de Bourgogne, il réunissait tot ou tard en un royaume gigantesque l'Aquitanie et les Pays-Bas, entre lesquels Louis XI périssait étouffé. (Michelet.)

On croyait surprendre et conquérir Dôle; elle prise, la province eut suivie; la Meilleraie revenait couvert de gloire, le premier général du siècle. (Ibid.)



Mr. Farrar (p. 150) remarks: "these occasional irregularities are due to the triumph of the dramatic tendency over formal grammar."

272. **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE ADJECTIVAL.**— Sometimes a relative pronoun practically introduces a condition; in that case the construction of the sentence is the same as if the construction were present.

Sie hätte jeden Mann täuschen müssen, dem sie angehören gelobt hätte.  
(Heyse.)

*She must have deceived any man, had she promised him her affection.*

This might however be classed with consecutive sentences.

273. **CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.**—A concessive sentence is really a conditional sentence with some word like *even* inserted. Accordingly in German such sentences are introduced by *wenn auch*, *wenn schon*, *wenn gleich* or by compounds of *ob*, *obgleich*, *obschon*, *obwohl*.—If a compound of *wenn* be used, the moods and tenses follow the rules given above. As, however, the condition brought forward is generally a real one, the indicative is more common than the subjunctive in concessive sentences.

The apodosis is introduced by *so*, *doch*, *dennoch*.

Wenn er es auch nicht war, der die Sachsen nach Prag lockte, so war es doch sein Betragen, was ihnen die Einnahme dieser Stadt erleichterte.  
(Sch.)

*Though it was not he who invited the Saxons to Prague, yet it was his conduct which facilitated the occupation of that town.*

Wir fürchten uns nicht, wenn gleich die Welt unterginge, und die Berge mitten in's Meer fielen.  
(Luther's Bible.)

274. **COMPOUNDS OF *ob*.**—The condition introduced by *obgleich*, &c., being always a real one, these conjunctions are nearly always followed by an indicative.

Obgleich man dem Feinde nur eine geringe Macht entgegenzusetzen hatte, so konnte man doch hoffen, sich behaupten zu können.

*Though they had only a small force to oppose to the enemy, yet they might hope to maintain their position.*

Ob sie den Menschen gleich wunderbarlich vorkam, so war Niemand aufmerksam oder klug genug, die innere wahre Ursache zu entdecken.  
(Goe.)

*Though she seemed strange to people, no one was shrewd enough or observant enough to discover the real reason.*

Obs. 1. Notice of . . . gleich separated.

Obs. 2. Ob without schon, gleich is sometimes used in the sense of *although*.

Ob alles in ewigem Wechsel kreift  
Es beharre im Wechsel ein ruhiger Geist.

Obs. 3. Occasionally a subjunctive present (not an imperfect) is found with ob auch, &c.

Ob auch die Lebensbahn  
Im Nebelmeer verschwinde,  
Gesichert leitet uns  
Das Wort der innern Stimme.

*Though the path of life should be lost . . . (and it may very likely be lost).*

275. OMISSION OF **ob** AND **wenn**.—As in conditional sentences, the conjunction is often omitted in the protasis. In this case auch, gleich, &c., are often retained, and only ob, wenn, &c., dropt.

Two forms may be used:—

(1.) The order and moods of an interrogative sentence:—

Sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand,  
Sie sind in unsern Herzen eingeschrieben. (Sch.)

*Even though the old books are not to be found, they are written in our hearts.*

Doch, hätte auch gleich ein Zufall der Natur  
Sie weggerafft—wir hießen doch die Mörder.

*Yet, though some natural cause had carried her away, we should be called her murderers.*

(2.) The order and form may be that of an imperative sentence, with a present subjunctive or mögen:—

Der Mensch erfährt, er sei auch, wer er mag,  
Ein letztes Glück und einen letzten Tag. (Goe.)  
*To man comes, be he who he may, his last success and his  
last day.*

So wie die Tiefe des Meeres allezeit ruhig bleibt, die Oberfläche  
mag auch noch so wüthen. (Winckelmann.)  
*As the depths of the sea always remain at rest, though the  
surface be ever so ruffled.*

276. *Es sei denn, daß . . . , only grant that . . . ,* may often be rendered  
by *unless indeed.*

Ich sehe nicht, welchen Nachtheil es der folgenden bringen könnte, wenn uns der  
vorhergehende noch so gerührt hätte. *Es sei denn, daß die folgende an sich  
selbst nicht rührend genug wäre.* (Lessing.)

*I do not see what harm it could do to the second description, had the first  
moved us ever so strongly, unless indeed the second is not in itself  
sufficiently moving.*

Der, was er rettete . . . . . weiter  
Auch nicht zu sehn verlangt', es wäre denn,  
Daß er zum zweitemal es retten sollte. (Lessing.)

*Who did not ask even to see again her whom he had saved, except indeed it  
should be his fate to save her a second time.*

277. ADJECTIVAL FORM.—Concessive sentences are  
often introduced by the interrogatives *wer, welcher*, or by in-  
terrogative adverbs, *wo* and its compounds, *wie*, &c., with *auch*  
attached. Some sentences in English may begin either with  
*however* or *whoever*, &c., or with *though . . . ever so*, &c.

The same principles apply to the words in such sentences  
as to the moods in ordinary concessive sentences. An indi-  
cative is used if the statement of the dependent clause is  
intended to be accepted as a fact, a present subjunctive or  
mögen in other cases.

Wie weit er auch die Stimme schallt,  
Nichts Lebendes wird hier erblickt. (Sch.)  
*However far he sends his voice, nothing loving is seen here.*

Was es auch sei, dein Leben sichr' ich dir. (Sch.)  
*Whatever it be, I promise you your life.*

Was er auch Schwers mag verschuldet haben,  
 Strafe genug ist sein entsetzlich Handwerk. (Sch. Tell.)  
*However grave the crime he has committed, his own terrible handi-  
 craft is punishment enough for him.*

Sometimes such sentences begin with so :—

So große Erwartungen auch ganz Europa jetzt hegte, so ging doch  
 alles ganz anders. (Archenholz.)  
*Great as were the expectations that all Europe now cherished,  
 everything went quite differently.*

278. **WHETHER ... OR.**—It is important to distinguish two cases of the English word *whether*, (1) in the sentence—

I will ask whether he likes it or not,

*whether* is an interrogative adverb to be rendered by *ob*; (2) in the sentence—

Whether he likes it or not, he must do it,

*whether* introduces a conditional or concessive clause.

In case (2), there is no German equivalent for *whether*, unless *wenn* be used. It is more common to put the conditional clause in the form of an imperative or one of the substitutes for it.

Nicht wahr — dem Wesen, das  
 Dich rettete — es sei ein Engel oder  
 Ein Mensch — dem möchtet ihr, und du besonders,  
 Gern wieder viele große Dienste thun ?

*Would you not gladly.....whether he be an angel or a man ?*

### COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

279. **Als, wie.**—The commonest form of comparative sentence is introduced by *als* after a comparative, *wie* after *so*, *ebenso*, expressed or understood.

Ich singe, wie der Vogel singt. (Goe.)  
*I sing as the bird sings.*

Sein Glück war größer als man berechnet hatte. (Sch.)  
*His success was greater than had been calculated.*

Obs. Je nachdem means *in proportion as, according as.*

280. SENTENCES BEGINNING WITH *so*.—Both principal and dependent sentences often begin with *so*, qualifying an adjective or an adverb. The *so* of the dependent clause is rendered by *as*, and influences the order like a relative adverb. The *so* of the principal clause is a demonstrative adverb.

Though such sentences can be rendered literally in English, it is only by a free translation that their real force can generally be given:—

So hoch er stand, so tief und schmähtich sei sein Fall. (Sch.)  
*Once he stood high; let his fall be all the greater and more shameful.*

where a literal rendering (“let his fall be as great as he stood high”) would be out of the question.

So sehr Aristoteles die Einrichtung von Carthago in politischer Rücksicht rühmt, so wenig Werth hat sie für die Geschichte der Menschheit. (Herder.)

*Though Aristotle praises very highly the organisation of Carthage from a political point of view, yet it has played but an insignificant part in the history of the world.*

281. THE...THE, BEFORE COMPARATIVES.—These words which, in English, are of course not the article, but a case of a demonstrative pronoun, are rendered in German by *je ... desto, je ... je, or je ... um so*.

Je mehr der Vorrath schmolz, desto schrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. (Sch.)  
*The more the provisions melted away, the more terribly did the famine increase.*

282. AS IF is rendered in German by *als wenn, als ob*. But perhaps the commonest idiom is to use the elliptical form

of the conditional sentence, arranged like an interrogative sentence :—

Thut, als wenn Ihr zu Hause wäret. (Goe.)  
*Do as if you were at home.*

Mit sinnendem Haupt saß der Kaiser da,  
 Als gedächt' er vergangener Zeit. (Sch.)  
*Pensively sat the emperor there, as though he were thinking of  
 bygone days.*

The real construction is—

Als er sitzen würde, gedächt' er....

---

## APPENDIX I.

## GOVERNMENT OF SOME VERBS.

Only verbs presenting some difficulty to an Englishman are given here. The numbers refer to the sections of the Syntax:—

abrathen	dissuade	einem etwas	61
abtreten <sup>1</sup>	resign	einem etwas	61
abnehmen	take away	einem etwas	72
achten	heed	(1) gen.; (2) auf, acc.	94, 106 (5)
	consider as	einen für	20
	esteem	acc.	46
ahben	avenge, punish	etwas an einem	105 (5)
ahnen (imp.)	forbode	dat. (acc. old)	53
anbeten	adore	acc.	46
anfallen	attack	acc.	46
anfanger	begin	(1) acc.; (2) mit	46, 121
ansehen	beseech	einen um	130 (3)
angehen	accost, affect	acc.	46
angrenzen	be adjacent	an, with acc.	
angreifen	attack	acc.	46
anhaben <sup>2</sup>	gain advantage	einem etwas	70
anhalten	train, encourage	einen zu	
	sue for	um	130 (3)
anhängen <sup>3</sup>	attach, impute	einem etwas	61
anfragen <sup>4</sup>	accuse	acc. and gen.	96
ankommen (imp.)	come over <sup>5</sup>	acc. or dat.	
	depend on <sup>6</sup>	auf, acc.	106 (2)
	emile on	acc.	
anlächeln	importune <sup>7</sup>	dat.	70
anliegen	arrogate to oneself	(1) gen., sich being acc.;	95
annaßen (sich)		(2) acc., sich being dat.	46
annehmen (sich)	interest oneself in	gen.	94
anrathen	advise	einem etwas	61
anreden	address	acc.	46
anschließen	attach	einen an with acc.	105

<sup>1</sup> Literally *kick from one, not step away from.*

<sup>2</sup> In phrases like *ihf werdet ihm nichts anhaben, you won't get the better of him.*

<sup>3</sup> *Er hat mir eins angehängt, he has played me a trick.*

<sup>4</sup> Notice auf Leib und Leben anfragen.

<sup>5</sup> *Es kam mir eine Furcht an; es kommt mich eine Lust an zu spielen.*

<sup>6</sup> *Es kommt viel auf das Glück an.*

<sup>7</sup> Literally *lie against, stick to.*

anfehen	look on aa	einen für	20
ansprechen	ask in	einem etwas	70
anfehen	ask for	einen um	130 (3)
antreiben	anit, become	dat.	63, 70
ärgern (fich)	incite	einen zu	
	be vexed	(1) über with acc. ;	111 (5)
		(2) an with dat.	105 (5)
auflegen	impose on	einem etwas	70
bangen (imp.)	tremble	einem vor with dat.	69, 112 (4)
bedenken (fich)	bethink oneself	gen.	95
	reflect	über with acc.	110 (5)
bedienen	aerve	acc.	48
bedienen (fich)	avail oneself of	gen.	91
bedrohen	threaten	einen mit	48
bedürfen	need	gen. aometimes acc.	92
befehlen	command	(1) dat. ;	63
		(2) einem etwas	61
befleißigen or } (fich)	devote oneself to {	gen., rarely auf with	} 95
befleißigen }		acc.	
befreien	deliver	einen von	
begeben <sup>1</sup> (fich)	reign	gen.	93
begegnen	meet	dat.	64
begehren	desire, demand	gen. or acc.	95
beharren	persevere	bei with dat., auf with	48
behagen	suit	dat. [dat.]	48, 63
beibringen	apply, inculcate	einem etwas	70
befommen	get	acc.	48
	suit	dat.	63
belieben <sup>2</sup> (intr.)	please	dat.	63
belehren	instruct in	acc. person, gen. or	51
bemächtigen (fich)	make oneself master	gen. [von thing]	95
bemeiftern (fich)	ditto. [of]	gen.	95
bemühen (fich)	trouble oneself	um	130 (3)
beneiden	envy	einem etwas <sup>3</sup>	48, 61
berauben	rob	(1) acc. and gen. ;	93
		(2) einem etwas	73
bergen	hide	einen vor with dat.	112 (4)
berufen (fich)	appeal	auf with acc.	106 (5)
beſcheiben (fich)	acquieace in	gen.	95
beſchuldigen	accuse	acc. and gen.	96
beſchweren (fich)	complain	über with acc.	110 (5)
beſinnen (fich)	bethink oneself	gen. (aometimes auf)	95
beſtehen	consist	auf	114 (3)
	insist	auf with acc.	106 (5)
bewahren	protect	einen vor with dat.	112 (4)
bitten <sup>4</sup>	ask	einen um	130 (3)

<sup>1</sup> Literally *betake oneself from*; the verb is used in other ways: *fich auf die Kirche begeben*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Also a personal verb: *to like, approve*.

<sup>3</sup> But if the person only or the thing only is expressed, it is put in the accusative.

<sup>4</sup> Also *tas bitt' ich dich*, when the thing is expressed by a neuter pronoun.



brauchen	need, use	acc., sometimes gen.	92
bauern (imp.)	grieve	acc.	53
denken <sup>1</sup>	think	(1) gen. ; (2) an, dat. ; (3) auf, acc. ; (4) über	95, 105 106, 110
bünnen (imp.)	seem	acc. or dat. [acc.	53, 69
bürsten (imp.)	thirst	einen nach	53
einflößen	inspire	einem etwas	70
eingeben	inspire	einem etwas	70
einbilden (sich)	imagine	mir etwas <sup>2</sup>	70
efeln (imp.)	taedet	einem vor <sup>2</sup>	69
entäußern (sich)	renounce	gen.	93
entbehren	do without	acc. (formerly gen.)	46
entbinden	release, deliver	acc. and gen. or von	93
entblößen	strip	acc. and gen. or von	93
entbrechen (sich)	abstain from	gen.	93
entfallen	escape	dat.	72
entgelten <sup>3</sup>	pay the penalty of	acc. (formerly gen.)	
enthalten (sich)	abstain from	gen. or von	93
enthalten <sup>4</sup>	release	acc. and gen.	93
entladen	unburden	acc. and gen. or von	93
entlassen	dismiss, release	acc. and gen.	93
entleiben	release	acc. and gen. or von	93
entratzen	do without	gen. or acc.	93
entrüsten (sich)	get angry	über acc.	110 (5)
entschlagen (sich)	renounce, get rid of	gen.	93
entsetzen	deprive	acc. and gen.	93
entfinnen (sich)	remember	gen.	95
entwöhnen	disaccustom	acc. and gen. or von	93
entziehen	take away	acc. and dat.	72
erbarmen (sich)	take pity on	gen. or über acc.	94, 110 (5)
erbofen (sich)	get angry	über acc.	110 (5)
erfrechen (sich) <sup>5</sup>	dare	gen.	95
erfreuen (sich)	take pleasure in	gen. or an dat.	94
erinnern <sup>6</sup>	remind	acc. and gen. or an with acc.	96, 105 (5)
erföhnen (sich) <sup>5</sup>	dare	gen., sometimes acc. or zu	95
erlassen	remit, excuse	einem etwas or acc. and gen.	61
erledigen	release	acc. and gen. or von	93
erliegen	succumb	dat.	63

<sup>1</sup> (1) (2) call to mind, remember ; (3) excogitate, devise ; (4) was denken Sie darüber ?

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes an acc. of the person, sometimes a gen. of the thing is found.

<sup>3</sup> Sometimes takes an ethic dative as well : er soll es mir entgelten.

<sup>4</sup> Also with acc. of thing, dative of person.

<sup>5</sup> Be bold enough to commit, eines Frevels, &c.

<sup>6</sup> As a reflexive verb it generally has the reflexive pronoun in the accusative, occasionally in the dative. In the latter case the thing remembered is in the accusative.

erlöfen	redeem	acc. and von	93
ermangeln <sup>1</sup>	want	gen.	92
	be wanting	dat.	62
ernennen <sup>2</sup>	appoint	acc. and zu	22
erschrecken	be frightened	vor dat. or über acc., formerly gen.	93, 110 (5) 112 (4)
erstaunen	be astonished	über acc.	110 (5)
erwähnen	mention	gen.	95
erwehren (sich) <sup>3</sup>	abstain from	gen.	93
fehlen	miss, not hit	acc., sometimes gen.	
	be wanting to	dat. <sup>4</sup>	62
fänden (sich)	adapt oneself to	in with acc.	108 (2)
flehen	pray	zu, formerly dat. only	126 (3)
	ask, entreat	einen um	130 (3)
fliehen	run away	vor dat.	93
fluchen <sup>5</sup>	curse	dat., sometimes auf	63
folgen <sup>6</sup>	follow	dat. [with acc.]	64
freuen (sich)	take pleasure	gen. or an dat.; über, acc.; auf, acc.; zu	94, 110 (5)
freuen (imp.)	be pleased	acc.	53
frieren (imp.)	be cold	acc.	53
fröhnen	serve	dat.	62
frommen	profit, avail	dat.	63
fürchten (sich)	fear	vor with dat.	110 (5)
gebieten	command, rule	dat. or über with acc.	63, 110 (6)
gebrecben (imp.)	be wanting	mir an Rath (dat.)	62
gebühren	be due	dat.	62
gedenken	mention	gen., sometimes acc.	95
gefallen	please	dat.	63
gehörchen	obey	dat.	63
gehören <sup>7</sup>	belong	dat. or zu	62
geizen	be sparing	mit	121 (3)
gelangen	arrive	zu	
gelingen (imp.)	succeed	dat.	68
gelten	pass as	für acc.	20
(imp.) <sup>8</sup>	concern, be worth	acc.	53
gelüsten (imp.)	desire	einen nach	53
gemähen	remind	acc. and gen. or an acc.	96, 105 (5)
gemessen	enjoy	gen. or acc.	94
gereichen <sup>9</sup>	tend, redound	einem zu	62
gereuen (imp.)	repent	acc. and gen.	53, 94

<sup>1</sup> Also used impersonally with an.

<sup>2</sup> Einen zum Richter, &c., ernennen.

<sup>3</sup> Also occasionally mir etwas erwehren.

<sup>4</sup> If used impersonally, es fehlt mir an der Zeit.

<sup>5</sup> A genitive is occasionally found with fluchen.

<sup>6</sup> Gefolgt von is used in the passive.

<sup>7</sup> With dative, belong, with zu form a part of, was gehört zu meinem Gute.

<sup>8</sup> Also unter ein Gericht, in ein Amt, &c.

<sup>9</sup> Es gilt sein Leben, his life is at stake.

<sup>9</sup> Das gereicht ihm zu Ehre.

gewahren	become aware of	gen. or acc.	91
gewöhnen	accustom	einen an with acc.	105 (5)
glauben	believe	(1) dat. of person	63
		(2) acc. es, daß	
		(3) an with acc. <sup>1</sup>	105 (5)
gleichen	resemble	dat., also an with dat.	60
		(in respect of)	105 (4)
grauen (imp.)	shudder	einem <sup>2</sup> vor with dat.	69
halten	consider as	einen für	22
	lay stress on	auf acc.	106
	cling to	an dat.	105
harren	await	gen. or auf with acc.	95
heißen	bid	acc.	
	be called	same case as subject	19
helfen	help	dat. <sup>3</sup>	63
hinreichen	suffice	zu	
hinterhalten	withhold	einem etwas	73
hoffen <sup>4</sup>	hope	acc. or auf with acc.	106 (5)
hören	hear	acc.	
	listen to	auf acc.	106 (5)
huldigen	do homage to	dat.	63
hungern (imp.)	hunger	acc.	53
klagen	complain	über acc.	110 (5)
kosten	cost	acc. of price, dat. or acc. of person	45 65
lachen	laugh at	gen. or über acc.	93, 110 (5)
	smile on, please <sup>5</sup>	dat.	65
lächeln	smile on, please	dat.	65
leben	live on	gen. or von	88
lehren	teach	two acc.	51
losprechen	release, absolve	von or gen.	96
lüssen (imp.)	desire	einen nach	53
machen	make	einen zu	22
mahnern	remind	einen an dat. or acc.	105
mangeln	be without	gen.	92
mangeln (imp.)	be wanting	dat. of person, an with dat. of thing	62, 105
mißfallen	displease	dat.	63
mißgücken (imp.)	fail	dat.	68
mißlingen (imp.)	fail	dat.	68
mißtrauen	distrust	dat.	63
nachahmen <sup>6</sup>	imitate	dat. or acc.	70

<sup>1</sup> In Gespenster, an Wunder glauben, to believe in ghosts, miracles, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes acc. of the person.

<sup>3</sup> Acc. rare.

<sup>4</sup> Formerly took genitive; auf is used both with persons and things, the simple acc. of things only.

<sup>5</sup> *Ille terrarum mihi præter omnes angulus ridet.*

<sup>6</sup> If both person and thing are expressed, the person is in the dative, and the thing in the accusative.

nachdenken	follow in thought	dat.	70
nachmachen	reflect on imitate	über acc. dat. of person, acc. of thing	110 (5) 70
nachsehen	overlook	dat. of person, acc. of thing	70
nachsehen	be inferior to	dat.	70
nahe	bring near	acc. and dat.	60
nehmen	take away	einem etwas	73
nützen <sup>1</sup>	be useful	einem zu	65
obliegen	be incumbent on	dat.	70
pflegen <sup>2</sup>	take care of, de- vote oneself to	gen. or acc.	94
rächen (sich)	avenge oneself	an dat.	105 (5)
rathen	advice	acc. of thing, dat. of person	61
rufen	summon	acc.	89
	call to	dat.	65
schaden	injure	dat.	63
schämen (sich)	be ashamed	gen. or über acc.	94, 110 (5)
schalten	dispose of	über with acc.	110 (6)
schelten	rail	über acc.	110 (5)
	call derisively	two acc.	22
schauen	shrink	vor dat.	112 (4)
schmeicheln	flatter	dat.	63
schonen	spare	gen.	93
sehnen (sich)	long	nach	122 (2)
sinnen	think	auf acc.	106
sparen	spare	acc., formerly gen.	
spielen	play	um	131
steuern	steer	acc.	
	stem, resist	dat.	63
streiten	fight	um	131
streben	strive	nach	122 (2)
theilnehmen	participate	an with dat.	91
trachten	aim	nach	122
trauen	trust	dat.	63
träumen (imp.)	dream	einem von	69
trogen	(1) defy (2) presume upon	dat.	63
überführen	convict	auf with acc.	106 (5)
überheben	relieve from	acc. and gen.	96
überheben (sich)	presume on	acc. and gen.	93
übertreffen	surpass	gen.	94
überzeugen	convince	einen an with dat.	105 (4)
unterfangen (sich)	undertake <sup>4</sup>	acc. and gen. <sup>3</sup> gen.	93 95

<sup>1</sup> Also with acc.<sup>2</sup> Notice Rathe pflegen, ter Bollust pflegen, &c.<sup>3</sup> Also takes von.<sup>4</sup> Generally something presumptuous.

unterliegen	succumb	dat.	63
unterwerben (ſich)	undertake	gen.	94
verargen		einem etwas	61
verbieten	forbid	einem etwas	73
vergeſſen	forget	gen. or acc.	95
verlaſſen (ſich)	rely on	auf, with acc.	106 (5)
vermeſſen (ſich)	presume to	gen.	95
verſehen	provide	einen mit	
verſehen (ſich)	expect	gen. or acc. <sup>1</sup>	95
verſichern (ſich)	make sure of	gen.	97
vertrauen	entrust, trust	einem etwas, or dat. only	61, 63
vertröſten	console with the hope of	acc. and gen. or auf with acc.	96 106 (5)
verweiſen	banish <sup>2</sup>	acc. and gen.	93
verwundern (ſich)	wonder	gen. or über with acc.	94, 110 (5)
verzichten	renounce	auf with acc.	106 (5)
verzweifeln	despair	an with dat.	105 (5)
wählen	choose	einen zu	22
wahren	guard	acc., sometimes gen.	94
wahrnehmen	observe	acc., sometimes gen.	94
walten	exercise authority	gen., or über with acc.	97, 110 (6)
warten	(1) attend to; (2) wait for	gen. or acc.	94
wehren	stem, resist	gen., or auf with acc.	95, 106 (5)
wehren (ſich)	abstain from	dat.	63
weichen	yield	gen.	93
weigern (ſich)	refuse to adopt	dat.	63
weismachen	persuade of <sup>3</sup>	gen.	93
werden	become	acc. of thing, acc. or dat. of person same case as subject, or zu	20
werden (imp.)	begin to feel	dat.	68
widerfahren	befall	dat.	62, 70
widerſprechen	contradict	dat.	63, 70
widerſtehen	resist	dat.	63, 70
willfahren	oblige	dat.	63
würdigen	deem worthy of	acc. and gen.	97
zählen	reckon	auf, with acc.	106 (5)
zählen	accuse	acc. and gen.	96
ziemen	beſit	dat.	63
zuſehen	look at	dat.	70
zuſprechen	promise, award	acc. and dat.	70
zürnen	be angry with	dat.	63

<sup>1</sup> If the thing expected is in the acc., ſich is in the dative; if in the genitive, ſich is the accusative.

<sup>2</sup> Generally with *bes & antes*.

<sup>3</sup> With the idea of imposing upon.

## APPENDIX II.

## GOVERNMENT OF SOME ADJECTIVES.

abheld	unpropitious	dat.	71
abtrünnig	disloyal	dat.	71
ähnlich	similar	an or in with dat. <sup>1</sup>	105 (4)
angeboren	innate	dat.	
angenehm	agreeable	dat.	71
ansichtig	in sight of	gen. <sup>2</sup>	97
anstoßig	offensive	dat.	71
arm	poor	an with dat.	105 (4)
bang	afraid	von	112 (4)
bedürftig	in need of	gen.	92
begierig	greedy	gen. or auf with acc. or nach	97, 106 (5) 122 (2)
bekannt	acquainted	mit	121
bewandert	versed	in with dat.	108 (4)
bewußt	conscious	gen. <sup>2</sup>	91
eifersüchtig	jealous <sup>3</sup>	auf with acc.	106 (5)
eigen	peculiar	dat.	71
eingedenk	mindful	gen.	95
eingig	agreed	in with dat. or über with acc. <sup>4</sup>	108 (4) 110 (5)
erfahren	experienced	in with dat.	108 (4)
fähig	capable	gen. <sup>2</sup>	97
feind	hostile	dat.	71
fertig	finished, ready	mit	121 (3)
frei	free	von or gen.	93
fremd	strange	dat.	71
fröh	glad, proud	gen. or über with acc.	94, 110 (5)
fruchtbar	productive	an with dat.	195
gedenk	mindful	gen.	97
gefaßt	prepared	auf with acc.	106 (5)
gehorsam	obedient	dat.	71
geizig	sparing	mit	121 (3)
geschickt	skilful	in with dat.	108 (4)
gerecht	just	gegen	

<sup>1</sup> Also a dative of the person or thing resembled.

<sup>2</sup> Also takes an accusative of words like *es*, *was*. The *sich* which often accompanies *bewußt* is a dative, like *sibi conscius*.

<sup>3</sup> Of one's power, honour, &c.

<sup>4</sup> A gen. in one or two phrases, and in poetry.

gewahr	aware	gen. or acc.	56, 97
gewärtig	expecting	gen.	97
gewiß	certain	gen.	97
gewohnt	accustomed	gen. or an with acc. <sup>1</sup>	
gewogen	favourably inclined	dat.	71
groß	great	an or in with dat.	105, 108
habhaft	in possession of	gen. <sup>1</sup>	97
hinlänglich	sufficient	zu	56, 97
karg	chary	mit	121 (3)
kund, kundig	acquainted with	gen.	97
ledig	empty, free	gen. or von	93
los	rid	gen. or acc. or von	93
mächtig	master of	gen.	97
müde	tired	gen., sometimes acc.	56, 97
neidisch	envious	auf with acc.	106
offen	frank	gegen	128 (3)
quitt	rid	gen. <sup>1</sup>	93
reich	rich	an with dat.	105
satt	weary of, satiated	gen. or acc.	56, 97
	with		
schuld	to blame for	an with dat	105
schuldig	guilty	gen.	91
	indebted	acc. of measure	45
sicher	safe, certain	gen. of, vor with dat.	97, 112 (4)
		from	
sparfam	sparing	mit	121 (3)
taub	deaf	gegen	128 (3)
theilhaftig	participating	gen. or an with dat.	91
treu	faithful	dat. or gegen	71, 128
überlegen	superior	einem an einer Sache	71, 106
verhät	hateful	dat.	71
verluftig	forfeiting	gen. <sup>1</sup>	97
verschwenderisch	lavish	mit	
verschlossen	reserved	gegen	128 (3)

<sup>1</sup> Also acc. of es, das, &c.

## A D D E N D A.

### I.—SUFFIXES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.<sup>1</sup>

1. **NOUN-ENDINGS.**—We shall confine ourselves to those endings which are obviously so to a student of modern German, omitting such as presuppose a knowledge of the earlier forms of the language. The chief are:—

2. **er** denoting a person, frequently an agent. It is added (1) to roots of verbs, as : *Jäger, hunter*, from *jag-en*; *Käufer, buyer*, from *kauf-en*; *Erhalter, preserver*, from *erhalt-en*. (2) To nouns, as *Vogler, fowler*, from *Vogel*; *Wagner, waggoner*, from *Wagen*; *Gärtner, gardener*, from *Garten*. (3) To names of places, as *Schweizer, Swiss*; *Frankfurter, Frankforter*, inhabitant of *Frankfort*.<sup>2</sup> Modification of the root-vowel is generally required in (1), less frequently in (2), and not at all in (3).

*Obs.* 1. *er*, not representing a person, is a tolerably common termination of all three genders; *ier* is a masculine or neuter ending of some borrowed words, as *Juwelier, Papier*.

*Obs.* 2. *Erbtner, Gläfner, Schultner* &c. seem formed on a false analogy with *Gärtner*.

3. **in** used to form feminines, as: *Fürstin, princess*, from *Fürst*; *Bärin, she-bear*, from *Bär*; *Hündin, bitch*, from *Hund*; *Gräfin, countess*, from *Graf*. It generally entails the modification of the root-vowel.

4. **ung** forms verbal nouns like the English *ing*, denoting the action of the verb, as *Befreiung, deliverance*; *Eröberung, conquest*, etc. They easily pass into describing the result of the action. Thus we can say either *die Erfindung des Pulvers*,

<sup>1</sup> Abbreviated from Becker.    <sup>2</sup> See *Syntax* § 40 (on *Der Rötner Dom* &c.)



the invention (*finding-out*) of gunpowder, or, die nützlichen Erfindungen dieses Jahrhunderts, *the useful inventions (things found out) of this century*. Occasionally it forms collectives, as *Waldung*, wooded country; *Kleidung*, dress.

*Obs.* ing, ung is also a masculine patronymic, as in *Döring*, *Breiting*, *Nibelung*; compare also *Merovinger*, *Karolinger*. el+ing=ing is a masculine ending, as in *Jüngling*, *youth*, not unfrequently contemptuous, as in *Höfling*, *courtier*, *Emporkömmling*, *upstart*.

5. **chen** AND **lein** are compound terminations—ch+en and el+ein, forming diminutives, as *Männchen*, from *Mann*; *Fräulein*, from *Frau*. They generally require the modification of the root-vowel. To words ending in g or ch, or in those letters followed by e, the double diminutive elchen is added, as *Büchelchen*, from *Buch*; *Züngelchen*, from *Zunge*. The English *kin* in *mannikin*, *pannikin*, *hodkin*, answers to *chen*.

6. **heit**, **feit**, are feminine terminations, forming abstract nouns from other nouns or from adjectives, as *Kindheit*, *childhood*, from *Kind*; *Wahrheit*, *truth*, from *wahr*. *heit* (our *head*, *hood* in *Godhead*, *maidenhood*<sup>1</sup>) is a noun meaning *growth*, from the old verb *heien*, *to grow*, the root of *Haide*, *heath*; *heit* is ig+heit. As a general rule *heit* is added to nouns and to simple adjectives, as *Kindheit*, *Dummheit*, and to derived adjectives ending in en, as *Trockenheit*. *feit* is added to other derived adjectives, as *Eitelkeit*, *Fröhlichkeit* (except *Sicherheit*, *Dunkelheit*, *Einzelheit*). Lastly, a few adjectives insert ig before *feit*, as *Süßigkeit*, from *süß*, *sweet*; *Standhaftigkeit*, from *standhaft*, *steadfast*.

7. **schaft** is another feminine termination, forming (1) abstract nouns from other nouns and adjectives, as *Feindschaft*, *enmity*, from *Feind*; *Gefangenschaft*, *captivity*, from *gefangen*; (2) collective nouns, as *Dienerenschaft*, *body of servants*; *Burschenschaft*, *body of students*, from the plural *Burschen*.<sup>2</sup> It is a noun (English *ship* in *lordship*) connected with *schaffen*, *to make*.

8. **thum** is a neuter<sup>3</sup> termination, forming nouns either abstract or collective from other nouns, as *Papstthum*,

<sup>1</sup> Which Mr. Morris writes *maidenhead*.

<sup>2</sup> Notice *Graffschaft county*, just as we use *lordship* of a district.

<sup>3</sup> Except in *Reichthum*, *Irthum*.

*papacy*; Ritterthum, *chivalry* or *body of knights*; Herzogthum, *duchy*. It is likewise a noun, connected with thun (*English dom*).

✓ 9. *niß* (*English ness*) forms some feminine and some neuter nouns. They denote indifferently abstract qualities and the results of actions, as die Fäulniß, *rottenness*; das Ereigniß, *occurrence*. The root-vowel is sometimes modified.

c 10. *ſal*, *ſel*, form nouns, almost all neuter, from verbs, as das Drangſal, *oppression*; das Ueberbleibſel, *remnant*.

✓ 11. *ei* (*ie*) is a feminine ending, denoting (1) an *action*, as Malerei, *painting*; (2) the *place* where work, &c., is done, as Meierei, *farmhouse*, Druſerei, *printing office*; (3) *collective*, as Reiterei, *cavalry*; sometimes (4) it denotes an abstract idea, generally with contempt, as Schwäzerei, *chattering*, Kinderei, *childishness*. In recently adopted words, as Theorie, *Artillerie*, the French form *ie* is retained.

12. ADJECTIVAL ENDINGS.—*en*, *ern*, adjectives are formed from the names of materials by adding *en*, or *n* only, as golden, *golden*; wollen, *woollen*; ledern, *leathern*; from Gold, Wolle, Leder. The root-vowel is not modified. Sometimes such adjectives are formed from the plural, as hölzern, gläsern, and in imitation of them we have adjectives in *ern*, like ſteinern from Stein, thönern from Thon.

13. *ig* corresponds to the *English y*, and might be rendered *having to do with*. It forms adjectives chiefly from nouns, and generally requires the modification of the root-vowel, as fünftig, *future*, from Kunst (*Ankunft*, &c.); mächtig, *mighty*, from Macht; but blutig, *bloody*, from Blut; artig, *pretty*, from Art. Notice lebendig, ſelbſtſtändig.

There is another group of adjectives in *ig*, formed from adverbs of place and time, as hieſig, from hier; dortig, from dort, &c. They do not modify the root-vowel. As to their use, see Syntax, § 29.

*iſt* has the same meaning as *ig*. Its older form is *oht*, and therefore it does not require the Umlaut—ſelſiſt, *rocky*; ſumpfiſt, *marshy*, &c. Notice grünliſt, *greenish*, from the verb grüneln, &c.

14. **isch** also means *having to do with*, and forms adjectives—(1) from ordinary nouns, as *diebisch*, *thievish*, from *Dieb*; *närrisch*, *foolish*, from *Narr*; (2) from names of agents, &c., in *er*, as *verrättherisch*, *treacherous*; *friegerisch*, *warlike*; (3) from names of countries, towns, and even of persons, as *preußisch*, *Prussian*; *jüdisch*, *Jewish*; *fölnisch*, *belonging to Cologne*; *Homerisch*, *Homeric*. It is also used largely to form new words, or to naturalise foreign ones, as *physikalisch*, *musikalisch*, &c. Most of the older words taking *isch* have the Umlaut, as *närrisch*, *pfälzisch* (*Palatine*), *darmstädtisch*.

Some words in *isch* have a depreciatory meaning, as *kindisch*, *childish*, compared with *kindlich*, *childlike*; *höfisch*,\* *courtier-like*, compared with *höflich*, *courteous*; *herrisch*, *with the airs of a master*, compared with *herrlich*, *splendid*.

15. **bar**, connected with the root *to bear*, means *capable of* (English *able*), and forms adjectives (1) from the roots of verbs, as *lesbar*, *readable*, *genießbar*, *enjoyable*; (2) from nouns, mostly roots of verbs, as *gangbar*, *accessible*, *sichtbar*, *visible*, *fruchtbar*, *fruitful*. Most of them have a passive meaning.

16. **sam**, (English *some*) means *inclined to*, *adapted to*, and forms adjectives from nouns, from other adjectives, and from the roots of verbs, as *arbeitsam*, *industrious* (*work-some*); *sorgsam*, *careful*; *gemeinsam*, *common*; *empfindsam*, *sensitive*; *biegsam*, *pliant*. Nearly all the adjectives in *sam* have an active sense, and are thus contrasted with those in *bar*, as *furchtsam*, *timid*; *furchtbar*, *terrible*; *heilfam*, *wholesome* (*healing*); *heilbar*, *curable*.

17. **lich** (English *like*, *ly*) means *characteristic of*, *acting like*. It forms adjectives—(1) from nouns, as *menshlich*, *human*; *brüderlich*, *brotherly*; (2) from the roots of verbs, as *sterblich*, *mortal* (*given to die*); *vergänglichlich*, *transitory*; *verehhlich*, *worthy of honour*. They are not necessarily active, but generally so; (3) from adjectives, often, but not necessarily conveying the idea of the English *ish*; *i.e.*, an idea of diminished intensity, as *schwärzlich*, *blackish*; *ältlich*, *oldish*; *gewöhnlich*, *customary*. It generally requires the Umlaut.

---

\* Contracted into *hübsch*, which retains the earlier and undegraded meaning of the word. *deutsch* is *tödisch*, *popular*.

It should be noticed that many of the adjectives with *licĥ* are now used only as adverbs, so that *licĥ* is often called an adverbial termination.

*Obs.*—A few adjectives in *licĥ* have deserted their meaning, and take the place of adjectives in *isĥ*; such are *kaiserlicĥ*, *föniglicĥ*, which are used to mean *belonging to the king*, *belonging to the emperor*.

18. *ĥaft*, *ĥaftig* are derived from the root of *ĥaben*, and properly mean *having*, so that *theilĥaftig* really means *having a share*. In most cases *like* is a fair rendering—*ernstĥaft*, *serious (having earnestness)*; *riesenĥaft*, *gigantic (like a giant)*. When adjectives in *ĥaft* and *licĥ* exist from the same roots, those in *ĥaft* refer rather to persons, those in *licĥ* to things. Thus, a house is *wöĥnlicĥ*, *habitable*, but a person is *wöĥnĥaft*, *settled, domiciled in a place*; *glaubĥaft* is *trustworthy* of a man, *glaublicĥ*, *credible* of a story.

---

## II.—THE ARTICLES.—DIFFERENT CLASSES OF NOUNS.

19. PROPER AND COMMON NOUNS. Nouns are either *proper* or *common*. *Proper* nouns are those which are appropriated to a single known individual, or several known individuals; *common* nouns are those which are applicable to an indefinite number. A proper noun, therefore, does no more than could be done by pointing with the finger; it *denotes* one or more individuals. The work of a common noun on the other hand could not be so done, because the number of individuals which it may *denote*, is inexhaustible. It makes up for this, however, by bringing to our mind something about all the individuals it describes; in other words, it *connotes* certain qualities. If I am told that a certain thing unknown is a *horse*, I at once have a number of its qualities present to my mind; if I am told that it is called *Nidjni-Novogorod* or *Abracadabra*, I must see it or hear about it further, even though it be the only thing in the world with that name, before I know any of its qualities. But the name *Abracadabra* would distinguish the thing in question from all others; the name *horse* would not.

20. ABSTRACT AND CONCRETE. Commons nouns are divided into two classes, *abstract* and *concrete* nouns. A *concrete* noun is the name of something we can perceive by our senses. To each such name we are in the habit of adding some epithets, such as *round*, *swift*, *white*, *good* and to denote its qualities. And each of the epithets is common to many concrete nouns. We sometimes wish to speak of, the qualities apart from (abstracted

from) the things to which they belong; the nouns we use for that purpose—roundness, swiftness, etc., are called *abstract nouns*.

**21. ARTICLE WITH NAMES OF PERSONS.**—As in English, names of persons unaccompanied by an adjective do not generally take the articles. But as it is often inconvenient to inflect such names, especially those ending in S, J, an article is frequently used to show that they are in the genitive or dative, occasionally to mark even an accusative. See Accidence § 21.

*Obs. 1.* Names of persons or animals, when there is occasion to mention them very frequently, take the definite article. Thus in speaking of the children in a family, or of the house-dog, one would say

Der Karl, der Fritz, der Beppo,

i. e., *the Charles* we know about, etc.

*Obs. 2.* The names of towns and countries take the definite article if masculine or feminine; those of mountains, rivers, lakes, seas, forests, take the definite article in all cases.

Die Türkei, der Haag, das Matterhorn, der Bodensee.

*Obs. 3.* When proper nouns are used to connote certain qualities, and so are practically common nouns, they take the indefinite article in German as in English. Thus if we say, that a man is *a Nero*, we mean that he possesses the qualities which the famous Nero possessed, and the name Nero suggests those qualities to us. Hence the word *Nero* in this case *connotes*, and is entitled, like other common nouns, to take the indefinite article.

**22. DEFINITE ARTICLE WITH COMMON NOUNS.**—With common nouns the definite article is used in two ways:—

(1.) To particularise or select one individual from the whole class denoted by the noun. It does so either by referring us tacitly to what has gone before, or by leading us to look for some further explanation. "The man" at once points out a definite individual if such an individual has been spoken of before. It does the same, if a defining clause, for instance, a relative clause, immediately follows. In this case the definite article has the full force of the part of speech with which it is really identical, a demonstrative pronoun. This use of the definite article is common to English and German.

(2.) To generalise. In this case the usage of French and German differs from that of English. If we wish to speak of all the individuals represented by the concrete noun *sheep*, *man*, we say *sheep*, *men*, without the article. The Germans say *die Schafe*, *die Menschen*. So again, if we wish to speak of all gold, all wool, we say *gold*, *wool*; or if we wish to express the whole of the idea conveyed by an abstract noun, we say *strength*, *beauty*, etc. The Germans say *das Gold*, *die Wolle*, *die Kraft*, *die Schönheit*. Infinitives used as nouns will, therefore, generally take the definite article: *das Sprechen*, *das Lesen*, etc.

On the other hand, if we wish to speak only of some gold, some wool, some beauty, some sheep, no article is used either in German or in English.

23. ARTICLE OMITTED IN PROVERBS, ETC.—In proverbial or epigrammatic expressions and rapid enumerations the article is omitted before nouns, used even in the most general sense.

Zaudern ist Verrath.

*Hesitation is treason.*

Eigener Herd ist Goldes werth.

*A home of one's own is as good as gold.*

Tugend belohnt sich selbst.

*Virtue is its own reward.*

Weiber, Kinder, Greise wurden nicht verschont.

*Women, children, and old men were not spared.*

It may be added that the use of the article to generalise abstract nouns is by no means so universal as in French. For instance:—

Habe nun, ach! Philosophie,

Juristerei und Medicin

Und leider! auch Theologie

Durchaus studirt. (Goe.)

*Now, alas, I have studied through and through philosophy, law, and medicine, and, sad to say, theology too.*

24. FAMILIAR COMBINATIONS.—As in English and French, no article is used in expressions made up of a verb and a noun, or a preposition and a noun, that are often found in company. Such are Theil nehmen, Hilfe leisten, Stand halten, zu Pferd, nach Hause, etc. See Eve and de Baudiss' French Grammar, Syntax, § 22.

25. GENITIVE BEFORE GOVERNING NOUN.—When a genitive precedes the noun on which it depends, that noun has no article.

Der Kreter nie besiegte Schaaren. (Sch.)

*The invincible hosts of the Cretans.*

Hero's und Leander's Herzen. (Sch.)

*Hero and Leander's hearts.*

26. ONE ARTICLE FOR SEVERAL NOUNS.—In an enumeration, when several nouns of the same number or gender come together, the article, when one is used, is often expressed only with the first.

Der Löwe, Tiger, Wolf und Luchs sind reisende Thiere.

But *der Löwe und Hyäne* would be wrong, because *Hyäne* is feminine, *Löwe* masculine.

*Obs.* If a contrast is implied, the article should be repeated, as: *der Vater und der Sohn*, rather than *der Vater und Sohn*.

# GERMAN EDUCATIONAL BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

DAVID NUTT.



- ANDERSEN (H. C.).** *Sämmtliche Märchen.* Vollständige vom Verfasser besorgte Ausgabe. With frontispiece and 67 illustrations by V. PETERSEN and L. HUTSCHENREUTER. 21st Edition. Crown 8vo. 1880. Boards cloth back. 5/6
- *Ausgewählte Märchen.* With many Illustrations. 18mo. 1879. Fancy boards. 2/
- BERNARD (Madame).** *German Equivalents for English Thoughts.* 12mo. 1858. (iv. 306 pp.), cloth. 5/
- BÜNGER (W.).** *German Tales selected and adapted for the use of English Students.* With complete Vocabulary. New Edition. 12mo. 1870. (viii. 304 pp.), cloth. Reduced to 3/
- CHAMISSO (A. von).** *Peter Schlemihl's wundersame Geschichte.* With German-English Vocabulary, by F. SCHRÖDER. 12mo. 1879. (93 pp.) Sewed. 1/
- ECHTERMEYER (Th.).** *Auswahl deutscher Gedichte für höhere Schulen.* 25th Edition. 8vo. 1879. (xxvi. 927 pp.), cloth. 6/
- ERMELER'S German Reader,** enlarged, improved by the addition of explanatory notes, and adapted to the use of English Students, by Dr. A. HEIMANN. 10th Edition. 12mo. 1870. (x. 384 pp.), cloth. 5/
- FLÜGEL'S Complete Dictionary of the English and German Languages.** Adapted to the English Student, with great additions and improvements, by C. A. FEILING, Dr. A. HEIMANN, and J. OXENFORD. 2 vols. large 8vo. (v. 741, 779 pp.), cloth. 21/
- *German and English Dictionary.* Abridgment of the preceding, for the use of Schools and Colleges. 2 parts in 1 vol. 12mo. (760 pp.), cloth. 6/
- FOUQUÉ (Baron Fr. de la Motte).** *Die Jahreszeiten.* 4 parts in 1 vol. 16mo. cloth. 6/6
- Separately :—
- Undine.** 5th Edition. 1875. (152 pp.) Sewed, 1/6; cloth, 2/
- Sintram und seine Gefährten.** 5th Edition. 1877. (216 pp.) Sewed, 2/; cloth, 2/6
- Die beiden Hauptleute.** 3rd Edition. 1873. (96 pp.) Sewed, 1/6; cloth, 2/
- Aslanga's Ritter.** 3rd Edition. 1873. (79 pp.) Sewed, 1/; cloth, 1/6
- Vocabulary to Aslanga's Ritter and Die beiden Hauptleute,** by J. T. DANN, Ph. D. 16mo. 1873. (90 pp.) Sewed, 1/

- GOETHE (J. W. von).** *Faust.* With Critical and Explanatory Foot Notes, by Dr. G. ZERFFI. 2nd Edition. 12mo. 1862. (xxxii. 328 pp.), cloth. 3/6
- GRAESER (Ch.).** *A Thesaurus of German Poetry.* Consisting of 450 Select Pieces by the most celebrated authors, with explanatory Notes. Preceded by a short history of German Poetry. 8vo. 1860. (xl. 440 pp.), cloth. 6/6
- GRIMM (A. L.).** *Fünf Märchen aus der 1001 Nacht für die Jugend bearbeitet.* New Edition with copious Vocabulary by F. V. DANN. 12mo. 1872. (ii. 134, 63 pp.) cloth. 3/6
- HEIMANN (A., Ph. D.).** *Materials for translating from English into German.* 6th Edition corrected and improved. 2 parts in one. 12mo. 1879. (x. 278 pp.), cloth. 5/6  
*The two parts may be had separately in cloth, each 3/.*
- *Key to both parts, by Dr. ERDMANN.* 12mo. 1871. (175 pp.), cloth. nett, 3/6; or post free, 3/9  
*Supplied to Teachers only.*
- *The First German Reading Book for English children and beginners in the study of the language, with explanatory notes.* 3rd Edition. 12mo. 1871. (vi. 162 pp.), cloth. 3/6
- HUBER (J. C. D.).** *German Poetry.* A selection of epigrams, fables, legends, ballads, &c., with an Appendix for children. 12mo. 1856. (viii. 443 pp.), cloth. 3/
- LESSING'S** *German Fables in prose and verse.* With a close English translation and brief notes. 12mo. 1874. (viii. 117 pp.), cloth. 2/6
- NAGEL (G.).** *Treatise on the Pronunciation of the German Language.* 12mo. 1841. (xii. 91 pp.), cloth. 3/
- RÜHLE (Prof. C.).** *German Examination Papers,* with Notes, Appendix containing translation of more than 500 idiomatical expressions, and copious Vocabulary. 3rd enlarged Edition. 8vo. 1879. (vi. 187 xlix. pp.), cloth. 4/
- SCHILLER (F. von).** *Wilhelm Tell,* with Companion containing a complete Vocabulary and Notes, and an historical introduction by H. MÜLLER-STRÜBING, edited by the Rev. R. H. QUICK. 2nd Edition. 12mo. 1874. (158, xviii. and 119 pp.), cloth. 3/6  
————— *The Companion separately, cloth.* 2/6
- STORME (G.).** *Select German Stories.* With copious Notes for the use of Schools, &c. A practical method of learning the German Language. 6th Edition. 12mo. 1875. (xvi. 256 pp.) 2/6
- TIARKS (Rev. J. G.):** *A Progressive German Reader.* Containing Grammatical Exercises, Letters, Stories, easy Poems, &c., &c., for the use of Schools. 12th Edition. 1869. (vi. 144 pp.), cloth. 3/6
- WITTICH (W.).** *German Tales for Beginners,* arranged in a progressive order. 23rd Edition. 12mo. 1879. (xviii. 266 pp.) 6/









